

SLAVERY AND HUMAN RIGHTS

Through the Ages

Vol. II

**From Colonial to the
Post Colonial Periods**

By

Muhammad Ashraf Chheenah

I. S. R. C.

**Interfaith Study and Research Centre
Satrah Meel, Murree Road
Islamabad-Pakistan**

www.isrcpk.com

Copyright © 2017: Muhammad Ashraf Chheenah,

INTERFAITH STUDY AND RESEARCH CENTRE (I. S. R. C.)

Satrah meel, Murree Road Islamabad-Pakistan.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying or otherwise, without the prior permission of the publisher except for brief quotations in critical reviews or articles.

Chheenah, Muhammad Ashraf

Slavery and Human Rights – Vol-II

SATRAH MEEL, MURREE ROAD ISLAMABAD-PAKISTAN: I. S. R. C. 2017

Web www.isrcpk.com

Pages: XVI + 396 = 412

Publisher: **I. S. R. C.**, Satrah meel, Murree Road, Islamabad-Pakistan.

Printer: Shirkat Printing Press, Nisbat Road, Lahore

Title: Haroon Rasheed

1st Edition: 2017

Copies: 1,100

ISBN : 978-969-9704-03-1

Price Vol: I Pakistan Rs. 1300/-; Overseas US \$ 30/-; £ 23/-

Price Vol: II Pakistan Rs. 1200/-; Overseas US \$ 26/-; £ 21/-

Complete Set: Pakistan Rs. 2000/-; Overseas US \$ 50/-; £ 40

Available Muhammad Ashraf Chheenah., I. S. R. C., SATRAH MEEL,

(In Pakistan): MURREE ROAD, ISLAMABAD-PAKISTAN

Cel. (0092) 03015241813,

Land Line: 092512807012,13,

Email: isrcpk@gmail.com

DEDICATION

This work is dedicated

Primarily to

The Almighty Allah

Most Gracious, Most Merciful

And then to

the seekers and lovers of truth especially among the
students and research scholars throughout the world.

By the Same Author:

Hagar the Princess, 2012 (2nd Ed. 2016).

Israelites Versus Other Nations, 2012.

→ Forthcoming Books:

Islam as Emancipator of Women

New World Order or Kingdom of God on Earth

Original Sin and Salvation

CONTENTS

Dedication	III
Contents	V
Acknowledgments	XIII
Abbreviations	XV
Ch. 1–	1
From Crusades To Colonization of the World	1
The Retrospection of Crusades	1
After the Traditional Crusades	1
The Golden Decade in the European History	3
Napoleon as a Crusader and Orientalist	5
Colonization and Slavery	6
▪ <i>African slavery</i>	6
▪ <i>African Kingdoms of the Era</i>	8
▪ <i>African Conflicts</i>	9
▪ <i>Labour and Slavery</i>	10
▪ <i>Slave Based Economies</i>	10
How Many Slaves	11
▪ <i>Human Toll</i>	11
▪ <i>Death Toll in Port Factories</i>	12
▪ <i>Atlantic Shipment</i>	12
Interest Alone, the Governing Principle	14
Colonies as Manufacturing Estates	15
European participation in the slave trade	15
Who were the Slave Traders	16
Slave Market regions and participation	16
Ch. 2 -	19
British and American Role in the Slave Trade	19
British Triangular trade	21
▪ <i>Support of Slave Trade</i>	21
▪ <i>Horrible Continuity of Slave Trade</i>	22
▪ <i>The Growth of Seven British Cities:</i>	24
▪ <i>British Monopoly on Slave Trade</i>	24
▪ <i>The Bishop of Exeter</i>	24
▪ <i>East India Company</i>	24
▪ <i>Slaves Imported from India</i>	25
Apartheid	26
▪ <i>Legislation For Racial Segregation</i>	26
▪ <i>Multi Racial Elections in 1994</i>	27
▪ <i>Forced Removals</i>	28
▪ <i>Triumph</i>	28

VI	<i>Slavery and Human Rights – Vol. II</i>	
▪	<i>Group Areas Act 1950</i>	29
▪	<i>Affiliation Based on Common Cause</i>	29
▪	<i>Alternates to Slavery</i>	30
	Slavery in the Americas	31
▪	<i>Slavery in the United States</i>	31
▪	<i>Slave Holders as Presidents of USA</i>	32
▪	<i>Constitution of the United States</i>	33
▪	<i>Contribution of Slavery towards Development of Capitalism in USA</i>	33
▪	<i>Holders of Slaves</i>	33
▪	<i>Distribution of Slave Holders</i>	34
▪	<i>Slave Populations</i>	34
Ch. 3 -		37
	Slavery the Backbone of New World Economy	37
	New World Destinations	37
	The Atlantic Slave Trade	37
	Perils of the Sea	38
	The New World and the Slave Trade	39
▪	<i>Different Types of Servants or Slaves</i>	39
▪	<i>One Negro worth Four Indians</i>	43
▪	<i>Price of a Negro – One Birmingham Gun</i>	44
▪	<i>Slavery in Africa and the New World Contrasted</i>	44
	Economics of Slavery	45
▪	<i>Africa Nearer than Moon</i>	45
▪	<i>Land of Masters and Slaves</i>	45
▪	<i>Plantation and Harvesting Slavery</i>	46
▪	<i>Slave-Based Cotton Growth</i>	47
▪	<i>Cheap Labor</i>	48
Ch. 4 -		49
	Horrors of Slavery	49
	Slave Codes and Conditions	49
▪	<i>Opportunity to Learn, to Read or to Write Prohibited</i>	49
▪	<i>Anti-Literacy</i>	49
▪	<i>Slave Codes</i>	50
▪	<i>Efficiency of Slaves</i>	50
▪	<i>Prices of Slaves</i>	50
▪	<i>Citizenship Barred for Slaves</i>	51
	Conditions in the American South	52
▪	<i>Sugar Plantations of Barbados</i>	53
▪	<i>Cotton Empire Based on Slavery</i>	53
▪	<i>Cotton Slavery</i>	56
▪	<i>Hard Labor</i>	57
▪	<i>Instruments of Torture</i>	58
▪	<i>Coercion over Slaves</i>	58
	Penal Colonies	59
	Slaves as Security	62
	Slaves as a Commodity	63
	Property of Hug Young	66
	Culmination of the Historical Process	67

Ch. 5 -	69
Dehumanization of Slaves	69
Horrors of Transportation	69
▪ <i>Trans-Atlantic Shipments</i>	70
▪ <i>Children of Slave Mothers were Slaves</i>	73
▪ <i>The Middle Passage</i>	73
▪ <i>Life On Board Slave Ships</i>	74
▪ <i>Transportation From Old Slavery to the New</i>	75
▪ <i>Forced Migrations</i>	76
The Auctioneers	76
The Wretched of the Earth	77
Inhuman Punishments to Slaves	78
Slavery Continued to Expand	83
Pushing System	83
Dehumanization of the Slaves	85
▪ <i>Columbus Fed Natives to Dogs</i>	86
▪ <i>Columbus Sold Children into Slavery</i>	86
▪ <i>Rape and Sexual Abuse</i>	88
▪ <i>Branding the Slaves</i>	91
▪ <i>Separation from Family and Children</i>	91
▪ <i>Human Zoos</i>	91
Ch. 6 -	95
Genocide of the Indigenous People	95
Genocide in Africa	98
▪ <i>Rubber Boom Genocide</i>	98
▪ <i>Congo (DRC)</i>	98
▪ <i>Herero and Namaqua Genocide</i>	99
Genocide of Native Americans	100
▪ <i>Genocide by Columbus</i>	103
▪ <i>Deliberate Infection</i>	104
▪ <i>Massacres</i>	104
▪ <i>Spanish Colonization of the Americas</i>	105
▪ <i>Bounty on Killing Indians</i>	105
▪ <i>Colonization of California and Oregon</i>	106
▪ <i>French Saint Domingo</i>	107
▪ <i>Genocide in Americas up to 1957</i>	107
▪ <i>Brazil</i>	108
Colonization of Australia	108
▪ <i>Genocide of the Indigenous Australians</i>	109
▪ <i>Colonization of Australia and Tasmania</i>	109
▪ <i>Not Accepted as Citizens or Humans</i>	111
▪ <i>The Stolen Generations</i>	111
▪ <i>Will You Believe</i>	112
▪ <i>Putumayo</i>	113
Russian Empire's Conquest of Siberia	113
Baltic States	114
Contemporary Examples	114
Colombia	114
Guatemala	115

Ch. 7 -	117
Culture and Orientalism	117
Culture	117
▪ <i>Culture and Language</i>	119
▪ <i>A Man Among Other Men</i>	120
▪ <i>Decolonizing the Mind</i>	121
▪ <i>Greater Powers Have Greater Rights</i>	122
▪ <i>Western Masters to Judge What is Good or Bad</i>	122
▪ <i>US to Protect its Interests All Over the Globe</i>	123
▪ <i>Hierarchy of Races</i>	123
▪ <i>Contrast between the White and the Black</i>	125
▪ <i>I Am A Negro</i>	128
▪ <i>Identity Crisis</i>	131
Orientalism	131
▪ <i>Oriental Studies</i>	131
▪ <i>Dominance Confers Masculinity</i>	137
▪ <i>Weakness and Vileness as Twin Sisters</i>	138
▪ <i>Conclusion</i>	138
Ch. 8 -	141
American Imperialism	141
Imperialism	141
▪ <i>The Continuity of Imperialism</i>	141
▪ <i>Imperial Mentality</i>	142
▪ <i>Mind-Deadened Third World</i>	143
▪ <i>Conquest of Culture, History and Language</i>	143
▪ <i>USA the Land of Liberty</i>	145
▪ <i>US Expansion Policy</i>	153
▪ <i>New Stratagem, Deployments and Think-tanks</i>	153
▪ <i>Conquest of the Earth</i>	154
▪ <i>New World Order</i>	156
▪ <i>World Empire or World Law Guided/Directed by USA</i>	156
▪ <i>US To Regulate Behavior of States</i>	158
▪ <i>Postcolonialism</i>	158
▪ <i>Post Colonial Position</i>	158
Apologies for the Slave Trade	159
▪ <i>France</i>	159
▪ <i>United Kingdom</i>	159
▪ <i>United States of America</i>	160
Ch. 9 -	161
Slave Revolts and the Abolitionists	161
The End of Slave Trade	163
Abolitionists	164
▪ <i>John Brown the Abolitionist</i>	168
▪ <i>Fear of Revolts or Emancipation</i>	168
▪ <i>Political Influence of Slave Holders</i>	171
Slave Revolts	173
▪ <i>The Successful Revolt of St. Domingo</i>	174
▪ <i>Hundreds of Outbreaks Across Russia</i>	179
▪ <i>French West Africa</i>	179
Abraham Lincoln On Slavery	179
Other Factors to Abolish Slavery	183

<i>Contents</i>	<i>IX</i>
Reciprocal Violence	183
Slavery Till Today	184
Ch. 10 -	185
Towards the New World Order	185
The 20th Century	185
Economic Subjugation of the World	189
▪ <i>EHM</i>	189
▪ <i>The EHM at Indonesia</i>	190
▪ <i>Congo Free State (1886-1908)</i>	193
▪ <i>October Revolution of Russia (1917)</i>	194
Human Miseries during the World Wars	196
▪ <i>The First World War</i>	196
▪ <i>The Second World War</i>	197
▪ <i>Rape during Occupation of Germany</i>	199
▪ <i>They Raped Every German Female from 8 to 80</i>	201
▪ <i>Rapes in England and France</i>	202
Mau Zedong's Regime (1949-1975)	202
The Vietnam War	202
The Korean War	205
Ch. 11 -	207
Controlling the World Politics and Economy	207
Covert US Involvements in Regime Change	207
▪ <i>Che Guevara</i>	207
▪ <i>Muhammad Musaddiq of Iran</i>	212
▪ <i>Muhammad Raza Shah Pahlavi</i>	213
▪ <i>Omar Torrijo of Panama</i>	214
▪ <i>Jacobo Árbenz of Guatemala</i>	216
▪ <i>Jaime Roldós Aguilera</i>	217
▪ <i>Manuel Noriega</i>	218
▪ <i>France-Albert René</i>	219
▪ <i>Rafael Correa</i>	219
▪ <i>Manuel Zelaya</i>	221
▪ <i>Muammar Gaddafi</i>	221
Other Maneuvers to Promote Interests of USA	222
New Forms of Slavery	224
▪ <i>Peonage</i>	225
▪ <i>Application of Econometric Weapon</i>	225
▪ <i>Vulture Funds</i>	226
▪ <i>Convict Leasing and Share Cropping</i>	227
▪ <i>Everlasting Dependence on US Technology</i>	228
Ch. 12 -	231
New Crusades Against the Islamic World	231
Operation OIL	232
Crusade for Oil	232
▪ <i>It's the Oil</i>	234
▪ <i>Bush Family</i>	236
▪ <i>The Policy</i>	238

X	<i>Slavery and Human Rights – Vol. II</i>	
▪ Bush Guarantee		238
▪ Frivolous Causes for Iraq War		238
Iraq War 2003		241
▪ Criticism and Cost		242
▪ Iraq is Only the Beginning		244
Israel and Egypt		244
Crusades for Greater Israel		245
Libya and Syria		248
Ch. 13 -		251
Pakistan, Afghanistan: The Great Games Victims		251
The Afghan War		251
▪ Operation Cyclone		253
▪ India Changes its Strategic Alliance		256
▪ So Why Afghanistan?		262
▪ Nine-Eleven Incidence		263
▪ Bin Laden		264
▪ Terrorism Under the Cover of 'Enduring Peace'		266
▪ Bush Associates Finance Bin Laden		268
▪ The Level to which We Have Sunk		268
▪ The Worst Victim of the Game		271
▪ The Costs of the War		275
Ch. 14 -		277
Human Rights in History-I		277
The Ancient Egypt and Mesopotamia		278
The Old Testament		281
The New Testament		281
Other Experiments with Human Rights		282
Class or Jati Discrimination		283
Islam		286
▪ No Forgiveness for Infringement of Human Rights		287
▪ Hilf-al-Fudool (حلف الفضول)		288
▪ Constitution of Medina (ميثاق مدینه)		289
▪ Treaty of Hdaybiyyah		290
▪ Conquest of Makkah		291
▪ Sermon at Farewell Hajj		291
▪ The True Magna Carta		294
Ch. 15 -		295
Human Rights in History II		295
Human Rights in the West		295
▪ Magna Carta		297
▪ The Colonial Period		300
▪ United States Antebellum Era		302
The Era of Reforms		303
▪ UK Abolition of Slave Trade		304
▪ Condemnation of Slavery		305
▪ US Emancipation Proclamation		307
▪ Post-Emancipation Proclamation Slavery		308
▪ The Reconstruction Period (1865-1877)		312
▪ UN Charter of Human Rights		313

Ch. 16 -	319
The Level to which we Have Sunk	319
Power Corrupts Everybody	319
▪ <i>The Perished Nations</i>	320
▪ <i>Pride of the Israelites</i>	323
▪ <i>The Elimination of Privacy and Freedom</i>	324
▪ <i>The Level to which We Have Sunk</i>	326
The Illuminati Organization	328
▪ <i>Skull-and-Bones</i>	331
▪ <i>Illuminati Bloodlines</i>	331
▪ <i>Playing With Our Minds</i>	332
▪ <i>Micro Chipped People</i>	333
Ch. 17 -	339
God and His Creatures	339
The Purpose of Creation	339
امانة (Amanah) i.e. The Trust	339
Pride as the Root Cause of All Evils	344
Declining Moral Standards	346
Denial of Independence and Rights of Weaker Nations	347
God's Verdict on Human Rights	350
Intention and Devotion	352
A God-Less World	353
▪ <i>Objectives of Life</i>	354
▪ <i>No Fear of Accountability before the Lord</i>	356
▪ <i>Fatal Crimes of Human Beings</i>	357
Ch. 18 -	359
The Vision to Survive	359
▪ <i>Future Visions</i>	361
▪ <i>Suicidal Developments</i>	364
▪ <i>Legacy for Our Children</i>	365
Dreams of the Well-wishers of Mankind	366
▪ <i>Reflection in the Mirror</i>	368
▪ <i>Game Can Always be Won by Hope</i>	369
▪ <i>Lord is the Only Savior</i>	369
▪ <i>What Can You Do?</i>	371
▪ <i>The Modern Republics and the Poor</i>	373
▪ <i>Truth, Justice and Equality</i>	374
20 th Century Thinkers and Activists	375
Divine Guidance for Survival	376
Index	381
Bibliography	389

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I feel highly indebted to my wife Nighat Parveen who took on her most of my responsibilities for the family which the undersigned used to share with her prior to my involvement in the present assignment. She not only relieved me from the routine duties but also motivated me to continue my studies without worrying for many of the matters needing my help. My daughters Āmna and Fātemah had always been a source of encouragement to me by taking keen interest in the progress of my work. My sons Rizwān, 'Umar, and Hasan took on them the entire burden of business and rendered all necessary services to facilitate my studies. My daughters-in-law: 'Asimah Rizwān, Mehnāz Omer, and Malīhah Hasan deserve my appreciation for maintaining cordial atmosphere at home besides caring to provide all necessary comforts to me. My grand daughter, Ayesha Rizwan a student of M.phil English Literature rendered valuable help by procuring certain important books. She also had been helping me in various discussions and proof reading of the book.

Last but not the least was the contribution of Mr. Hafiz Haroon Rasheed. Besides typing out the manuscript, the entire compilation of the work had been done by him to the best satisfaction of the undersigned. He rendered extremely useful service to search for various books and topics online and also to substantiate various topics and arguments by inserting the relevant verses of the Qur'ān and sayings of the Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) in the text. May God bless him with the bounteous rewards for the valuable services done by him.

My acknowledgments remain incomplete without mentioning the valuable guidance of the late Mr. Abdus-Sattar-Ghauri, a renowned scholar and the learned author of many books. He had been the person who not only edited my books Hagar the Princess and Israelites Vs. Other Nations in the World but also served as a guide for writing different articles on research. But for his most valuable help in the past, the undersigned might not have become a writer at all. May Almighty Allah bestow on him His profound blessings in the Paradise. Amen!

Muhammad Ashraf Chheenah,
Chairman,
ISRC, Islamabad, 2017.

ABBREVIATIONS

AD/CE	anno domini (Latin), in the year of the Lord, Common/ Christian Era.
Ar	Arab, Arabia, Arabian, Arabic.
B	Bible.
BC	Before Christ; Bible Commentary; Biblical Commentary.
BCE	Before Christian/Common Era.
c/ca	About, approximately (Latin circa)
CE	Common Era: secular form of AD.
Ch.	Chapter.
Ed	Editor, edited by, edition.
Edn	Edition.
e.g./eg	for example (Latin exempli gratia).
Enc	Encyclopedia/Encyclopaedia/Encyclopedic.
Heb	Hebrew.
i.e.	that is, that means, namely.
MT/Mt	Massoretic /Masoretic Text of the OT; Matthew; Mount.
NT	New Testament of the Bible Contains 27 books: 4 Gospels, Acts, Epistles (letters), and lastly Revelations. It was originally written in Greek, whereas Jesus Christ delivered his message in the Aramaic language.
OT	Old Testament of the Bible Consists of 39 books: The first five are collectively called the Pentateuch or Torah. It was originally written in Heb.
(pbAh)	peace and blessings of Allah upon him.
p/pp	Page/pages.
Pbl/pbg	Publisher(s) Publication(s) /Publishing/.
Rvd	Revised.
St	Saint.
s.v.	Under the word or heading.
Tr.	Translator, translation, translated by.
Uni./Univ.	University.
v/vv	Verse/verses of the Bible.
V	Version (Tr.) of the Bible.
Vol.	Volume.
(...)	It indicates that some word, words, sentence, sentences, line, or lines have been left over from the original quotation.
(....)	It shows that a sizeable text has been omitted from the original quotation.
[]	The square brackets are used to insert something by the Tr./Ed., which did not originally exist in the quotation.
AV/KJV	Authorized Version/King James Version.
GNB	Good News Bible
NIV	New international Version, London, 1984.
RBV	Revised Berkeley Version: .

Abbreviations of the Books of the Bible

1. The Jewish Bible/OT

Abbreviation:	Book:	Abbreviation:	Book:
Amos or Am	Amos	Judg. or Jgs	Judges
1 Chron. or 1 Chr	1 Chronicles	1 Kings or 1 Kgs	1 Kings
2 Chron. or 2 Chr	2 Chronicles	2 Kings or 2 Kgs	2 Kings
Dan. or Dn	Daniel	Lam. or Lam	Lamentations
Deut. or Dt	Deuteronomy	Lev. or Lv	Leviticus
Eccles. or Eccl	Ecclesiastes	Mal. or Mal	Malachi
Esther or Est	Esther	Mic. or Mi	Micah
Exod. or Ex	Exodus	Nah. or Na	Nahum
Ezek. or Ez	Ezekiel	Neh. or Neh	Nehemiah
Ezra or Ezr	Ezra	Num. or Nm	Numbers
Gen. or Gn	Genesis	Obad. or Ob	Obadiah
Hab. or Hb	Habakkuk	Prov. or Prv	Proverbs
Hag. or Hg	Haggai	Ps. (pl.Pss.) or Ps (pl. Pss)	Psalms
Hosea or Hos	Hosea	Ruth or Ru	Ruth
Isa. or Is	Isaiah	1 Sam. or 1 Sm	1 Samuel
Jer. or Jer	Jeremiah	2 Sam. or 2 Sm	2 Samuel
Job or Jb	Job	Song of Sol. or Sg	Song of Solomon (=Song of Songs)
Joel or Jl	Joel	Zech. or Zec	Zechariah
Jon. or Jon	Jonah	Zeph. or Zep	Zephaniah
Josh. or Jo	Joshua		

2. The New Testament

Abbreviation:	Book:	Abbreviation:	Book:
Acts	Acts of the Apostles	Luke or Lk	Luke
Apoc.	Apocalypse (=Revelation)	Mark or Mk	Mark
Col. or Col	Colossians	Matt. or Mt	Matthew
1 Cor. or 1 Cor	1 Corinthians	1 Pet. or 1 Pt	1 Peter
2 Cor. or 2 Cor	2 Corinthians	2 Pet. or 2 Pt	2 Peter
Eph. or Eph	Ephesians	Philem. or Phlm	Philemon
Gal. or Gal	Galatians	Phil. or Phil	Philippians
Heb. or Heb	Hebrews	Rev. or Rv	Revelation (=Apocalypse)
James or Jas	James	Rom. or Rom	Romans
John or Jn	John (Gospel)	1Thess. or 1Thes	1 Thessalonians
1 John or 1 Jn	1 John (Epistle)	2Thess. or 2Thes	2 Thessalonians
2 John or 2 Jn	2 John (Epistle)	1 Tim. or 1 Tm	1 Timothy
3 John or 3 Jn	3 John (Epistle)	2 Tim. or 2 Tm	2 Timothy
Jude	Jude	Titus or Ti	Titus

FROM CRUSADES TO COLONIZATION OF THE WORLD

The Retrospection of Crusades

Looking back at the Crusades and its achievements, some scholars call it as the **maddest episode in the human history**. The first para of The Crimes of Christianity sheds light on the background and the consequences of the Crusades as quoted below:

THE Crusades form one of the maddest episodes in history. Christianity hurled itself at Mohammedanism in expedition after expedition for nearly three centuries, until failure brought lassitude, and superstition itself was undermined by its own labors. Europe was drained of men and money, and threatened with social bankruptcy, if not with annihilation. Millions perished in battle, hunger, or disease; and every atrocity the imagination can conceive disgraced the warriors of the Cross. But there is a law of compensation in nature; good often comes of evil; and **the Crusades broke up the night of the Dark Ages. The Christians were brought face to face with a civilization superior to their own; their eyes were dazzled by the light of Arabian learning**; and the mental ferment which succeeded in Europe led to the cultivation of science and literature, the foundation of universities, the study of the immortal classics of Greece and Rome, the growth of philosophy and skepticism, the Renaissance in Italy, and the Reformation in Germany. And these movements, in turn, led to the French Revolution, which sounded the death-knell of Feudalism, and to the Free thought of Voltaire, which pierced the heart of Superstition.¹

After the Traditional Crusades

The traditional crusades from 1095 to 1272 AD had utterly failed to achieve their ends. Although the European powers had mobilized all their military and naval resources against the Muslim Asia, yet in spite of the loss of millions of people and billions of dollars worth the property, they could achieve nothing substantial for

¹ Foote & Wheeler, p. 310-311.

the benefit of the Christendom or the Christian powers. It is, however, the law of the Lord that human beings must strive hard to attain their goals. No human efforts go unrewarded by the Lord. God says:

39. That man can have nothing but what he strives for; 40.
That (the fruit of) his striving will soon come in sight: 41.
Then will he be rewarded with a reward complete;²

Consequently, the crusaders' failure in Asia turned their attention to other destinations in the world. The preparations and exercise of the crusaders did not go waste at all. Their resolve to conquer more and more lands in quest of prosperity led them to Africa, India, the New World, the South East, China, Australia, New Zealand and thousands of other islands in the Pacific as well as in the Atlantic Oceans. Their new ventures were rewarded by the Almighty with His bounteous blessings such as wealth, resources, prosperity and advancement of knowledge beyond all their expectations. In view of this, the observation of the authors of 'The Crimes of Christianity' that the Crusades form one of the maddest episodes in history can be taken only as a half truth. Their failure to destroy Islam or to recapture the Holy Land was recompensed by becoming masters of the world. As an immediate gain, we can count initiation of the renaissance as a reward of the crusades on the home front. Similarly, the western nations' experiments on sea right from the Viking period up to the end 15th century had opened the new horizons for them to obtain absolute control on the naval resources and capturing vast lands in north and south America, Australia and numerous other islands in the world. Besides this, they also colonized entire Africa, India, Ceylon and many countries in the south and east of the Indian Ocean. It was through such efforts that European nations reached China, Japan and Korea.

² Al-Qur'ān 53:39-41 Yusuf Ali.

The Golden Decade in the European History

The crusaders had vast experience of fighting and learning more and more from the Muslim civilization in the East. They had attained capabilities to transport their armies and supplies through land and sea which helped them to explore the new world and also to find a sea route towards India, China and Japan.

The last ten years of the 15th century had been the Golden decade for the European powers during which they received such trophies that had never been achieved in the past. In year 1492, the combined efforts of King Ferdinand II of Aragon and Isabella I of Castile culminated in the capture of Granada from the Muslims and they killed or expelled all the Muslims and the Jews from Spain. The capture of libraries and scholars of Muslim Spain and obtaining control over centers and sources of learning had been the prime source of initiation of renaissance in Europe giving them lead over rest of the world in respect of development of science, technology and arts in different spheres of life.

In the same year i.e. 1492 Columbus touched Bahama Islands in the Caribbean. He had actually started to discover the sea route towards India and Japan but his good luck took him to the new world and he landed on an island in the Bahamas archipelago that he named "San Salvador". Over the course of three more voyages, Columbus visited the Greater and Lesser Antilles, as well as the Caribbean coast of Venezuela and Central America, claiming all of it for the Crown of Castile.

Columbus had read Marco Polo's stories of the gold-rooted palace of Cipangu and the wealth of the Great Khan of Cathay [China]. It struck him that these rich lands must lie on the other side of the Atlantic, and that it might be possible to reach them by sailing west. So Columbus began to work out a plan to sail across the Atlantic Ocean, and find the riches of the Indies.³

³ Peter Chrisp, *Christopher Columbus*, (London: Dorling Kindersley, 2001), p. 12.

Subsequently, besides discovering the American and Australian continents, the navigators from Spain and Portugal identified thousands of islands in the Pacific. Bartolomeu Dias of Portugal sighted the Cape of Good Hope in 1488 while it was rounded for the first time by another Portuguese explorer **Vasco da Gama** during 1497-99. It has been reported that:

He was the first European to reach India by sea, linking Europe and Asia for the first time by ocean route, as well as linking the Atlantic and the Indian oceans entirely and definitively, and in this way, the West and the Orient. This was accomplished on his first voyage to India (1497–1499).

The tide of the Crusades, therefore, turned towards the new discoveries. Primarily the navigation towards Africa, India, China and Japan was made under the pretext of trade, while all the voyages towards the new world and Australia etc. were made with the motive of colonization and exploitation of the vast resources of those continents for the benefit of the European nations. By the beginning of the 16th century, the European nations such as France, Italy, Belgium, Portugal and UK started enslaving scores of millions of black Negroes in Africa. After 1800, they had enslaved or eliminated millions of the indigenous people in the colonies established by them. No efforts were spared to exploit the human resources in Africa and the New World. The colonizers continued to plunder the wealth, the produce or the natural as well as human potentials of those lands for about 450 years either through plundering valuables in the lands directly or through control on all their industries and trade including imports and exports.

As regards the colonies, the western nations had carefully chalked out their plans to ban industries, scientific and technological education there. They systematically strangled all the manufacturing industries in their colonies. The indigenous people, therefore, had to depend entirely on the export of their raw materials to the European nations and to receive manufactured goods in exchange for the same. This caused great loss to the colonies, their economies and their share in the world trade. With ever increasing

unemployment, the condition of people was made more and more miserable day by day. The subjugated people were encouraged only to learn and speak the language of the colonizers to serve as the media of communication between the masses and the rulers. All these exploits amply fulfilled the true motives of the Christians behind the Crusades. The exploitation through military might, political dominance, capital investments or loans was supported by opening various missionary schools to convert the indigenous people to Christianity and to teach them language and culture of the conquerors. No public service could be offered to those who did not learn the language of the masters.

Napoleon as a Crusader and Orientalist

The readers must not forget that Crusades starting w.e.f. 1096 never came to an end. Initially, they had started to destroy or subjugate Muslim Asia and Africa but with the passage of time, they found the scope for expanding their conquests throughout the world. The Buddhists, the Hindus, the pagans, the Chinese and all other nations came within the purview of the crusaders to be conquered and civilized as per culture of the West. Among all such conquerors, Napoleon was perhaps more conspicuous as a Crusader and Orientalist as defined by Karen Armstrong in the following:

We have seen that throughout the eighteenth century people had been gathering information about the Orient and in 1798 Napoleon's famous expedition to Egypt showed the start of a new phase: **Europe would now use this knowledge to control and dominate the East.** Napoleon wanted to challenge the British hegemony in India by establishing his own Eastern Empire and he revived the Old crusading project of founding a base in Egypt from which to launch an attack on the Muslim lands of Palestine and Syria. The expedition, therefore, caused great excitement because it tapped a powerful old Western dream. **With the fleet sailed scores of Orientalist scholars from the Institut d'Egypte, founded by Napoleon, as advisers to the occupying forces.** As soon as the fleet landed, Napoleon sent them off on what we should call a fact-finding mission and he gave his officers strict instructions to follow their advice. **For the first**

time the Arabs of the Middle East were presented with the new, powerful Europe, of which they were ignorant but which seemed to know all about them. At Alexandria, Napoleon had announced to the people: "Nous Sommes les vrais musulmans." He had the sixty sheikhs of al-Azhar in Cairo brought into his quarters with full military honors, whereupon **he praised the Prophet**, discussed Voltaire's Fanaticism and seemed able to hold his own. Nobody took Napoleon very seriously as a Muslim but the scholars had been right: this sympathetic knowledge of Islam did allay the hostility of the people to a degree. From henceforth, Europeans would use their knowledge not primarily for the purposes of understanding but for power and control of the East. But this expedition was not only a landmark for Europe: it had a profound effect on the Arab world. Arabs looked at this new, knowledgeable and technically advanced West and wondered how these former Crusaders had got so far ahead. Where had the Muslim countries gone wrong? Napoleon also courted the Jews of Africa and Asia, urging them to rise up against the Turks to gain possession of their ancient homeland. They were the "Rightful Heirs of Palestine," he declared in the spring of 1799.⁴

The said intrusion of Napoleon under the pretext of rescuing the Arabs and the Jews started a tug of war between the European powers to disintegrate the Ottoman Empire and to subjugate Muslim lands ruled by the Ottomans.

Colonization and Slavery

▪ African slavery

The Colonization and slavery had been growing together like twin sisters. Soon after the arrival of the European settlers in the American continents, they discovered usefulness of slaves or inexpensive labor for clearing lands, producing crops, plantation and other developments. This led to mass transportation of slaves from Africa to the American continents since the beginning of the 17th century AD.

After that first 1619 shipload, some 100,000 more enslaved Africans would sail upriver past Old Point Comfort. Lying in chains in the holds of slave ships, they could not see the land until they were brought up on deck to be sold. After the legal

⁴ Karen Armstrong, *Holy War*, p. 497.

Atlantic slave trade to the United States ended in 1807, hundreds of thousands more enslaved people passed the point. Now they were going the other way, boarding ships at Richmond, the biggest eastern center of the internal slave trade, to go by sea to the Mississippi Valley.

By the time a dark night came in late May 1861, the moon had waxed and waned three thousand times over slavery in the South. To protect slavery, Virginia had just seceded from the United States, choosing a side at last after six months of indecision in the wake of South Carolina's rude exit from the Union.⁵

Each slave hauled twenty pounds of iron chains that draped from neck to neck and wrist to wrist binding them all together.



The African slave trade provided large number of slaves to Europeans, to American colonizers and to many other nations in the world. Only a negligible number of slaves might also have been sold in the Muslim countries that usually had been utilized as servant in the homes. Almost 100% of the Atlantic slave trade was directed towards Europe and the colonies in the American continents. Here is a chart showing distribution of slaves.

⁵ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. xiv.

Distribution of slaves (1519–1867)

Destination	Percentage
Portuguese America	38.5%
British America (minus North America)	18.4%
Spanish Empire	17.5%
French Americas	13.6%
British North America	6.45%
English Americas	3.25%
Dutch West Indies	2.0%
Danish West Indies	0.3%

The number of the Africans arrived in each area can be calculated taking into consideration that the total number of slaves was close to 10,000,000.⁶

The Wikipedia reports that:

Africans played a direct role in the slave trade, selling their captives or prisoners of war to European buyers. The prisoners and captives who were sold were usually from neighbouring or enemy ethnic groups. These captive slaves were considered "other", not part of the people of the ethnic group or "tribe"; African kings held no particular loyalty to them. Sometimes criminals would be sold so that they could no longer commit crimes in that area. Most other slaves were **obtained from kidnappings, or through raids** that occurred at gunpoint through joint ventures with the Europeans. But some African kings refused to sell any of their captives or criminals. King Jaja of Opobo, a former slave, refused to do business with the slavers completely.⁷

▪ ***African Kingdoms of the Era***

There were over 173 city-states and kingdoms in the African regions affected by the slave trade between 1502 and 1853, when Brazil became the last Atlantic import nation to outlaw the slave trade. Of those 173, no fewer than 68 could be deemed nation states with political and military infrastructures that enabled them to dominate their neighbours. Nearly every present-day nation had a pre-colonial predecessor, sometimes an African Empire with which European traders had to barter.⁸

⁶ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Slave Trade'.

⁷ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Atlantic Slave Trade'.

⁸ Ibid.

▪ **African Conflicts**

According to David Stannard's *American Holocaust*, **50% of African deaths occurred in Africa** as a result of wars between native kingdoms, which produced the majority of slaves. This includes not only those who died in battles, but also those who died as a result **of forced marches from inland areas to slave ports on the various coasts.**⁹

In letters written by the Manikongo, Nzinga Mbemba Afonso, to the King João III of Portugal, he writes that Portuguese merchandise flowing in is what is fueling the trade in Africans. He requests the King of Portugal to stop sending merchandise but should only send missionaries. In one of his letters he writes:

"Each day the traders are kidnapping our people—children of this country, sons of our nobles and vassals, even people of our own family. This corruption and depravity are so widespread that our land is entirely depopulated. We need in this kingdom only priests and schoolteachers, and no merchandise, unless it is wine and flour for Mass. **It is our wish that this Kingdom not be a place for the trade or transport of slaves...** Many of our subjects eagerly lust after Portuguese merchandise that your subjects have brought into our domains. To satisfy this inordinate appetite, they seize many of our black free subjects.... They sell them. After having taken these prisoners [to the coast] secretly or at night.... **As soon as the captives are in the hands of white men they are branded with a red-hot iron.**"¹⁰

Before the arrival of the Portuguese, slavery had already existed in Congo. Afonso believed that the slave trade should be subject to Congo law. When he suspected the Portuguese of receiving illegally enslaved persons to sell, he wrote to **King João III in 1526 imploring him to put a stop to the practice.** The kings of Dahomey sold war captives into transatlantic slavery; they would otherwise have been killed in a ceremony known as the Annual Customs. As one of West Africa's principal slave states, Dahomey became extremely unpopular with neighbouring peoples. Like the Bambara Empire to the east, the Khasso kingdoms depended heavily on the

⁹ Ibid.

¹⁰ Wayne Morrison, *Criminology, Civilisation and the New World Order*, (New York: Routledge, Cavendish, 3rd Avenue, 2006), p. 142.

slave trade for their economy. The number of slaves held by a family also indicated its status in the community.

▪ ***Labour and Slavery***

The Atlantic Slave Trade was the result of, among other things, labour shortage, itself in turn created by the desire of European colonists to exploit New World land and resources for capital profits. **Native peoples were at first utilized as slave labour by Europeans, until a large number died from overwork and Old World diseases.** Alternative sources of labour, such as indentured servitude, failed to provide a sufficient workforce. Many crops could not be sold for profit, or even grown, in Europe. Exporting crops and goods from the New World to Europe often proved to be more profitable than producing them on the European mainland. A vast amount of labour was needed to create and sustain plantations that required intensive labour to grow, harvest, and process prized tropical crops. Western Africa (part of which became known as "the Slave Coast"), and later Central Africa, became the source for enslaved people to meet the demand for labour.¹¹

The basic reason for the constant shortage of labour was that, with large amounts of cheap land available and lots of landowners searching for workers, free European immigrants were able to become landowners themselves after a relatively short time, thus increasing the need for workers.¹²

Thomas Jefferson attributed the use of slave labour in part to the climate, and the consequent idle leisure afforded by slave labour: "For in a warm climate, no man will labour for himself who can make another labour for him. This is so true, that of the proprietors of slaves a very small proportion indeed are ever seen to labour."¹³

▪ ***Slave Based Economies***

The industrial advancements based on conquest of lands and cheap labor through captured slaves also provided surplus funds to be utilized for research and scientific advancements to increase unimaginable wealth and power for the western nations. By 1790, British inventors had begun to create new machines that spun cotton at a rate that human hands could not approach.

¹¹ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Atlantic Slave trade'.

¹² Ibid.

¹³ Ibid.

The economic and technological advancement in Europe and America had been so fast that these nations started thinking themselves as the rightful owners of the entire world. They began to claim that being super humans, only they had the right to possess all the natural resources and lands occupied by the backward and weaker nations in Asia, Africa and other continents.

How Many Slaves

An eighteenth century writer has estimated the sterling value of the 303,737 slaves carried in 878 Liverpool ships between 1783 and 1793 at over fifteen million pounds.¹⁴

By 1840, Washington County, in the heart of the Delta, counted more than ten slaves for every white inhabitant. By 1850, each and every white family in the county held on average more than eighty slaves. The largest Delta planter, Stephen Duncan, owned 1,036 slaves and the value of his property by the late 1850s was estimated at \$1.3 million.¹⁵

▪ **Human Toll**

The transatlantic slave trade resulted in a vast and as yet still unknown loss of life for African captives both in and outside America. Approximately 1.2 – 2.4 million Africans died during their transport to the New World. More died soon upon their arrival. The number of lives lost in the procurement of slaves remains a mystery but may equal or exceed the number who survived to be enslaved.

The savage nature of the trade led to the destruction of individuals and cultures. The following figures do not include deaths of enslaved Africans as a result of their labour, slave revolts, or diseases suffered while living among New World populations.

Historian Ana Lucia Araujo has noted that the process of enslavement did not end with arrival on the American shores; the different paths taken by the individuals and groups who were victims of the Atlantic slave trade were influenced by different factors—including the disembarking region, the kind of work performed, gender, age, religion, and language.

A database compiled in the late 1990s put the figure for the **transatlantic slave trade at more than 11 million**

¹⁴ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 36.

¹⁵ Sven Beckert, *Empire of Cotton*, p. 113.

people. For a long time, an accepted figure was 15 million, although this has in recent years been revised down. Estimates by Patrick Manning are that about 12 million slaves entered the Atlantic trade between the 16th and 19th century, but about 1.5 million died on board ship. About 10.5 million slaves arrived in the Americas. Besides the slaves who died on the Middle Passage, **more Africans likely died during the slave raids in Africa and forced marches to ports. Manning estimates that 4 million died inside Africa after capture, and many more died young. Manning's estimate covers the 12 million who were originally destined for the Atlantic, as well as the 6 million destined for Asian slave markets and the 8 million destined for African markets.**¹⁶

The total, as such, comes to **26 million slaves**.

▪ ***Death Toll in Port Factories***

After being marched to the coast for sale, enslaved people waited in large forts called factories. The amount of time in factories varied, but Milton Meltzer's *Slavery: A World History* states this period resulted in or around 4.5% of deaths during the transatlantic slave trade. In other words, over 820,000 people would have died in African ports such as Benguela, Elmina and Bonny, reducing the number of those shipped to 17.5 million.¹⁷

According to another report, the death toll in the seasoning camps at such port factories were much more than quoted above:

(...) Around 5 million Africans died in these camps, reducing the number of survivors to about 10 million.¹⁸

▪ ***Atlantic Shipment***

The magnitude of Atlantic shipment of slaves can be assessed from the following:

(...) Before the African slave trade was completely banned by participating nations in 1853, 15.3 million enslaved people had arrived in the Americas.¹⁹

¹⁶ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Atlantic Slave trade'.

¹⁷ Ibid.

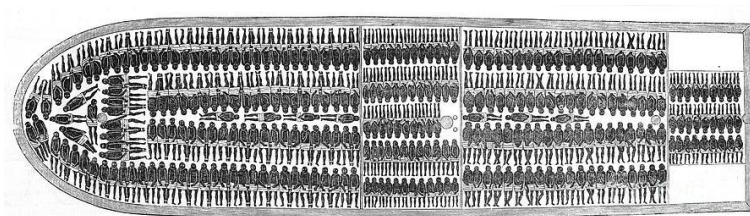
¹⁸ Ibid.

¹⁹ Ibid.

The slave traders utterly disregarded human considerations while transporting the slaves from Africa to their trans-Atlantic destinations. The World History, has given a diagram of a ship filled with the slaves.

The diagram has been explained in the following words:

The West African slave trade was highly profitable. Control of that trade, known as the Asiento, passed from Spain to Britain



in 1713. To maximize their profits, slave traders loaded their ships with as many captives as possible. (...) Under such inhuman conditions, many people died during the voyage.²⁰

It has been further stated that:

Ships with chained men and women aboard were soon a regular sight in the harbors of Cuba, Hispaniola, and the Bahamas during the 1500's. By 1540, about 10,000 Africans each year became slaves in the Americas. The slave trade peaked in the 1700's. In that century, between 6 and 7 million Africans were shipped to the Americas as slaves. The transatlantic trade in African slaves continued for more than 350 years.

The human cost of the slaves trade was terrible. Besides the approximately 10 million Africans who reached the slave markets, millions of others died in the hands of their captors.²¹

Some African rulers traded for guns, which they used to expand their power over their neighbors. In this way, kingdoms arose that depended on a steady supply of guns and gunpowder from Europe. In exchange, more European traders wanted slaves. The effects of slaves trade were devastating to some African societies.²²

By 1775, slave ships had carried 160,000 Africans to the

²⁰ Larry S. Krieger & others, *World History, Perspectives on the Past*, p. 368.

²¹ Ibid, p. 369.

²² Ibid, p. 369.

Chesapeake colonies, 140,000 to new slave colonies that opened up in the Carolinas and Georgia, and 30,000 to the northern colonies. These numbers were small compared to the myriads being carried to sugar colonies, however. Slave ships landed more than 1.5 million African captives on British Caribbean islands (primarily Jamaica and Barbados) by the late 1700s and had brought more than 2 million to Brazil. In North America, however, the numbers of the enslaved grew, except in the most malarial lowlands of the Carolina rice country. By 1775, 500,000 of the thirteen colonies' 2.5 million inhabitants were slaves, about the same as the number of slaves then alive in the British Caribbean colonies.²³

Interest Alone, the Governing Principle

Although politicians like Jefferson (1743-1826) had been supporting the proposal "that after the year 1800 c.e. there shall be neither slavery nor involuntary servitude in the territory between Appalachians and the Mississippi river" yet other policies of geographic and economic growth did not favor materialization of any such proposal for decades thereafter. Replying to Chesapeake delegates, Oliver Ellsworth of Connecticut—a future chief justice of the Supreme Court had said that he 'could not judge of the effects of slavery on character' ... Let the economic interest of white Americans dictate whether the Atlantic slave trade should be closed:

Concurring with Ellsworth, South Carolina's John Rutledge—another future chief justice—insisted that "religion and humanity [have] nothing to do with this question." "Interest alone is the governing principle with nations," he said. "The true question at present is whether the Southern States shall or shall not be parties to the Union. ... Perhaps, however, it was Ellsworth and Rutledge who were right: interest was the governing principle shaping the Constitution. In the interest of both profit and unity, they and most other white Americans proved willing to permit the forced movement of enslaved people."²⁴

²³ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. 3-4.

²⁴ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. 10-11.

Colonies as Manufacturing Estates

In the Principles of Political Economy, J. S. Mill²⁵ writes that:

These [outlying possessions of ours] are hardly to be looked upon as countries,... but more properly as outlying agricultural or manufacturing estates belonging to a larger community. Our West Indian colonies, for example, cannot be regarded as countries with a productive capital of their own ... [but are rather] the place where England finds it convenient to carry on the production of sugar, coffee and a few other tropical commodities.²⁶

European participation in the slave trade

One of the writers observes that:

Although Europeans were the market for slaves, Europeans rarely entered the interior of Africa, due to fear of disease and fierce African resistance. In Africa, convicted criminals could be punished by enslavement, a punishment which became more prevalent as slavery became more lucrative. Since most of these nations did not have a prison system, convicts were often sold or used in the scattered local domestic slave market.²⁷

As of 1778, Thomas Kitchin estimated that Europeans were bringing an estimated 52,000 slaves to the Caribbean yearly, with the French bringing the most Africans to the French West Indies (13,000 out of the yearly estimate). The Atlantic slave trade peaked in the last two decades of the 18th century, during and following the Kongo Civil War. Wars among tiny states along the Niger River's Igbo-inhabited region and the accompanying banditry also spiked in this period. Another reason for surplus supply of enslaved people was major warfare conducted by expanding states, such as the kingdom of Dahomey, the Oyo Empire, and the Asante Empire.²⁸

²⁵ John Stuart Mill (1806–1873) was an English philosopher, political economist, feminist, and civil servant, also known as one of the most influential thinkers in the history of liberalism.

²⁶ Edward W. Said, *Culture and Imperialism*, 59.

²⁷ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Atlantic Slave trade'.

²⁸ Ibid.

Who were the Slave Traders

Using the Canary Islands as a naval base, European, at the time primarily Portuguese traders, began to move their activities down the western coast of Africa, performing raids in which slaves would be captured to be later sold in the Mediterranean.²⁹

It started (on a significant scale) in about 1502 and lasted until 1580 when Portugal was temporarily united with Spain. While the Portuguese were directly involved in trading enslaved peoples, the Spanish empire relied on the *asiento* system, awarding merchants (mostly from other countries) the license to trade enslaved people to their colonies. During the first Atlantic system most of these traders were Portuguese, giving them a near-monopoly during the era. Some Dutch, English, and French traders also participated in the slave trade. After the union, Portugal came under Spanish legislation that prohibited it from directly engaging in the slave trade as a carrier. It became a target for the traditional enemies of Spain, losing a large share of the trade to the Dutch, English and French.³⁰

The Second Atlantic system was the trade of enslaved Africans by mostly English, Portuguese, French and Dutch traders. The main destinations of this phase were the Caribbean colonies and Brazil, as European nations built up economically slave-dependent colonies in the New World. (...) ³¹

It is estimated that more than half of the entire slave trade took place during the 18th century, with the British, Portuguese and French being the main carriers of nine out of ten slaves abducted from Africa. By the 1690s, the English were shipping the most slaves from West Africa. They maintained this position during the 18th century, becoming the biggest shippers of slaves across the Atlantic.³²

Slave Market regions and participation

There were eight principal areas used by Europeans to buy and ship slaves to the Western Hemisphere. The number of enslaved people sold to the New World varied throughout the slave trade. As for the distribution of slaves from regions of activity, certain areas produced far more enslaved people than others. **Between 1650 and 1900, 10.24 million enslaved Africans arrived in the Americas from the following**

²⁹ Ibid.

³⁰ Ibid.

³¹ Ibid.

³² Ibid.

regions:

Senegambia (Senegal and the Gambia): 4.8%

Upper Guinea (Guinea-Bissau, Guinea and Sierra Leone): 4.1%

Windward Coast (Liberia and Ivory Coast): 1.8%

Gold Coast (Ghana and east of Ivory Coast): 10.4%

Bight of Benin (Togo, Benin and Nigeria west of the Niger Delta):
20.2%

Bight of Biafra (Nigeria east of the Niger Delta, Cameroon, Equatorial
Guinea and Gabon): 14.6%

West Central Africa (Republic of Congo, Democratic Republic of
Congo and Angola): 39.4%

Southeastern Africa (Mozambique and Madagascar): 4.7%

European Competition:

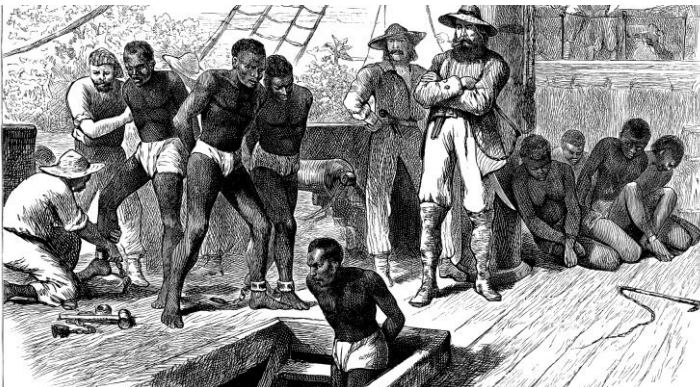
(...) By 1630, Africans had replaced the Tupani as the largest contingent of labour on Brazilian sugar plantations. This ended the European medieval household tradition of slavery, resulted in **Brazil's receiving the most enslaved Africans**, and revealed sugar cultivation and processing as the reason that roughly **84% of these Africans were shipped to the New World**.³³

³³ Ibid.

Ch. 2 -

BRITISH AND AMERICAN ROLE IN THE SLAVE TRADE

THE NEGRO SLAVES were "the strength and sinews of this western world." **Negro slavery demanded the Negro slave trade.** Therefore the preservation and improvement of the trade to Africa was "a matter of very high importance to this kingdom and the plantations thereunto belonging." And thus it remained, up to **1783, a cardinal object of British foreign policy. The first English slave-trading expedition was that of Sir John Hawkins in 1562.** Like so many Elizabethan ventures, it was a buccaneering expedition, encroaching on the papal arbitration of 1493 which made Africa a Portuguese monopoly. The slaves obtained were sold to the Spaniards in the West Indies. The English slave trade remained desultory and perfunctory in character until the establishment of British colonies in the Caribbean and the introduction of the sugar industry. When by 1660 the political and social upheavals of the Civil War period came to an end, England was ready to embark wholeheartedly on a branch of commerce whose importance to her sugar and her tobacco colonies in the New World was beginning to be fully appreciated.³⁴



European enslavers forcing the African slaves into the lower deck of a slave ship.

³⁴ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 30.

During the Stuart Monarchy, a monopolistic company i.e. the company of royal adventurers trading to Africa was incorporated in 1663 for a period of 1000 years. In 1672, a new company, '**The Royal African Company**' was created.

In 1672 the Baltic trade was thrown open and the monopoly of the Eastland Company overthrown. One of the most important consequences of the Glorious Revolution of 1688 and the expulsion of the Stuarts was the impetus it gave to the principle of free trade. (...) Only in one particular did the freedom accorded in the slave trade differ from the freedom accorded in other trades the commodity involved was man. (...) In 1750 a new organization was established, called the Company of Merchants trading to Africa, with a board of nine directors, three each from London, Bristol and Liverpool. **Of the slave traders listed in 1755, 237 belonged to Bristol, 147 to London, and 89 to Liverpool.**³⁵

With free trade and the increasing demands of the sugar plantations, the volume of the British slave trade rose enormously. The Royal African Company, between 1680 and 1686, transported an annual average of 5,000 slaves. In the first nine years of free trade Bristol alone shipped 160,950 Negroes to the sugar plantations. In 1760, 146 ships sailed from British ports for Africa, with a capacity for 36,000 slaves; in 1771, the number of ships had increased to 190 and the number of slaves to 47,000. The importation into Jamaica from 1700 to 1786 was 610,000, and it has been estimated that the total import of slaves into all the British colonies between 1680 and 1786 was over two million.³⁶

During the whole of the eighteenth century, according to Bryan Edwards, British slave traders furnished the sugar planters of France and Spain with half a million Negroes, justifying his doubts of "the wisdom and policy of this branch of the African commerce." Britain was not only the foremost slave trading country in the world; she had become, in Ramsay 's phrase, the "honourable slave carriers" of her rivals. (...) Liverpool's first slave trader, a modest vessel of thirty tons, sailed for Africa in 1709. This was the first step on a road which, by the end of the century, gained Liverpool the distinction of being the greatest slave trading port in the Old World. (...) In 1730 it had fifteen ships in the slave trade; in 1771 seven times as many. (...) In 1795 Liverpool had five-eighths of the British slave trade and three-sevenths of the

³⁵ Ibid, p. 32.

³⁶ Ibid, p. 32-33.

whole European slave trade.³⁷

As Britain rose in naval power and settled continental North America and some islands of the West Indies, they became the leading slave traders. At one stage the trade was the monopoly of the Royal Africa Company, operating out of London. But, following the loss of the company's monopoly in 1689, Bristol and Liverpool merchants became increasingly involved in the trade. By the late 17th century, one out of every four ships that left Liverpool harbour was a slave trading ship. Much of the wealth on which the city of Manchester, and surrounding towns, was built in the late 18th century, and for much of the 19th century, was based on the processing of slave-picked cotton and manufacture of cloth. Other British cities also profited from the slave trade. Birmingham, the largest gun-producing town in Britain at the time, supplied guns to be traded for slaves. 75% of all sugar produced in the plantations was sent to London, and much of it was consumed in the highly lucrative coffee houses there.³⁸

British Triangular trade

Referring to the British Triangular Trade, the Wikipedia reports that:

The first side of the triangle was the export of goods from Europe to Africa. A number of African kings and merchants took part in the trading of enslaved people from 1440 to about 1833. For each captive, the African rulers would receive a variety of goods from Europe. These included guns, ammunition and other factory made goods. The second leg of the triangle exported enslaved Africans across the Atlantic Ocean to the Americas and the Caribbean Islands. The third and final part of the triangle was the return of goods to Europe from the Americas. The goods were the products of slave-labour plantations and included cotton, sugar, tobacco, molasses and rum.³⁹

▪ **Support of Slave Trade**

Eric Williams observes that:

Prior to 1783, however, all classes in English society presented a united front with regard to the slave trade. The

³⁷ Ibid, p. 34.

³⁸ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Atlantic Slave trade'.

³⁹ Ibid.

monarchy, the government, the church, public opinion in general, supported the slave trade. There were few protests, and those were ineffective. The Spanish monarchy set the fashion which European royalty followed to the very last. The palace-fortresses of Madrid and Toledo were built out of the payment to the Spanish Crown for licences to transport Negroes. One meeting of the two sovereigns of Spain and Portugal was held in 1701 to discuss the arithmetical problem posed by a contract for ten thousand "tons" of Negroes granted the Portuguese. The Spanish queen, Christina, in the middle of the nineteenth century, openly participated in the slave trade to Cuba. The royal court of Portugal, when it moved to Brazil to avoid capture by Napoleon, did not find the slave atmosphere of its colonial territory uncongenial. Louis XIV fully appreciated the importance of the slave trade to metropolitan France and France overseas. The plans of the Great Elector for Prussian aggrandizement included the African slave trade.⁴⁰

▪ ***Horrible Continuity of Slave Trade***

Here is a report about continuity of slave trade:

The barbarous removal of the Negroes from Africa continued for at least twenty-five years after 1833, to the sugar plantations of Brazil and Cuba. Brazilian and Cuban economy depended on the slave trade. Consistency alone demanded that the British abolitionists oppose this trade. But that would retard Brazilian and Cuban development and consequently hamper British trade. The desire for cheap sugar after 1833 overcame all abhorrence of slavery. Gone was the horror which once was excited at the idea of a British West Indian slave-driver armed with a whip; the Cuban slave-driver, armed with whip, cutlass, dagger and pistols, and followed by bloodhounds, aroused not even comment from the abolitionists. Exeter Hall, the center of British humanitarianism, yielded to the Manchester School, the spearhead of British free trade.⁴¹

The triangular trade thereby gave a triple stimulus to British industry. The Negroes were purchased with British manufactures; transported to the plantations, they produced sugar, cotton, indigo, molasses and other tropical products, the processing of which created new industries in England; while the maintenance of the Negroes and their owners on the plantations provided another market for British industry, New England agriculture and the Newfoundland fisheries. By 1750 there was hardly a trading or a manufacturing town in

⁴⁰ Eric Williams, p. 39.

⁴¹ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 192.

England which was not in some way connected with the triangular or direct colonial trade. The profits obtained provided one of the main streams of that accumulation of capital in England which financed the Industrial Revolution.

The West Indian islands became the hub of the British Empire, of immense importance to the grandeur and prosperity of England. It was the Negro slaves who made these sugar colonies the most precious colonies ever recorded in the whole annals of imperialism. To Postlethwayt they were "the fundamental prop and support" of the colonies, "valuable people" whose labor supplied Britain with all plantation produce. The British Empire was "a magnificent superstructure of American commerce and naval power on an African foundation."⁴²

William Wood reckoned that a profit of seven shillings per head per annum was sufficient to enrich a country; each white man in the colonies brought a profit of over seven pounds. Sir Dalby Thomas went further every person employed on the sugar plantations was 130 times more valuable to England than one at home. Professor Pitman has estimated that in 1775 British West Indian plantations represented a valuation of fifty millions sterling, and the sugar planters themselves put the figure at seventy millions in 1788.⁴³

The "long voyage" was an admirable nursery for the seamen, the merchantmen invaluable aides to the navy in time of war; and advocates of the slave trade argued that its abolition would annihilate the marine by cutting off a great source of seamen. As one Liverpool slave trader wrote: "It is a matter of two much importance to this kingdom when ever it is abolished the naval importance of this kingdom is abolished with it, that moment our flag will gradually cease to ride triumphant on the seas."⁴⁴

Shipbuilding in England received a direct stimulus from the triangular trade. Vessels of a particular type were constructed for the slave trade, combining capacity with speed in an effort to reduce mortality. Many shipwrights in Liverpool were themselves slave traders.⁴⁵

The development of the triangular trade and of shipping and shipbuilding led to the growth of the great seaport towns. Bristol, Liverpool and Glasgow occupied, as seaports and trading centers, the position in the age of trade that

⁴² Ibid, p. 52.

⁴³ Ibid, p. 53.

⁴⁴ Ibid, p. 58.

⁴⁵ Ibid, p. 58.

Manchester, Birmingham and Sheffield occupied later in the age of industry.⁴⁶

It was the slave and sugar trades which made Bristol the second city of England for the first three-quarters of the eighteenth century. "There is not," wrote a local annalist, "a brick in the city but what is cemented with the blood of a slave. Sumptuous mansions, luxurious living, liveried menials, were the produce of the wealth made from the sufferings and groans of the slaves bought and sold by the Bristol merchants."⁴⁷

Britain, therefore, had been the largest trader of slaves as well as colonizer in the world. Here is a chart showing the growth of Seven British cities during 1685-1881.

▪ ***The Growth of Seven British Cities:***⁴⁸

	1685	1760	1881
Liverpool	4,000	35,000	555,425
Manchester	6,000	450,000	393,676
Birmingham	4,000	30,000	400,757
Leeds	7,000	(not known)	309,126
Sheffield	4,000	20,000	28,410
Bristol	29,000	100,000	206,503
Nottingham	8,000	170,000	111,631

▪ ***British Monopoly on Slave Trade***

This privilege was conceded to England by the Treaty of Utrecht in 1713 as one result of her victory in the War of the Spanish Succession, and produced popular rejoicings in the country. It was the proud boast of Chatham that his war with France had given England almost the entire control of the African coast and of the slave trade.⁴⁹

▪ ***The Bishop of Exeter***

To the very end the Bishop of Exeter retained his 655 slaves, for whom he received over £12,700 compensation in 1833.⁵⁰

▪ ***East India Company***

Repeated declarations were later made in Parliament on

⁴⁶ Ibid, p. 60.

⁴⁷ Ibid, p. 61.

⁴⁸ Larry S. Krieger & others, *World History, Perspectives on the Past*, p. 944.

⁴⁹ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 40.

⁵⁰ Ibid, p. 43.

behalf of the government that the East India Company was preparing legislation with a view to the "amelioration" of slavery and that such legislation would be produced in Parliament. But the promised legislation never was forthcoming. "The government of India were taking such steps to ameliorate the condition of slavery as, at no distant period, should lead to its total extinction." This was in 1837. By 1841 none of the rules and regulations for the mitigation of slavery had been produced. And when the question of equalizing the duties on East Indian rum came up and it was argued that East Indian rum was slave produce.⁵¹

Yet this was the tropical produce that the abolitionists were recommending to the people of England. Clarkson called on them to "shew their abhorrence of the planters' system by leaving off the use of their produce," and as late as 1840 was still looking to the East India Company to extirpate slavery "by means that are perfectly moral and pacific . . . namely, by the cultivation of the earth and by the employment of free labour."⁵²

In 1843 Brougham was still looking forward with sanguine hope to the abolition of slavery in India, "a consummation not to be accomplished so much by legislation, or by doing violence to property as by encouraging the native slave owners to declare their children free after a certain date."⁵³

▪ ***Slaves Imported from India***

Slaves were also imported from India as reported in the following:

Then he had moved from Indian to white to Negro. Now, deprived of his Negro, he turned back to white and then to Indian, this time the Indian from the East. India replaced Africa; between 1833 and 1917, Trinidad imported 145,000 East Indians and British Guiana 238,000. The pattern was the same for the other Caribbean colonies. Between 1854 and 1883 39,000 Indians were introduced into Guadeloupe; between 1853 and 1924, over 22,000 laborers from the Dutch East Indies and 34,000 from British India were carried to Dutch Guiana. Cuba, faced with a shortage of Negro slaves, adopted the interesting experiment of using Negro slaves side by side with indentured Chinese coolies, and after emancipation turned to the teeming thousands of Haiti and the British West Indies. Between 1913 and 1924 Cuba

⁵¹ Ibid, p. 184-185.

⁵² Ibid, p. 185.

⁵³ Ibid, p. 186.

imported 217,000 laborers from Haiti, Jamaica and Puerto Rico. What Saco wrote a hundred years ago was still true, sixty years after Cuba's abolition of slavery. (...) Slavery in no way implied, in any scientific sense, the inferiority of the Negro. Without it the great development of the Caribbean sugar plantations, between 1650 and 1850, would have been impossible.⁵⁴

Apartheid

Apartheid was the system of segregation or discrimination on grounds of race in force in South Africa 1948–91.⁵⁵ **The white minority consisting of less than 18% of the population of South Africa had been inflicting various humiliations and troubles on majority of the sons of the soil in the State.** We shall, however, be quoting only a few of the reports from the article 'Apartheid' from the Wikipedia. The system extended and institutionalized existing racial segregation guaranteeing the dominance of the white minority in every sphere of life. Segregation prevailed in the legal and social provisions for different races extending to the use of transport, free movement, use of park benches, beaches, bridges, clubs, restaurants, schools, hospitals and localities specified for different races. In spite of the domestic and international opposition to the system, the white regime maintained the apartheid system until February 1991.

▪ **Legislation For Racial Segregation**

Here are certain excerpts from the article:

Racial segregation in South Africa began in colonial times under the Dutch Empire, and continued when the British took over the Cape of Good Hope in 1795. Apartheid as an officially structured policy was introduced after the general election of 1948. Legislation classified inhabitants into four racial groups—"black", "white", "coloured", and "Indian", the last two of which were divided into several sub-classifications—and residential areas were segregated. From 1960 to 1983, 3.5 million non-white South Africans were removed from their homes, and forced into segregated neighbourhoods, in one of the largest mass removals in modern history. Non-white

⁵⁴ Ibid, p. 28-29.

⁵⁵ Concise Oxford English Dictionary.

political representation was abolished in 1970, and starting in that year black people were deprived of their citizenship, legally becoming citizens of one of ten tribally based self-governing homelands called Bantustans⁵⁶, four of which became nominally independent states. The government segregated education, medical care, beaches, and other public services, and provided black people with services that were inferior to those of white people. Apartheid sparked significant internal resistance and violence, and a long arms and trade embargo against South Africa. Since the 1950s, a series of popular uprisings and protests was met with the banning of opposition and imprisoning of anti-apartheid leaders. As unrest spread and became more effective and militarised, state organisations responded with repression and violence. Along with the sanctions placed on South Africa by the international community, this made it increasingly difficult for the government to maintain the regime.⁵⁷



▪ **Multi Racial Elections in 1994**

Apartheid reforms in the 1980s failed to quell the mounting opposition, and in 1990 President Frederick Willem de Klerk began negotiations to end apartheid, culminating in multi-racial democratic elections in 1994, won by the African

⁵⁶ A territory set aside for black inhabitants of South Africa and South West Africa (now Namibia), as part of the policy of apartheid.

⁵⁷ *Wikipedia*, s.v. Apartheid.

National Congress under Nelson Mandela.⁵⁸ The vestiges of apartheid still shape South African politics and society. De Klerk began the process of dismantling apartheid with the release of Mandela's mentor and several other political prisoners in October 1989. Although the official abolition of apartheid occurred in 1991 with repeal of the last of the remaining apartheid laws, nonwhites were not allowed to vote until 1993 and the end of apartheid is widely regarded as arising from the 1994 democratic general elections.

▪ **Forced Removals**

During the 1960s, 1970s and early 1980s, the government implemented a policy of "resettlement", to force people to move to their designated "group areas". Millions of people were forced to relocate. These removals included people relocated due to slum clearance programmes, labour tenants on white-owned farms, the inhabitants of the so-called "black spots" (black-owned land surrounded by white farms), the families of workers living in townships close to the homelands, and "surplus people" from urban areas, including thousands of people from the Western Cape (which was declared a "Coloured Labour Preference Area") who were moved to the Transkei and Ciskei homelands. The best-publicised forced removals of the 1950s occurred in Johannesburg, when 60,000 people were moved to the new township of Soweto (an abbreviation for South Western Townships).⁵⁹

▪ **Triumph**

As one of the oldest black settlements in Johannesburg, it held an almost symbolic importance for the 50,000 blacks it contained, both in terms of its sheer vibrancy and its unique culture. Despite a vigorous ANC protest campaign and worldwide publicity, the removal of Sophiatown began on 9 February 1955 under the Western Areas Removal Scheme. In the early hours, heavily armed police forced residents out of their homes and loaded their belongings onto government trucks. The residents were taken to a large tract of land 19 kilometers (12 mi) from the city centre, known as Meadowlands, which the government had purchased in 1953. Meadowlands became part of a new planned black city called Soweto. Sophiatown was destroyed by bulldozers, and a

⁵⁸ **Mandela served 27 years in prison**, initially on Robben Island, and later in Polls moor Prison and Victor Verster Prison. An international campaign lobbied for his release, which was granted in 1990 amid escalating civil strife. Mandela joined negotiations with President F. W. de Klerk to abolish apartheid and to establish multiracial elections in 1994, in which he led the ANC to victory and became South Africa's first black president.

⁵⁹ *Wikipedia*, s.v. Apartheid.

new white suburb named Triomf (Triumph) was built in its place.⁶⁰

▪ **Group Areas Act 1950**

This pattern of forced removal and destruction was to repeat itself over the next few years, and was not limited to black South Africans alone. Forced removals from areas like Cato Manor (Mkhumbane) in Durban, and District Six in Cape Town, where 55,000 coloured and Indian people were forced to move to new townships on the Cape Flats, were carried out under the Group Areas Act of 1950. Nearly 600,000 coloured, Indian and Chinese people were moved under the Group Areas Act. Some 40,000 whites were also forced to move when land was transferred from "white South Africa" into the black homelands.⁶¹

▪ **Affiliation Based on Common Cause**

The readers are fully aware of the fact that class discrimination had been an everlasting trait of the Israelites since 1400 BC till today. They always asserted themselves as the chosen race and the only people of God. They, therefore, could not get rid of their superiority complex on the basis stated above. The other nation most conspicuous in this respect had been the British minority ruling over South Africa. Being only 18% of the total population of South Africa, they asserted themselves as the superior and the ruling race who could be polluted by contact with the indigenous black majority i.e. the Negroes of Africa. Both nations, therefore, did not accept humanity of other people nor did they agree to grant any rights to them. There, as such, was no acceptance of universal brotherhood or equality of rights of all the descendants of Adam and Eve on Earth. It was on the basis of this class-discrimination that the Israelites continued to support the apartheid policy of the white British in South Africa in spite of the disapproval of such segregation by all the nations except USA. Here is a report about the same:

⁶⁰ *Ibid.*

⁶¹ *Ibid.*

By 1980, as international opinion turned decisively against the apartheid regime, the government and much of the white population increasingly looked upon the country as a bastion besieged militarily, politically, culturally, ideologically, economically and socially by communism and radical black nationalists. Considerable effort was put into circumventing sanctions, and the government even went so far as to develop nuclear weapons, with the help of several different sources; these sources allegedly include Israel.⁶²

Most of the nations in the world did not approve the apartheid policy of the South African white minority. Consequently, different sanctions were passed against them to isolate them from trading and maintaining social relationships with other nations. The impact of such actions is clear from the following:

By 1987, South Africa's economy was growing at one of the lowest rates in the world, and the ban on South African participation in international sporting events was frustrating many whites in South Africa. Examples of African states with black leaders and white minorities existed in Kenya and Zimbabwe. Whispers of South Africa one day having a black President sent more hardline whites into Rightist parties. Mandela was moved to a four-bedroom house of his own, with a swimming pool and shaded by fir trees, on a prison farm just outside Cape Town. He had an unpublicised meeting with Botha.⁶³ Botha impressed Mandela by walking forward, extending his hand and pouring Mandela's tea. The two had a friendly discussion, with Mandela comparing the African National Congress' rebellion with that of the Afrikaner rebellion and talking about everyone being brothers.⁶⁴

▪ ***Alternates to Slavery***

After promulgation of United Kingdom's Slavery Abolition act 1833, the white ruling regime of South Africa adopted other measures such as indentured labors, limit on financial means, education and holdings of land, ban on practicing skilled trades, ban on voting or sitting of blacks in the parliament and forcing blacks to live in special locations assigned to them.

⁶² *Ibid.*

⁶³ Pieter Willem Botha, DMS (1916–2006), commonly known as "The Big Crocodile, last Prime Minister of South Africa from 1978 to 1984 and the first executive State President from 1984 to 1989.

⁶⁴ *Wikipedia*, s.v. Apartheid.

Slavery in the Americas

Under the Title given above we find in the Wikipedia that:

The Christianisation of Europe in the Early Middle Ages saw the traditional slavery disappearing in Europe and being replaced with feudalism. But this consensus was broken in the slave states of the United States, where the justification switched from religion (the slaves are heathens) to race (Africans are the descendants of Ham); indeed, in 1667, Virginia's assembly enacted a bill declaring that baptism did not grant freedom to slaves. (...) The introduction of Catholic Spanish colonies to the Americas resulted in forced conversions, indentured servitude and even slavery to the indigenous peoples. Some Portuguese and Spanish explorers were quick to enslave the indigenous peoples encountered in the New World.⁶⁵

▪ **Slavery in the United States**

Approximately half of all slaves (46 percent, to be precise) sold to the Americas between 1492 and 1888 arrived there in the years after 1780. Slavery's future was now firmly attached to the industrial capitalism that it had enabled.

As the Caribbean cotton explosion shows, war capitalism – exactly **because violence was the fundamental characteristic – was portable**. Its next stop was South America. With cotton exports from the West Indies rapidly rising but demand spiraling even faster, South American farmers discovered the newly profitable cotton markets. In Guyana, between 1789 and 1802 cotton production skyrocketed by a staggering 862 percent, fueled by the concurrent import of about twenty thousand slaves into Surinam and Demerara.⁶⁶

The slaves had no rights to vote like the free citizens in USA. It has, therefore, been stated that:

At the time the United States Constitution was ratified (1789), a relatively **small number of free persons of color were among its voting citizens**.⁶⁷

The Wikipedia records that:

Slavery in the United States was the legal institution of

⁶⁵ Wikipedia, s.v. Slavery in the Americas.

⁶⁶ Sven Beckert, *Empire of Cotton*, p. 93.

⁶⁷ Wikipedia, s.v. *Slavery in the United States*.

human chattel slavery that existed in the United States of America in the 18th and 19th centuries after it gained independence and before the end of the American Civil War. **Slavery had been practiced in British North America from early colonial days, and was recognized in all the Thirteen Colonies at the time of the Declaration of Independence in 1776.**⁶⁸

New Orleans became nationally important as a slave market and port, as slaves were shipped from there upriver by steamboat to plantations on the Mississippi River; it also sold slaves who had been shipped downriver from markets such as Louisville. By 1840, it had the largest slave market in North America. It became the wealthiest and the fourth-largest city in the nation, based chiefly on the slave trade and associated businesses. The trading season was from September to May, after the harvest.⁶⁹

▪ ***Slave Holders as Presidents of USA***

The importance of the institution of the slavery in USA can also be assessed from the fact that most of the presidents and other distinguished as well as influential politicians of USA had been the slave holders up to the declaration of emancipation. Horton⁷⁰ Said:

"In the 72 years between the election of George Washington and the election of Abraham Lincoln, 50 of those years [had] a slaveholder as president of the United States, and, for that whole period of time, there was never a person elected to a second term who was not a slaveholder."⁷¹

Berlin wrote:

The internal slave trade became the largest enterprise in the South outside the plantation itself, and probably the most advanced in its employment of modern transportation, finance, and publicity. The slave trade industry developed its own unique language, with terms such as "prime hands, bucks, breeding wenches, and "fancy girls" coming into common use.⁷²

In the 18th century, Britain had become the world's largest slave trader.⁷³

⁶⁸ Ibid.

⁶⁹ Wikipedia, s.v. Slavery in the Americas.

⁷⁰ James Oliver Horton (b.1943, Historian, educator) is one of the most important contemporary African-American historians, author of many books including *Slavery and the Making of America* (2006).

⁷¹ Wikipedia, s.v. *Slavery in the United States*,

⁷² Ibid.

⁷³ Ibid.

▪ ***Constitution of the United States***

The Constitution of the United States was drafted in 1787, and included several provisions regarding slavery. Section 9 of **Article I forbade the Federal government, from banning the "importation" of persons that an individual state's laws considered "proper to admit" (...) ⁷⁴**

▪ ***Contribution of Slavery towards Development of Capitalism in USA***

We have before us a book written by Edward E. Baptist bearing the title 'The Half Has Never Been Told, Slavery and Making of American Capitalism' (September 9, 2014). The Amazon.com review has an interesting note about the book as quoted below:

As historian Edward Baptist reveals in *The Half Has Never Been Told*, the expansion of slavery in the first eight decades after American independence drove the evolution and modernization of the United States. In the span of a single lifetime, the South grew from a narrow coastal strip of worn-out tobacco plantations to a continental cotton empire, and the United States grew into a modern, industrial, and capitalist economy. Until the Civil War, Baptist explains, the most important American economic innovations were ways to make slavery ever more profitable. Through forced migration and torture, slave owners extracted continual increases in efficiency from enslaved African Americans. Thus the United States seized control of the world market for cotton, the key raw material of the Industrial Revolution, and became a wealthy nation with global influence.⁷⁵

▪ ***Holders of Slaves***

Spain and France were more conspicuous among the nations who held the largest number of slaves.

We learn that the western part of St. Domingo, formerly belonging to Spain, had been occupied by Buccaneers who ceded to France at the Peace of Ryswick in 1697.

Although no exact details about the treatment of slaves are presently available, yet we know that, for centuries, the colonizers continued to exploit the inexpensive labor

⁷⁴ Ibid.

⁷⁵ Amazon.com, Review of '*The Half Has Never Been Told*' by Edward E. Baptist.

force consisting of the slaves who had been the main factor to promote cultivation of land and for speedy industrialization and development in the American and Australian continents as well as in the southern parts of Africa and the south-eastern parts of the Asian continent. Keeping in view the miserable condition of the slaves and the original inhabitants of the lands, mentioned above, one feels that Karl Marx's⁷⁶ classic theory of exploitation of the proletariat⁷⁷ by the bourgeois⁷⁸ is nothing as compared to the woes of the ill-fated victims of the colonizers.

▪ **Distribution of Slave Holders**

As of the 1860 Census, one may compute the following statistics on slaveholding: Enumerating slave schedules by county, 393,975 named persons held 3,950,546 unnamed slaves, for an average of about ten slaves per holder. As some large holders held slaves in multiple counties and are thus multiply counted, this slightly overestimates the number of slaveholders.⁷⁹

▪ **Slave Populations**

Both in Brazil and in the United States—the countries with the two largest slave populations in the Western Hemisphere—the end of slavery found the regions in which

⁷⁶ 'Karl Marx: 1818-83': Brought up in a Jewish family which converted to Protestantism in order to escape anti-Semitism. He Studied at the Univ. of Bonn (1835-36) and Berlin (1836-41), where he associated with the radical followers of Hegel, who were concerned particularly with the critique of religion. (...) emigrated to Paris, where he became a communist (...) in Paris he began his lifelong friendship with Friedrich Engels. (...) in collaboration with Engels wrote (...) the famous *Communist Manifesto* (1848), a masterpiece of political propaganda which ends with the celebrated rallying-cry '*The workers have nothing to lose but their chains. They have a world to win. Workers of all lands, unite!*' With Engels he also reorganized the Communist League which met in London in 1847. (...) in the reading room of the British Museum he began the researches which culminated in the publication of his (...) magnum opus *Das Kapital*, one of the most influential works of the 19th century. In this last work, which remained unfinished at his death, he developed his mature doctrines of the theory of *surplus value, class conflict and the exploitation of the working class*, (*Chambers Biographical Dic*, 1997, p.1243).

⁷⁷ 'proletariat' means: 'the whole body of wage-earners (esp. manual workers) contrasted with the owners of industry (the bourgeoisie' (*Oxf Advanced Learners*).

⁷⁸ 'bourgeois' means: 'person of the class that owns property or engages in trade' (*Oxf Advanced Learners*).

⁷⁹ Wikipedia, s.v. '*Slavery in the United States*'.

slaves had been concentrated poorer than other regions of these same countries. For the United States, a case could be made that this was due to the Civil War, which did so much damage to the South, but no such explanation would apply to Brazil, which fought no Civil War over this issue. Moreover, even in the United States, the South lagged behind the North in many ways even before the Civil War. (...) What this means is that, whether employed as domestic servants or producing crops or other goods, **millions suffered exploitation and dehumanization for no higher purpose than the transient aggrandizement of slaveowners.**⁸⁰

⁸⁰ Ibid.

Ch. 3 -

SLAVERY THE BACKBONE OF NEW WORLD ECONOMY

The New World economy had been based entirely on exploitation of slaves and indigenous people in the continents. Growth of tobacco, sugar and cotton depended almost entirely on the use of unpaid or inexpensive labor for plantation and harvesting of the crops in the American continents through slaves or indentured labor used coercively by the masters. The readers will, therefore, find details of such labor at various places in the book.

New World Destinations

Although writers like John J. Pool and William Gervase Clarence Smith did their utmost to stigmatize Muslim states for major role in the capturing and holding large number of slaves yet the historical facts reveal a story entirely opposite to the propagation made by them. The readers may know the true position from the following:

The first enslaved Africans to reach what would become the United States arrived in January 1526 as part of a Spanish attempt to colonize South Carolina near Jamestown. By November the 300 Spanish colonists were reduced to 100, and their slaves from 100 to 70. The enslaved people revolted and joined a nearby Native American tribe, while the Spanish abandoned the colony altogether. Colombia received its first enslaved people in 1533. El Salvador, Costa Rica and Florida began their stints in the slave trade in 1541, 1563 and 1581, respectively.⁸¹

The Atlantic Slave Trade

Under the above title Wikipedia reports that:

The **Atlantic slave trade or transatlantic slave trade** took place across the Atlantic Ocean from the 16th through to the

⁸¹ Ibid.

19th centuries. The vast majority of those enslaved that were transported to the New World, many on the triangular trade route and its Middle Passage, were West Africans from the central and western parts of the continent sold by other western Africans to western European slave traders, with a small minority being captured directly by the slave traders in coastal raids, and brought to the Americas. The numbers were so great that Africans who came by way of the slave trade became the most numerous Old World immigrants in both North and South America before the late 18th century. Far more slaves were taken to South America than to the north. The South Atlantic economic system centered on producing commodity crops, and making goods and clothing to sell in Europe, and increasing the numbers of African slaves brought to the New World. This was crucial to those western European countries which, in the late 17th and 18th centuries, were vying with each other to create overseas empires.⁸²

The Portuguese were the first to engage in the New World slave trade in the 16th century, in 1526, and other countries soon followed. Ship owners considered the slaves as cargo to be transported to the Americas as quickly and cheaply as possible, there to be sold to labour in coffee, tobacco, cocoa, sugar and cotton plantations, gold and silver mines, rice fields, construction industry, cutting timber for ships, in skilled labour, and as domestic servants.

The Atlantic slave traders, ordered by trade volume, were: the Portuguese, the British, the French, the Spanish, and the Dutch Empire. Several had established outposts on the African coast where they purchased slaves from local African leaders. These slaves were managed by a factor who was established on or near the coast to expedite the shipping of slaves to the New World. These slaves were kept in a factory while awaiting shipment. Current estimates are that about 12 million Africans were shipped across the Atlantic, although the number purchased by the traders is considerably higher. (...) Between 1600 and 1800, approximately 300,000 sailors engaged in the slave trade visited West Africa.⁸³

Perils of the Sea

In 1783, moreover, the same Mansfield handed down a decision in the case of the ship *Long*. Short of water, the captain had thrown 132 slaves overboard, and now the owners brought an action for insurance alleging that the loss of the slaves fell within the clause of the policy which insured against "perils of the sea." In Mansfield's view "the case of

⁸² Ibid.

⁸³ Ibid.

slaves was the same as if horses had been thrown overboard." Damages of thirty pounds were awarded for each slave, and the idea that the captain and crew should be prosecuted for mass homicide never entered into the head of any humanitarian.⁸⁴

The New World and the Slave Trade

The first instance of slave trading and slave labor developed in the New World involved, racially, not the Negro but the Indian. The Indians rapidly succumbed to the excessive labor demanded of them, the insufficient diet, the white man's diseases, and their inability to adjust themselves to the new way of life. Accustomed to a life of liberty, their constitution and temperament were ill-adapted to the rigors of plantation slavery. As Fernando Ortiz writes: "To subject the Indian to the mines, to their monotonous, insane and severe labor, without tribal sense, without religious ritual, . . . was like taking away from him the meaning of his life. ... It was to enslave not only his muscles but also his collective spirit."⁸⁵

The story is told, on the other hand, of the Indian chieftain, Hatuey, who, doomed to die for resisting the invaders, staunchly refused to accept the Christian faith as the gateway to salvation when he learned that his executioners, too, hoped to get to Heaven. It is far more probable that Hatuey, rather than the anonymous woman, represented contemporary Indian opinion of their new overlords.

England and France, in their colonies, followed the Spanish practice of enslavement of the Indians. There was one conspicuous difference the attempts of the Spanish Crown, however ineffective, to restrict Indian slavery to those who refused to accept Christianity and to the warlike Caribs on the specious plea that they were cannibals.⁸⁶

▪ **Different Types of Servants or Slaves**

We already discussed various sources of slavery during the Roman period. With the advancement of civilization and over all change of circumstances in the world, there emerged many new categories of the slaves. During the colonial period in USA servants or slaves could be categorized in the following classes.

⁸⁴ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 46.

⁸⁵ Ibid, p. 7-8.

⁸⁶ Ibid, p. 8.

1. Poor Whites

Defoe bluntly stated that the white servant was a slave. He was not. The servant's loss of liberty was of limited duration, the Negro was slave for life. The servant's status could not descend to his off spring, Negro children took the status of the mother. The master at no time had absolute control over the person and liberty of his servant as he had over his slave. The servant had rights, limited but recognized by law and inserted in a contract.⁸⁷

2. Indentured Servitude or Servants

A regular traffic developed in these indentured servants. Between 1654 and 1685 ten thousand sailed from Bristol alone, chiefly for the West Indies and Virginia. In 1683 white servants represented one-sixth of Virginia's population. Two-thirds of the immigrants to Pennsylvania during the eighteenth century were white servants; in four years 25,000 came to Philadelphia alone. It has been estimated that more than a quarter of a million persons were of this class during the colonial period, and that they probably constituted one-half of all English immigrants, the majority going to the middle colonies.⁸⁸

3. Convicts

Convicts provided another steady source of white labor. The harsh feudal laws of England recognized three hundred capital crimes. Typical hanging offences included: picking a pocket for more than a shilling; shoplifting to the value of five shillings; stealing a horse or a sheep; poaching rabbits on a gentleman's estate. Offences for which the punishment prescribed by law was transportation comprised the stealing of cloth, burning stacks of corn, the maiming and killing of cattle, hindering customs officers in the execution of their duty, and corrupt legal practices. Proposals made in 1664 would have banished to the colonies all vagrants, rogues and idlers, petty thieves, gipsies, and loose persons frequenting unlicensed brothels. A piteous petition in 1667 prayed for transportation instead of the death sentence for a wife convicted of stealing goods valued at three shillings and four pence. In 1745 transportation was the penalty for the theft of a silver spoon and a gold watch. One year after the emancipation of the Negro slaves, transportation was the penalty for trade union activity.⁸⁹

⁸⁷ Ibid, p. 18.

⁸⁸ Ibid, p. 10.

⁸⁹ Ibid, p. 11-12.

4. Redemptioners

Redemptioners were those who had signed a contract indented by Law binding them to service for a stipulated time in return for their passage. Redemptioners who arranged with the captain of the ship to pay for their passage on arrival or within a specific time thereafter; If they did not, they were sold by the captain to the highest bidder.

5. Kidnapped People

As commercial speculation entered the picture, abuses crept in. Kidnapping was encouraged to a great degree and became a regular business in such towns as London and Bristol. Adults would be plied with liquor, children enticed with sweetmeats. The kidnapers were called "spirits," defined as "one that taketh upp men and women and children and sells them on a ship to be conveyed beyond the sea." The captain of a ship trading to Jamaica would visit the Clerkenwell House of Correction, ply with drink the girls who had been imprisoned there as disorderly, and "invite" them to go to the West Indies. The temptations held out to the unwary and the credulous were so attractive that, as the mayor of Bristol complained, husbands were induced to forsake their wives, wives their husbands, and apprentices their masters, while wanted criminals found on the transport ships a refuge from the arms of the law.⁹⁰

6. Manorial Tenants and Servants

Those tenants fleeing from the irksome restriction of feudalism, Irishmen seeking freedom from the oppression of land lords and bishops including Germans running away from the devastation of the 30 years war formed the main part of this classification. As stated earlier, the European countries had developed the habit of dumping their outcasts, criminal convicts etc. which was disapproved by some of the intelligentsia and scholars as reported below:

Benjamin Franklin opposed this "dumping upon the New World of the outcasts of the Old" as the most cruel

⁹⁰ Ibid, p. 10-11.

insult ever offered by one nation to another, and asked, if England was justified in sending her convicts to the colonies, whether the latter were justified in sending to England their rattlesnakes in exchange?⁹¹

7. Heresy and Religious Intolerance

Religious intolerance sent more workers to the plantations. In 1661 Quakers refusing to take the oath for the third time were to be transported; in 1664 transportation, to any plantation except Virginia or New England, or a fine of one hundred pounds was decreed for the third **offence for persons over sixteen assembling in groups of five or more under pretence of religion**. Many of Monmouth's⁹² adherents were sent to Barbados, with orders to be detained as servants for ten years. The prisoners were granted in batches to favorite courtiers, who made handsome profits from the traffic in which, it is alleged, even the Queen shared. A similar policy was resorted to after the Jacobite risings of the eighteenth century.⁹³

8. Witches

We have gone into some detail about the origin and treatment of the witches in our book 'Islam and Emancipation of Women'. From the 16th to the 18th century, the colonizers also took undue advantage of the prevailing superstitions in Europe. Here is a report about the same:

It was enough to point a finger at a woman in the streets of London and call her a "spirit" to start a riot. (...) Jeffreys vowed that he had come to Bristol with a broom to sweep the city clean, and his wrath fell on the kidnapers who infested the highest municipal offices. The merchants and justices were in the habit of straining the law to increase the number of felons who could be transported to the sugar plantations they owned in the West Indies. **They would terrify petty offenders with the prospect of hanging and then induce them to plead for transportation.** Jeffreys turned upon the mayor, complete in scarlet and furs, who was about to sentence a

⁹¹ Ibid, p. 12.

⁹² Duke of Monmouth (Title of James Scott 1649-1685), English claimant to the throne of England. The illegitimate son of Charles II, he became the focus for whig supporters for a protestant succession. In 1685 he led a rebellion against the catholic James II. He proclaimed himself king at Taunton in Somerset, but his force was defeated at the battle of Sedgemoor and he was executed. (*Oxford English Reference Dictionary*)

⁹³ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 13.

pickpocket to transportation to Jamaica, forced him, to the great astonishment of Bristol's worthy citizens, to enter the prisoners' dock, like a common felon, to plead guilty or not guilty, and hectoring him in characteristic language: "Sir, Mr. Mayor, you I meane, Kidnapper, and an old Justice of the Peace on the bench. ... I doe not knowe him, an old knave: he goes to the taverne, and for a pint of sack he will bind people servants to the Indies at the taverne. A kidnapping knave! I will have his ears off, before I goe forth of towne. . . . Kidnapper, you, I mean, Sir. ... If it were not in respect of the sword, which is over your head, I would send you to Newgate, you kidnapping knave. You are worse than the pick-pockett who stands there. ... I hear the trade of kidnapping is of great request. They can discharge a felon or a traitor, provided they will go to Mr. Alderman's plantation at the West Indies." The mayor was fined one thousand pounds, but apart from the loss of dignity and the fear aroused in their hearts, the merchants lost nothing their gains were left inviolate.⁹⁴

These and many other forms of slavery were invented after the universal proclamation of abolition in Europe. As such, exploitation of human rights and continuity of slavery in new and complicated forms had no end in the Western Hemisphere.

▪ ***One Negro worth Four Indians***

Negroes had special value as compared to the red-Indians as described in the following:

In addition the Indian slave was inefficient. The Spaniards discovered that one Negro was worth four Indians. (...) The future staples of the New World, sugar and cotton, required strength which the Indian lacked, and demanded the robust "cotton nigger" as sugar's need of strong mules produced in Louisiana the epithet "sugar mules." According to Lauber, "When compared with sums paid for Negroes at the same time and place the prices of Indian slaves are found to have been considerably lower." The Indian reservoir, too, was limited, the African inexhaustible. Negroes therefore were stolen in Africa to work the lands stolen from the Indians in America. The voyages of Prince Henry the Navigator complemented those of Columbus, West African history became the complement of West Indian.⁹⁵

⁹⁴ Ibid, p. 14-15.

⁹⁵ Ibid, p. 9.

▪ ***Price of a Negro – One Birmingham Gun***

In the nineteenth century Birmingham guns were exchanged for African palm-oil, but the eighteenth century saw a less innocent exchange. The Birmingham guns of the eighteenth century were exchanged for men, and it was a common saying that the price of a Negro was one Birmingham gun. The African musket was an important Birmingham export, reaching a total of 100,000 to 150,000 annually. With the British government and the East India Company, Africa ranked as the most important customer of the Birmingham gun makers.⁹⁶

▪ ***Slavery in Africa and the New World Contrasted***

Forms of slavery varied both in Africa and in the New World. In general, slavery in Africa was not heritable – that is, the children of slaves were free – while in the Americas, children of slave mothers were considered born into slavery. This was connected to another distinction: slavery in West Africa was not reserved for racial or religious minorities, as it was in European colonies, although the case was otherwise in places such as Somalia, where Bantus were taken as slaves for the ethnic Somalis.⁹⁷

The treatment of slaves in Africa was more variable than in the Americas. At one extreme, the kings of Dahomey routinely slaughtered slaves in hundreds or thousands in sacrificial rituals, and slaves as human sacrifices was also known in Cameroon. On the other hand, slaves in other places were often treated as part of the family, "adopted children," with significant rights including the right to marry without their masters' permission.

The existence of a vast African diaspora is largely the legacy of the practice of transporting millions of African slaves out of the continent by these external colonisers. Modern scholars also blame the current under-development of Africa on the colonial era.⁹⁸

In the Americas, slaves were denied the right to marry freely and masters did not generally accept them as equal members of the family. New World slaves were considered the property of their owners, and slaves convicted of revolt or murder were executed.⁹⁹

⁹⁶ Ibid, p. 82.

⁹⁷ Wikipedia s.v. 'Atlantic Slave Trade'.

⁹⁸ Ibid.

⁹⁹ Ibid.

Economics of Slavery

By far the most financially profitable West Indian colonies in 1800 belonged to the United Kingdom. After entering the sugar colony business late, British naval supremacy and control over key islands such as Jamaica, Trinidad, the Leeward Islands and Barbados and the territory of British Guiana gave it an important edge over all competitors; while many British did not make gains, a handful of individuals made small fortunes. This advantage was reinforced when France lost its most important colony, St. Domingue (western Hispaniola, now Haiti), to a slave revolt in 1791 and supported revolts against its rival Britain, after the 1793 French revolution in the name of liberty. Before 1791, British sugar had to be protected to compete against cheaper French sugar.¹⁰⁰

■ ***Africa Nearer than Moon***

Here, then, is the origin of Negro slavery. The reason was economic, not racial; it had to do not with the color of the laborer, but the cheapness of the labor. As compared with Indian and white labor, Negro slavery was eminently superior. "In each case," writes Bassett, discussing North Carolina, "it was a survival of the fittest. Both Indian slavery and white servitude were to go down before the black man's superior endurance, docility, and labor capacity. The features of the man, his hair, color and dentifrice, his "subhuman" characteristics so widely pleaded, were only the later rationalizations to justify a simple economic fact: that the colonies needed labor and resorted to Negro labor because it was cheapest and best. This was not a theory, it was a practical conclusion deduced from the personal experience of the planter. He would have gone to the moon, if necessary, for labor. Africa was nearer than the moon, nearer too than the more populous countries of India and China. But their turn was to come."¹⁰¹

■ ***Land of Masters and Slaves***

None the less, though prices continued to fall, the exports of Virginia and Maryland increased more than six times between 1663 and 1699. The explanation lay in two words Negro slavery, which cheapened the cost of production. Negro

¹⁰⁰ Ibid.

¹⁰¹ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 19-20.

slaves, one-twentieth of the population in 1670, were one-fourth in 1730. "Slavery, from being an insignificant factor in the economic life of the colony, had become the very foundation upon which it was established." There was still room in Virginia, as there was not in Barbados, for the small farmer, but land was useless to him if he could not compete with slave labor. So the Virginian peasant, like the Barbadian, was squeezed out. "The Virginia which had formerly been so largely the land of the little farmer, had become the land of Masters and Slaves. For aught else there was no room."¹⁰²

▪ **Plantation and Harvesting Slavery**

From 17th to 19th century, about 80% of slaves under the western nations had been applied to growing and harvesting cotton, sugar, rice, tobacco, indigo and other cash crops in almost all the colonial lands throughout the American continents, Africa, Australia and parts of Asia especially in the South-East. In 1857, the British economist John T. Danson pointed out the connection between American slavery and the British cotton manufacture. "Efforts to cultivate cotton with free labor had largely failed, he observed, lending support to his conclusion that" as far as yet appears, [cotton] must continue to be grown, chiefly by slave-labour (...) The years this essay was published, a full 68% of all cotton arriving in United Kingdom came from the United States and slaves grew more of it.¹⁰³

Without any constraints on the availability of lands, as in the West Indies, or on labor, as in Anatolia, the volume of Brazilian cotton expanded sharply. **Between 1785 and 1792, Brazil overtook the Ottoman Empire in cotton shipments to England.** By the end of that period, nearly 8 million pounds of Brazilian cotton had landed in Great Britain, compared to 4-5 million pounds from the Ottoman Empire and 12 million pounds from the West Indies. In Maranhão – then the most important cotton region of Brazil – exports double between 1770 and 1780, nearly double again by 1790, and nearly tripled once more by 1800. For a few years in the late 1700s, the period when neither West Indian nor Ottoman cotton production had expanded sufficiently and before North American cotton swamped markets, Brazil became a very important supplier to the booming British cotton textile

¹⁰² Ibid. p. 26.

¹⁰³ Sven Beckert, *Empire of Cotton*, (Penguin Books, Random House, UK, 2015), p. 84.

industry. Not only did Brazilian farmers produced significant amounts of cotton, but they were also able to grow a particularly long staple variety that was better suited to emerging factory technology. By the 1780s, slaves in the West Indies and South America produced the vast majority of cotton sold on world markets, and this explosive combination of slavery and conquest fueled the Industrial Revolution all the way to 1861. John Tarleton, a successful slave trader and Liverpool cotton merchant, understood that the slave trade, the export of commodities from plantation economies, and the well-being of the British shipping industry were all “mutually blended and connected together.” And the combination was stupendously profitable: Cotton and slaves made many merchants rich, with Tarleton calculating, for example, that his “fortune” had tripled between 1770 and 1800.¹⁰⁴

▪ **Slave-Based Cotton Growth**

In the West Indies and Brazil, however, building on the experiences of their sugar economies, a new way of producing cotton had been invented that focused clearly on plantations and slavery. And while the production growth in these parts of the world soon reached their limits, or, as in Haiti’s case, was curtailed by revolution, there was a nearby region that seemed to meet all conditions for producing an abundant supply of cotton: the newly born United States of America. It was there that cotton production based on slavery would reach unprecedented heights.¹⁰⁵

From the last decade of the 18th century to the mid of 19th century, both US and UK had become the hubs of the cotton empire in the world. Maximum lands in the colonies under UK and USA in North America had unprecedented increase in the import and utilization of the slaves for plantation of various crops and especially the cotton and sugar. In case of cotton e.g. we quote the following:

Indeed, more than half of all American exports between 1815 and 1860 consisted of cotton. Cotton so dominated the U.S. economy that cotton production statistics “became an increasingly vital unit in assessing the American economy.” It was on the back of cotton, and thus on the backs of slaves,

¹⁰⁴ Ibid, p. 94.

¹⁰⁵ Ibid, p. 97.

that the U.S. economy ascended in the world.¹⁰⁶

Southern planters, convinced of their central role in the global economy, gleefully announced that they held “THE LEVER THAT WIELDS THE DESTINY OF MODERN CIVILIZATION.” As the American Cotton Planter put in 1853, “The slave-labor of the United States, has hitherto conferred and is still conferring inappreciable blessings on mankind. If these blessings continue, slave-labor must also continue, for it is idle to talk of producing Cotton for the world’s supply with free labor. It has never yet been successfully grown by voluntary labor.”¹⁰⁷

The world of cotton, which before 1780 had consisted mostly of scattered regional and local networks, now increasingly became one global matrix with a single nexus. And slavery in the United States was its foundation.¹⁰⁸

▪ ***Cheap Labor***

Indeed, the cheapness of cottons enabled by slavery in the United States would help undermine local manufacturing everywhere.¹⁰⁹

¹⁰⁶ Ibid, p. 119.

¹⁰⁷ Ibid, p. 119.

¹⁰⁸ Ibid, p. 120.

¹⁰⁹ Ibid, p. 134.

Ch. 4 -

HORRORS OF SLAVERY

Slave Codes and Conditions

- ***Opportunity to Learn, to Read or to Write Prohibited***

Slaves could be sold, their sexuality control, family life prohibited and their movement, ability to gather with others, own property etc. severely restricted. (...) half of the southern slave states prohibited reading and writing and half did not. But even that split varies according to the exact historical moment as laws regularly changed, sometimes in response to an uprising.¹¹⁰

Racial differences made it easier to justify and rationalize Negro slavery, to exact the mechanical obedience of a plough-ox or a cart-horse, to demand that resignation and that complete moral and intellectual subjection which alone make slave labor possible. Finally, and this was the decisive factor, the Negro slave was cheaper. The money which procured a white man's services for ten years could buy a Negro for life.¹¹¹

- ***Anti-Literacy***

The colonies and states generally denied slaves the opportunity to learn to read or write, a prohibition on unique to American slavery, to protect against their forming aspirations that could lead to escape or rebellion.¹¹²

Across the South, harsh new laws were enacted to curtail the already limited rights of African Americans. Virginia prohibited blacks, free or slave, from practicing preaching, prohibited blacks from owning firearms, and forbade anyone to teach slaves or free blacks how to read. It specified heavy penalties both for student and teacher if slaves were educated, including whippings or jail.¹¹³

[E]very assemblage of negroes for the purpose of instruction

¹¹⁰ Judith Still, *Derrida and Other Animals*, (Edinburgh: University Press Ltd, 2015), p. 259-260.

¹¹¹ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 19.

¹¹² Wikipedia, s.v. *Slavery in the United States*,

¹¹³ Ibid.

in reading or writing, or in the night time for any purpose, shall be an unlawful assembly. Any justice may issue his warrant to any office or other person, requiring him to enter any place where such assemblage may be, and seize any negro therein; and he, or any other justice, may order such negro to be punished with stripes.¹¹⁴

▪ ***Slave Codes***

According to the slave codes, teaching a slave to read or write was illegal, although it often took place as children taught each other.¹¹⁵

▪ ***Efficiency of Slaves***

Scholars disagree on how to quantify efficiency of slavery. In *Time on the Cross*, Fogel and Engerman equate efficiency to total factor productivity (TFP)—the output per average unit of input on a farm. Using this measurement, southern farms that employed slaves using the Gang System were 35% more efficient than Northern farms which used free labor. Under the Gang System, groups of slaves perform synchronized tasks under the constant vigilance of an overseer. Each group was like a part of a machine. If perceived to be working below his capacity, a slave could be punished. However, Fogel argues that this kind of negative enforcement was not frequent; that slaves and free laborers had similar quality of life. This last statement is a controversial one and there is no agreement on this matter.¹¹⁶

▪ ***Prices of Slaves***

Prices reflected the characteristics of the slave—such factors as sex, age, nature, and height were all taken into account to determine the price of a slave. Over the life-cycle, the price of female slaves was higher than their male counterparts up to puberty age, as they would likely bear children and produce more slaves, in addition to serving as laborers. Males around the age of 25 were the most valued, as they were at the highest level of productivity and still had a considerable life-span. If slaves had a history of fights or escapes, their price was lowered reflecting what planters believed was risk of repeating such behavior. Slave traders and buyers would examine a slave's back for whipping scars—a large number of injuries would be seen as evidence of laziness or rebelliousness, rather than the previous master's brutality, and would lower the slave's price. Taller male slaves were

¹¹⁴ Ibid.

¹¹⁵ Ibid.

¹¹⁶ Ibid.

priced at a higher level, as height was viewed as a proxy for fitness and productivity.¹¹⁷

▪ **Citizenship Barred for Slaves**

After the state appealed the case to the U.S. Supreme Court, Judge Taney denied Scott his freedom in a sweeping decision that set the United States on course for civil war. The court ruled that, under the Constitution, neither Dred Scott nor any descendant of Africans, slave or free, was considered a citizen who had a right to sue in the Federal courts, and that Congress had had no constitutional power to pass the Missouri Compromise. The 1857 decision, decided 7–2, held that a slave did not become free when taken into a free state; Congress could not bar slavery from a territory; and people of African descent imported into the United States and held as slaves, or their descendants, could not be citizens. A state could not bar slaveowners from bringing slaves into that state. Many Republicans, including Abraham Lincoln, considered the decision unjust and as proof that the Slave Power had seized control of the Supreme Court. Written by Chief Justice Roger B. Taney, the decision effectively barred slaves and their descendants from citizenship.¹¹⁸

After the Election of Abraham Lincoln as president in 1860, it was felt that:

Many slave owners in the South feared that the real intent of the Republicans was the abolition of slavery in states where it already existed, and that the sudden emancipation of four million slaves would be problematic for the slave owners and for the economy that drew its greatest profits from the labor of people who were not paid.¹¹⁹

They also argued that banning slavery in new states would upset what they saw as a delicate balance of free states and slave states. They feared that ending this balance could lead to the domination of the industrial North with its preference for high tariffs on imported goods. The combination of these factors led the South to secede from the Union, and thus began the American Civil War. Northern leaders had viewed the slavery interests as a threat politically, and with secession, they viewed the prospect of a new southern nation, the Confederate States of America, with control over the Mississippi River and the West, as politically and militarily

¹¹⁷ Ibid.

¹¹⁸ Ibid.

¹¹⁹ Ibid.

unacceptable.¹²⁰

Conditions in the American South

The scholars observe that the western societies had acquired massive new resources between 1500 and 1800. During these periods, the Conquistadors¹²¹ stripped the Incas and Aztecs of their gold and silver. For further exploitation of natural resources of South America, they needed cheap or inexpensive labor which had to be obtained from enslavement of the Negroes from Africa.

Michel Guillaume Jean de Crèvecoeur (1735 – 1813) was a French-American writer and author of *Twelve Letters from an American Farmer*. Following excerpts from the same reveal unspeakable miseries of the slaves:

But Crevecoeur most of all shocks any complacent reader who has been seduced by his vision of seeming harmony and plenty bestowed on figural slaves emancipated from Europe by suddenly revealing, in the ninth of his twelve letters, the horrors of the American South, with a slave left suspended in a kind of cage to die, who, starving, has himself become food for insects and birds: The birds had already picked out his eyes; his cheek bones were bare; his arms had been attacked in several places, and his body seemed covered with a multitude of wounds. From the edges of the hollow sockets, and from the lacerations¹²² with which he was disfigured, the blood slowly dropped and tinged the ground beneath. No sooner were the birds flown, than swarms of insects covered the whole body of this unfortunate wretch, eager to feast on its mangled flesh and drink his blood.

'The living spectre', although blind, can hear Farmer James's approach and begs, desperate for water. With cruel kindness, James offers him some gathered in a shell and the 'wretched sufferer' who has already hung for two days then asks for the gift of poison to end his torture: 'the birds, the birds', he says. Human violence is transposed on to the voracious animals world – birds of prey are acting as the agents of torture. Crèvecoeur chooses to transliterate the slave speaking in a kind of pidgin English – not quite a civilised human being. The not quite human slave, a rogue slave, is delivered to the rapacity and violence of the natural world – generic birds who, as pigeons would strip the corn

¹²⁰ Ibid.

¹²¹ The Spanish conquerors of Mexico or Peru in the 16th century.

¹²² Tear or deeply cut (the flesh or skin).

that feeds the community, here, as raptors¹²³ in a perverted frenzy, strip human flesh. This is juxtaposed with the slave-owners' conversation over dinner concerning their view that 'the laws of self-preservation rederned such executions necessary' – the slave had turned on his overseer. Civilized man certainly seems a wolf to man in this letter IX, not in the state of nature but in society – perversely it is the fear of such general lupine aggression (typical of Amerindians for Hobbes) which is supposed to force man into agreeing to live in society, but in society it is terror that makes subjects obey their sovereign and master. However, Crèvecoeur's evocation of the most vicious side of slavery may be compared to inoculation – he points to its evils as more of a problem than its existence as such.¹²⁴

▪ ***Sugar Plantations of Barbados***

Referring to treatment of the slaves on sugar plantations of Barbados, Erick Williams reports that:

On the sugar plantations of Barbados the servants spent their time "grinding at the mills and attending the furnaces, or digging in this scorching island; having nothing to feed on (notwithstanding their hard labour) but potato roots, nor to drink, but water with such roots washed in it, besides the bread and tears of their own afflictions; being bought and sold still from one planter to another, or attached as horses and beasts for the debts of their masters, being whipt at the whipping posts (as rogues,) for their masters' pleasure, and sleeping, in sties¹²⁵ worse than hogs in England.¹²⁶

▪ ***Cotton Empire Based on Slavery***

To enable such expanded production, planters brought with them thousands of slaves. In the 1790s, the slave population of the state of Georgia nearly doubled, to sixty thousand. In South Carolina, the number of slaves in the upcountry cotton growing districts grew from twenty-one thousand in 1790 to seventy thousand twenty years later, including fifteen thousand slaves newly brought from Africa. As cotton plantations spread, the proportion of slaves in four typical South Carolina upcountry counties increased from 18.4 percent in 1790 to 39.5 percent in 1820 and to 61.1 percent in 1860. All the way to the Civil War, cotton and slavery would

¹²³ Falcons or Owls.

¹²⁴ Judith Still, *Derrida and Other Animals*, p. 288-289.

¹²⁵ A pen or enclosure for a pig or pigs. A very dirty or untidy house or room.

¹²⁶ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 16-17.

expand in lockstep, as Great Britain and the United States had become the twin hubs of the emerging empire of cotton.¹²⁷

The steadily increasing productivity of hands on the cotton frontier kept cheap raw materials flowing to the world's newest and most important industry, the cotton textile factories of Britain, Western Europe, and the North. Theft of days, years, labor, of the left hand's creative secrets helped provide the escape velocity for the fledgling modern world to do what no other historical society had done before and pull away from the gravitational field of the Malthusian cul-de-sac. Slavery's expansion was the driving force in US history between the framing of the Constitution and the beginning of the Civil War. It made the nation large and unified, and it made the South's whites disproportionately powerful in that nation. Enslavers had turned right hand against left to achieve not only productivity but also power that few other dominant classes in human history had possessed.¹²⁸

In the United States, however, nearly any shortage could be fixed with the right amount of money. The slave markets in New Orleans and elsewhere boomed as cotton did. And as significant, hundreds of thousands of slaves were available to grow cotton because tobacco production in the states of the upper South became less profitable after the American Revolution, encouraging slave owners there to sell their human property. As one British observer remarked perceptively in 1811, "The cultivation of tobacco in Virginia and Maryland, has been less of late an object of attention; and the gangs of negroes formerly engaged in it, have been sent into the southern states, where the American cotton planter, thus reinforced, is enabled to commence his operations with increasing vigour." Indeed, by 1830 fully 1 million people (or one in thirteen Americans) grew cotton in the United States – most of them slaves.

The expansion of cotton production, as a result, reinvigorated slavery and led to an enormous shift of slave labor from the upper to the lower South. In the thirty years after the invention of the gin alone (between 1790 and 1820), a quarter million slaves were forcefully relocated, while between 1783 and the closing of the international slave trade in 1808, traders imported an estimated 170,000 slaves into the United States – or one-third of all slaves imported into North America since 1619. Altogether, the internal slave trade moved up to a million slaves forcefully to the Deep South, most to grow cotton. To be sure, not all cotton in the United States was grown by slaves on large plantations.¹²⁹

¹²⁷ Sven Beckert, *Empire of Cotton*, p. 103.

¹²⁸ Baptist, *The Half Has Never Been Told*, p. 413.

¹²⁹ Sven Beckert, *Empire of Cotton*, p. 109.

Indeed, 85 percent of all cotton picked in the South in 1860 was grown on units larger than a hundred acres; the planters who owned those farms owned 91.2 percent of all slaves. The larger the farm, the better the planter was able to take advantage of the economies of scale inherent in slave-based cotton production. Larger farms could afford the gins to remove seeds and presses to compress loose cotton into tightly pressed bales to lower shipping costs, they could engage in agricultural experiments to wrest more nutrients from cleared soil, and they could buy more slaves to avoid any labor constraints. Cotton demanded quite literally a hunt for labor and a perpetual struggle for its control. Slave traders, slave pens, slave auctions, and the attendant physical and psychological violence of holding millions in bondage were of central importance to the expansion of cotton production in the United States and of the Industrial Revolution in Great Britain.¹³⁰

Better than anyone else, slaves understood the violent foundation of cotton's success. If given an opportunity, they testified in vivid detail to its brutality. John Brown, a fugitive slave, remembered in 1854 how he was "flogged ... with the cow-hide," and how overseers "hunt[ed] 'stray niggers.'" "when the price [of cotton] rises in the English market," he remembered, "he poor slave immediately feel the effects, for they are harder driven, and the whip is kept more constantly going." Henry Bibb, another slave, remembered the fearful violence: "At the sound of the overseer's horn, all the slaves came forward and witnessed my punishment. My clothing was stripped off and I was compelled to lie down on the ground with my face to the earth. Four stakes were driven in the ground, to which my hands and feet were tied. Then the overseer stood over me with the lash."¹³¹

The expansion of cotton manufacturing in Great Britain depended on violence across the Atlantic. Cotton, emptied lands, and slavery indeed became so closely connected to one another that Liverpool cotton merchant William Rathbone VI, on a trip to the United States in 1849, reported to his father that "negroes & everything here fluctuates with Cotton." So crucial was slave labor that the Liverpool Chronicle and European Times warned that if slaves ever should be emancipated, cotton cloth prices might double or triple, with devastating consequences for Britain. While brutal coercion weighed like a nightmare upon millions of American slaves, the potential end of such violence was a nightmare to those

¹³⁰ Ibid, p. 110.

¹³¹ Ibid, p. 110.

who gathered the fabulous profits of the empire of cotton.¹³²

According to the writer, the Emancipation Proclamation had offered possibility of freedom to enslaved people held in the giant prison that was the Confederacy. After 1862, the Confederates were trying to transport the slaves away towards Texas and other states. It has been recorded that:

(...) the soldiers put Liza and hundreds of liberated African Americans onto boats bound for New Orleans.

Because Liza had been in the Confederate zone, the Proclamation officially freed her. But after being disembarked on the New Orleans levee, she and the others were herded into the city's cotton warehouses. "From there," Liza remembered, decades later, "we were all scattered about" to different Union-controlled plantations to do forced labor: "I went on the McCall place near Donaldsonville." There she met a man named Thomas Faro. They started a relationship. They went out into the field every day, demonstrating to Union officials "a disposition to work" that entitled them to receive government rations. Others resisted, and went hungry. This was not quite freedom. Still, enslaved people had been knocking on the portal of freedom for decades, in any way possible. Now, in a single moment, the Emancipation Proclamation had unbarred the door. Next, African Americans would force it all the way open.¹³³

▪ **Cotton Slavery**

For centuries, slavery in the New World had expanded by a process of extension: adding new slaves, clearing new fields from the next sugar island. The southwestern frontier was expanding—in part—via a similar strategy, though on an unprecedented geographic scale: it was not an island, but a subcontinent's rich interior stripped from its inhabitants. And not mere battalions, but whole armies of slaves were being moved to new soil. By 1820, whites had already transported more than 200,000 enslaved people to the South's new frontiers in the years since 1790.

(...) The source of this ever- rising productivity wasn't a machine like the ones that were crucial to the textile mills. In fact, you could say that the business end of the new cotton technology was a whip. And the fact that slave labor was unpaid, and compelled by brute force, was not new. That reality was as old as the human institution of slavery itself.¹³⁴

¹³² Ibid, p. 110.

¹³³ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. 401.

¹³⁴ Ibid, p. 112.

New techniques that extracted ever- greater cotton efficiency radically changed the experience of enslaved people like Charles Ball and the 1 million who followed him into the cotton fields. But they also transformed the world beyond the fields.¹³⁵

▪ **Hard Labor**

The slaves were required for arduous field work, hence women and children were less valuable than robust males, the former because they were liable to interruptions from work through pregnancies, the latter because they required some attention until able to care for themselves.¹³⁶

Spanish missionary Bartolomé de las Casas spoke out against the enslavement of the natives and the brutality of the Spaniards. He wrote that to the natives, the Christianity brought by the Spaniards had come to symbolize the brutality with which they had been treated; he quoted one Taino cacique (tribal chief), "They tell us, these tyrants, that they adore a God of peace and equality, and yet they usurp our land and make us their slaves. They speak to us of an immortal soul and of their eternal rewards and punishments, and yet they rob our belongings, seduce our women, violate our daughters. As Las Casas had presaged, the Spaniards' treatment of the Tainos was the start of a centuries-long legacy of slavery in which abuse such as amputating body parts was commonplace. (...)¹³⁷

It was legal for a slaveholder to kill a slave who hit a white person, according to the 1685 Code Noir, a decree by the French king Louis XIV regulating practices of slaves and slavers. Torture of slaves was routine; they were whipped, burned, buried alive, restrained and allowed to be bitten by swarms of insects, mutilated, raped, and had limbs amputated. Slaves caught eating the sugar cane would be forced to wear tin muzzles in the fields. The Catholic Church condoned slavery and the practices used in the French colony, viewing the institution as a way to convert Africans to Christianity.¹³⁸

Sex between male masters and female slaves was so common in Saint Domingue that a separate class had emerged consisting of the mixed-race children of these encounters.¹³⁹

¹³⁵ Ibid, p. 113.

¹³⁶ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 38.

¹³⁷ Wikipedia, s.v. *Slavery in Haiti*.

¹³⁸ Ibid.

¹³⁹ Ibid.

▪ ***Instruments of Torture***

In the sources that document the expansion of cotton production, you can find at one point or another almost every product sold in New Orleans stores converted into an instrument of torture: carpenters' tools, chains, cotton presses, hackles, handsaws, hoe handles, irons for branding livestock, nails, pokers, smoothing irons, singletrees, steelyards, tongs. Every modern method of torture was used at one time or another: sexual humiliation, mutilation, electric shocks, solitary confinement in "stress positions," burning, even water boarding.¹⁴⁰

Born into slavery in the Carolinas, moved west as a boy, Clay recalled after slavery ended that his Louisiana owner had once possessed a machine which by his account made cotton cultivation and harvesting mechanical, rapid, and efficient. This contraption was "a big wooden wheel with a treadle to it, and when you tromp the treadle the big wheel go round. On that wheel was four or five leather straps with holes cut in them to make blisters, and you lay the negro down on his face on a bench and tie him to it." When the operator pumped the treadle to turn the wheel, the straps thrashed the back of the man or woman tied to the bench into blistered, bloody jelly. According to Clay, the mere threat of this whipping-machine was enough to speed his own hands.¹⁴¹

The whipping-machine that enslavers built in the southwestern slave labor camps enabled them to reshape the world along the lines of their own fanciful calculations of people into hands, hands into bales, bales into money, money into hands again. Hard forced labor multiplied US cotton production to 130 times its 1800 level by 1860.¹⁴²

▪ ***Coercion over Slaves***

At the core of all of these networks was the flow of cotton from the United States to Europe and of capital in the opposite direction. This capital more often than not was secured by mortgages on slaves, giving the owners of these mortgages the right to a particular slave should the debtor default. As historian Bonnie Martin has shown, in Louisiana 88 percent of loans secured by mortgages used slaves as (partial collateral; in South Carolina it was 82 percent. In total, she estimates

¹⁴⁰ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. 141. Water boarding is a form of water torture in which water is poured over a cloth covering the face and breathing passages of an immobilized captive, causing the individual to experience the sensation of drowning. For better understanding of the torture please see different methods applied as per Wikipedia, s.v. *Waterboarding*.

¹⁴¹ Ibid, p. 141.

¹⁴² Ibid, p. 142.

that hundreds of millions of dollars of capital was secure by property in humans. Slavery thus allowed not just for the rapid allocation of labor, but also for a swift allocation of capital.¹⁴³

Slave owners secured these productivity gains by taking almost total control of the work process a direct result of the violent domination of their workers.¹⁴⁴

Because planters dominated labor in ways radically different from English merchants' connection to agricultural cultivators in India, or Ottoman landowners in Anatolia, they could drive their slaves ever harder, as they came up with increasingly brutal methods of disciplining their workforce. Indeed, torture, according to historian Edward Baptist, was at the root of the ability of American planters to produce ever more cotton. Innovative ways of labor accounting further helped planters squeeze more labor out of their workers.¹⁴⁵

Penal Colonies

During the 17th and the 18th centuries, the European nations had adopted the practice of sending convicted criminals or other persons regarded as undesirable to a far off place i.e. a penal colony. France had been transporting their convicts to Devil's Island and the New Caledonia. England, too, used to send their convicts punished under capital crimes such as forgery of a document, political prisoners and prisoners of war from Scotland and Ireland to their various colonies in the Americas from 1610 to 1770. Royal Anne was one of such famous convict ships transporting prisoners to New South Wales at the beginning of the 19th century. Subsequently, after the American Revolution i.e. during 1787-1868, the British started transporting people to Australia and the first fleet departed from England arrived at Port Jackson (Sydney) on 26 January 1788, a date now celebrated as Australia Day. In British colonial India, opponents of British rule were transported to the cellular jail in the Andaman Islands which became the death point of many of great Muslim scholars and freedom fighters from India.

¹⁴³ Sven Beckert, *Empire of Cotton*, p. 114.

¹⁴⁴ *Ibid*, p. 115.

¹⁴⁵ *Ibid*, p. 115-116.

Besides the destinations described above, many other remote locations or economically under developed parts of the colonized territories used to serve as penal colonies. During the 17th century, transportation was carried out at the expense of the convicts or the ship owners. Under the transportation act, returning from transportation was a capital offense.

This was a community of prisoners overseen by wardens or governors having absolute authority over them. About their transportation it has been said that:

But Ivy spilled out a rush of very different words. "They sold slaves here and everywhere. I've seen droves of Negroes brought in here on foot going South to be sold. Each one of them had an old tow sack on his back with everything he's got in it. Over the hills they came in lines reaching as far as the eye can see. They walked in double lines chained together by twos. They walk 'em here to the railroad and shipped 'em south like cattle."¹⁴⁶

But the road on which enslaved people were being driven was long. It led through the hell described by "Seed" (Chapter 7), which tells of the horrific near-decade from 1829 to 1837. In these years entrepreneurs ran wild on slavery's frontier. Their acts created the political and economic dynamics that carried enslavers to their greatest height of power. Facing challenges from other white men who wanted to assert their masculine equality through political democracy, clever entrepreneurs found ways to leverage not just that desire, but other desires as well. With the creation of innovative financial tools, more and more of the Western world was able to invest directly in slavery's expansion. Such creativity multiplied the incredible productivity and profitability of enslaved people's labor and allowed enslavers to turn bodies into commodities with which they changed the financial history of the Western world.¹⁴⁷

The writer also observes that:

The idea that the commodification and suffering and forced labor of African Americans is what made the United States powerful and rich is not an idea that people necessarily are happy to hear. Yet it is the truth. (...) The debris of cotton fevers that infected white entrepreneurs and separated man and woman, parent and child, right and left, dusted every set of pre-Civil War letters, newspapers, and court documents. Most of all, the half not told ran like a layer of iridium left by a

¹⁴⁶ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. xxi.

¹⁴⁷ Ibid, p. xxv-xxvi.

dinosaur- killing asteroid through every piece of testimony that ex- slaves, such as Lorenzo Ivy, left on the historical record: thousands of stanzas of an epic of forced separations, violence, and new kinds of labor.¹⁴⁸

Telling about the violence on the slaves during the transportation on land, the writers record that:

The story seemed too big to fit into one framework. Even Ivy had no idea how to count the chained lines he saw going southwest toward the mountains on the horizon and the vast open spaces beyond. From the 1790s to the 1860s, enslavers moved 1 million people from the old slave states to the new. They went from making no cotton to speak of in 1790 to making almost 2 billion pounds of it in 1860. Stretching out beyond the slave South, the story encompassed not only Washington politicians and voters across the United States but also Connecticut factories, London banks, opium addicts in China, and consumers in East Africa. And could one book do Lorenzo Ivy's insight justice? It would have to avoid the old platitudes, such as the easy temptation to tell the story as a collection of topics—here a chapter on slave resistance, there one on women and slavery, and so on. That kind of abstraction cuts the beating heart out of the story. For the half untold was a narrative, a process of movement and change and suspense. Things happened because of what had been done before them—and what people chose to do in response. (...) But when one takes Lorenzo Ivy's words as a starting point, the whole history of the United States comes walking over the hill behind a line of people in chains. (...) Enslaved African Americans built the modern United States, and indeed the entire modern world, in ways both obvious and hidden. (...) On the moral level I propose we view the whole of American life as a drama enacted on the body of a Negro giant who, lying trussed up like Gulliver, forms the stage and the scene upon which and within which the action unfolds.¹⁴⁹

The story of exploitation and commodification of slaves continues in the following:

From the exploitation, commodification, and torture of enslaved people's bodies, enslavers and other free people gained new kinds of modern power. The sweat and blood of the growing system, a network of individuals and families and labor camps that grew bigger with each passing year, fueled massive economic change. Enslaved people, meanwhile,

¹⁴⁸ Ibid, p. xxi-xxii.

¹⁴⁹ Ibid, p. xxiii.

transported and tortured, had to find ways to survive, resist, or endure. And over time the question of their freedom or bondage came to occupy the center of US politics.¹⁵⁰

The British had primarily used North America as a penal colony through a system of indentured servitude. Convicts were transported to the colonies and auctioned off to the plantation owners. Majority of such victims landed in Chesapeake of Maryland and Virginia. "The state of Georgia for example was first founded by James Edward Oglethorpe by using penal prisoners taken largely from debtors' prison, creating a "Debtor's Colony" ... The British would often ship Irish and Scots to the Americas whenever rebellions took place in Ireland or Scotland. When that avenue closed in the 1780s after the American Revolution, Britain began using parts of what is now known as Australia as penal settlements. Australian penal colonies included Norfolk Island, Van Diemen's Land (Tasmania), Queensland and New South Wales. Advocates of Irish Home Rule or of Trade Unionism (the Tolpuddle Martyrs) sometimes received sentences of deportation to these Australian colonies".¹⁵¹

Slaves as Security

These slaves cleared fields bought on spec, grew cotton to make interest payments and keep new loans flowing, and served as collateral besides. The dramatic increase in the ability of would-be entrepreneurs to borrow money had extended their right-handed reach across time and space, over mountains, and across seas. (...) Enslaved people sold as part of an estate often were sold on longer-term credit of a year or more granted from local seller to local buyer, usually with a mortgage to protect the lender.¹⁵²

Perhaps Rachel had an opportunity to say goodbye to William and the others from the Temperance. But from this point forward, she disappears from known documents.

Not so for William, at least not quite yet. He had to wait for James Stille to arrange payment for Perry, a young man from the Emile's cargo. At the same auction, McLean also sold Stille a young woman named Maria and her infant daughter, America, consigned by Virginian William Coles. And over the next few days, Stille also bought Jacob, Murray, Jefferson, and

¹⁵⁰ Ibid, p. xxiv.

¹⁵¹ Wikipedia, s.v. *Penal Colony*.

¹⁵² Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. 94.

the nine-year-old boy Braxton, plus eleven slaves from New Orleans merchants Jackson and Reynolds, and six from Virginia residents John Stiles and Thomas Wily. So in less than a week, Stille spent over \$20,000—mostly on credit—on new “hands.”

A day or two later, Stille collected the twenty- five people whom he had purchased from the city jail and the warehouses where they had been stowed while he shopped. He marched all twenty-five back to the levee. The chained city slaves leaned on their shovels, watching a different sort of coffle pass. Past the posts, the leaflets flapping in the wind, William walked across a different gangplank onto a steamboat that could churn steadily upriver against the current. Hands loaded barrels purchased by upstream customers. The bell rang, steam rose, the boat began to back away from the levee. The last passengers sprinted to leap the widening gap, papers fl uttering in their hands. The steamer gathered headway upstream past moored flatboats and sailing ships.¹⁵³

After the first day the cotton fields began to appear. Gangs of laborers moved slowly among the winter- brown and bare stalks, hoeing them under. The boat passed Iberville Parish, and there were few sugar plantations. By the time it reached Baton Rouge, there were only cotton fields and woods. But by then, Stille had already disembarked his hands. William and all the rest had vanished into the slave country, a land populated almost entirely by walking, working hands.¹⁵⁴

Slaves as a Commodity

Aristotle had called the slave the “instrument” of the owner, a living tool. In the southern United States, instead of counting them as human beings, the masters counted them as hands or heads. They were taken as a commodity, alienable and easy to sell e.g.

A clerk working for William Kenner quoted prices to customers: “Negroes have sold here lately,” he wrote in 1816, perhaps from a table at maspero’s, “at 600 [and] 500 dollars per head, for common field hands.”¹⁵⁵

As hands, Rachel and William were also credit: promissory notes on their sellers’ and buyers’ future possession and use of right- handed power. (...) Forty years after the year when Rachel stood on the bench, a dying grandmother (we do not

¹⁵³ Ibid, p. 109.

¹⁵⁴ Ibid, p. 109.

¹⁵⁵ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. 101.

know her name) reached up from the corn- shuck mattress where she lay under the roof of a Louisiana slave cabin. She grabbed her frightened granddaughter Melinda by the wrist, and she said the last words Melinda would ever hear her speak: "First thing I can remember is that I was standing on a slave block in New Orleans alongside my ma." The place must have been Maspero's. The time was the moment of sale that had separated her from her mother and everything that had come before. Maspero's shaped the rest of her life, and she had to pass that moment on to her own granddaughter in order for Melinda to know her and herself. Here was the crossroads of time and space where Melinda's family history had to begin again. So would it be for thousands of other family histories.¹⁵⁶

So Ball and the coffle crossed the river on a ferry west of the city. The two lines, men in chains and women in ropes, walked southwest from Richmond for weeks. One day in southern Virginia, they passed a road leading up to a low house surrounded by sandy tobacco fields. A hundred men, women, and children toiled out there under the gaze of a white man with a long whip. The Georgia- man stopped another white man coming up the road. "Whose land is that?" he asked. "Mr. Randolph, a member of Congress."¹⁵⁷

The principle that a contract is inviolable and that property is absolute was now the accepted conclusion of the federal constitution. In the Fletcher decision, the chief justice never mentioned slavery. But the Court's decision made possible the survey and sale of more than 20 million acres for slavery's expanding footprint. Marshall's ruling also gave every future defender of slavery and its expansion an incredible tool. Consider this: If the people of Georgia couldn't overturn a contract born from obvious corruption, how could a legislature or any other government entity take slaves away from owners? Enslaved African Americans were property acquired by contract, according to the law of slave states. Nor, the decision implied, could legislatures constrain enslavers' right to treat said property as being as absolute, as mobile, and as alienable as they liked.¹⁵⁸

Bushrod Washington wrote "on my own behalf and on that of my southern fellow citizens to enter a solemn protest against the propriety of any person questioning our right; legal or moral, to dispose of property which is secured to us by sanctions equally valid with those by which we hold every other species of property."¹⁵⁹

¹⁵⁶ Ibid, p. 108.

¹⁵⁷ Ibid, p. 30-31.

¹⁵⁸ Ibid, p. 33.

¹⁵⁹ Ibid, p. 34.

The needs of individual enslavers and others who hoped to profit from the expansion of all sorts of economic opportunities encouraged the growth of a more powerful set of national capabilities, more market- friendly laws, and more unified markets. The needs of national expansion, plus the ability of chained people to walk, trapped enslaved people as absolutely held property in the political compromises, political alliances, and financial schemes of the United States and in the very map of the young country. Slavery, and specifically, the right of enslavers to sell and to move their slaves into new territory, became a national practice: as a strict definition of property under constitutional law, as habit and expectation, and as a pattern of political compromise.¹⁶⁰

Thus the coffle chained the early American republic together. In South Carolina, Charles Ball's neck and hands were finally freed of the coffle's chains, but only so his owner could finish the chain's work of converting Charles and the other remaining Maryland slaves into market goods. Because they had left sweat from pores and pus from blisters on the road, and had drawn down their meager stores of body fat, the Georgia-man rested them for twenty days at a property owned by a cotton farmer. Ball and his companions were given butter to eat so they would become sleek and "fat." The lice were driven from their bodies and clothes by repeated washing. And soon, white people began to come and examine them, ask them questions, speculate on their bodies.¹⁶¹

Signs creaked in the wind that brought the stench of his old ship from Gadsden's Wharf. The buzzards lighting and flapping on the other side of the Cooper River knew where the harbor current piled bodies against the sandbar. That year alone, seven hundred Africans died on the twenty-five different ships that spent time waiting there in quarantine.¹⁶²

And because the man in the iron collar and all who followed him into the depths of the continent would make not a luxury product but the most basic commodity in a new kind of endlessly expanding economy, there would also be no limit to the market for the product of his labor. This meant that there was no numerical limit to the number of enslavers, or to the number of investors who would want to chase enslavement's rewards. Only conscience, or the inability of the world's investment markets to deploy enough savings, could impede the transfer of capital to slavery's new frontiers.¹⁶³

¹⁶⁰ Ibid, p. 35-36.

¹⁶¹ Ibid, p. 36.

¹⁶² Ibid, p. 40-41.

¹⁶³ Ibid, p. 41.

Property of Hug Young

Behind his eyes, he remembered. Coming from Africa to South Carolina, he had gone through what 10 million other forced migrants to the New World had already survived: captured or kidnapped, or simply bought, marched to the coast, sold by strange men to even stranger men (some milky-colored, some angry red, some tan with dark curly hair). Out of the darkness of the dungeon in chains, hand and foot, one of a whole stick of African men bundled by the white sailors into the big coastal canoe. Feeling the salt spray as it flushed over the gunwales. They plunged through rough waves to a floating structure and were hauled on board the Rhode Island ship. Herded below with shoves, they took dainty, quick steps to stay balanced under a four-foot ceiling, too short for even these men, who barely averaged five feet. The air stank from men already curled on the floor in front of them. Their predicament showed the new arrivals how to lie: spoon-fashion, on the left. Easier on the heart that way, captains believed.

In 1787, the Constitutional Convention had allowed the trade to go on. In the twenty years since, citizens of the new nation had dragged 100,000 more people from the African coast. Always, some fought. They clung to the doorposts of the dungeons and barracoons. They threw themselves in chained groups over the gunwales of the boats to drown together in the surf. They grabbed at the clubs the sailors used to beat them down onto the slave deck. They rushed the barricade when the crew let them out for exercise. Ten percent of Atlantic slave-trade voyages experienced major rebellions. But resistance almost always failed. Sailors fired grapeshot cannon into surging masses of desperate men and women in the midships. The scuppers ran with blood. The sharks ate.

Now the man remembered how he had lain in vomit and shit and piss. How he had eaten from the bucket they brought. He heard the women on the other deck crying for a dying baby or sister; heard them fight as the sailors took them into the crew's quarters one by one, to be raped. He saw them drag out men who had gone stiff and grinning. The angel's fingers clawed at him, too. He puked up everything down to the bile, barely survived the dysentery that emptied out a hundred, sweated from cargo fevers. He panted, waiting for the water pail's ladle. He could've died like millions of others. But he lived on.¹⁶⁴

¹⁶⁴ Ibid, p. 39-40.

Culmination of the Historical Process

The sufferings of the helpless tortured, enfeebled and dehumanized slaves had prolonged for more than 300 years without any foreseeable assurance for emancipation in the near future till the start of the civil war. It was during the civil war that the slaves had learnt to form certain united organizations to get rid of slavery or to alleviate black poverty or to reduce white supremacy in the United States. They were quickly learning to resist too much exploitation at the hands of the enslavers. There had been numerous slave revolts and agitations against the enslavers creating various types of hazards including economic losses and devastation to property as well as the industry. The enslavers knew a lot about different incidents around them but there was much hidden from their sight. Mr. Baptist, therefore, observed that:

But tongues also spoke words that enslavers did not hear. Lungs breathed a spirit that would not yield. Enslaved men and women watched and guarded and stilled their blood, and trained their seed to wait. Even when enslavers realized, in particular moments, that enslaved people had created something else, an identity, a political unity, a common culture, a story, and a sense of how it shaped them and made them one, enslavers had forgotten, or willed themselves to forget. So people survived, and helped each other to survive, and not only to survive but to build. Thus, another body grew as the invisible twin of the one stretched out and used by white people. Eventually, the waiting had its reward. The body rose. African Americans took up arms and defeated the enslavers.¹⁶⁵

From the above, the readers may recollect that US Emancipation Proclamation was not a bounteous reward to gratify the slaves but the outcome of 300 years struggle of millions of slaves of both sexes who sacrificed their liberty, their families, energy, blood, lives and all types of comforts in the life before they could enroll themselves as free members of human society. In spite of all this, their efforts could hardly bring any

¹⁶⁵ Ibid, p. 416.

change in the mindset of the white nations who did not stop to discriminate them as lesser human beings and enlist them as blacks, the Indians, the Negroes and the non-whites whom they will never acknowledge as their brethren enjoying equality of rights with other persons of their own species. Colored people or descendants of the ex-slaves are still 2nd class citizens in the West. Slavery, therefore, has ended in law after 1865 but in practice it is never likely to end in the West and also in the world that had been colonized by them.

Ch. 5 -

DEHUMANIZATION OF SLAVES

Horrors of Transportation

The colonizers in the American continents, Australia, Africa and thousands of islands have been treating the enslaved people in such cruel and inhuman manners that none of other nations might have treated even the animals in that manner. Right from killing and capturing the slaves in Africa and other continents, they continued to behave criminally with them in the camps, port factories, during transportation through the oceans and over the land, during the auctions, overwork with malnutrition and confinement in the tobacco warehouses or other dungeons which were not fit even for keeping the pigs there.

Transportation of slaves over the sea or the land had always been an extremely inhuman act on the part of the enslavers. They transported millions of slaves during the Atlantic trade from early 16th century to the end of the 19th century. Erick Williams reports that:

The age which had seen the mortality among indentured servants saw no reason for squeamishness about the mortality among slaves, nor did the exploitation of the slaves on the plantations differ fundamentally from the exploitation of the feudal peasant or the treatment of the poor in European cities. Mutinies and suicides were obviously far more common on slave ships than on other vessels, and the brutal treatment and greater restrictions on the movements of the slaves would doubtless have tended to increase their mortality. But the fundamental causes of this high mortality on the slave ships, as on ships carrying indentured servants and even free passengers, must be found firstly in epidemics, the inevitable result of the long voyages and the difficulty of preserving food and water, and secondly in the practice of overcrowding the vessels. The sole aim of the slave merchants was to have their decks "well covered with black ones." It is not uncommon to read of a vessel of 90 tons carrying 390 slaves or one of 100 tons carrying 414. Clarkson's investigations in Bristol revealed

a sloop of twenty-five tons destined for seventy human beings, and another of a mere eleven tons for thirty slaves. The space allotted to each slave on the Atlantic crossing measured five and a half feet in length by sixteen inches in breadth. Packed like "rows of books on shelves," as Clarkson said, chained two by two, right leg and left leg, right hand and left hand, each slave had less room than a man in a coffin. It was like the transportation of black cattle, and where sufficient Negroes were not available cattle were taken on. The slave trader's aim was profit and not the comfort of his victims, and a modest measure in 1788 to regulate the transportation of the slaves in accordance with the capacity of the vessel evoked a loud howl from the slave traders.¹⁶⁶

▪ ***Trans-Atlantic Shipments***

Owners of slave ships did their best to hold as many enslaved people as possible, cramming, chaining, and selective grouping techniques were used to maximize space and make travel more profitable. Those that were on the ships were underfed and treated with brutality which caused some to die before even arriving at their destination. These people also were not treated as human: living like animals throughout their long voyage to the New World. The enslaved were naked and shackled together with several different types of chains, stored on the floor beneath bunks with little to no room to move due to the cramped conditions. They spent a large portion of time pinned to floorboards which would wear skin on their elbows down to the bone. Firsthand accounts from former slaves such as Olaudah Equiano describe the horrific conditions that enslaved people were forced to endure.¹⁶⁷

Here is another report about the same:

Unhygienic conditions, dehydration, dysentery and scurvy led to a high mortality rate, on average 15% and up to a third of captives. Often the ships, also known as Guineamen, transported hundreds of slaves, who were chained tightly to plank beds. For example, the slave ship *Henrietta Marie* carried about 200 slaves on the long Middle Passage. They were confined to cargo holds with each slave chained with little room to move.

The most significant routes of the slave ships led from the north-western and western coasts of Africa to South America and the south-east coast of what is today the United States, and the Caribbean. As many as 20 million Africans were transported by ship. The transportation of slaves from

¹⁶⁶ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 34-35.

¹⁶⁷ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Slave Ship'.

Africa to America was known as the Middle Passage.¹⁶⁸

According to another source:

The slave ship was the means by which nearly 12.5 million enslaved Africans were transported from Africa to the Americas between 1500 and 1866. Leaving from its home port in Europe, a typical ship made its first passage to the west coast of Africa, trading goods for a full cargo of slaves—people who had been captured in war, convicted of petty crimes, or simply kidnapped.¹⁶⁹

Between 1500 and 1866, Europeans transported to the Americas nearly 12.5 million enslaved Africans, about 1.8 million of whom died on the Middle Passage, their bodies thrown into the Atlantic. Of those who survived, 128,000, or about 1 percent, came to the Chesapeake Bay region and were forced to work in tobacco fields.¹⁷⁰

Although British parliament had prohibited slave trade in 1807 and France, Spain, Portugal and USA in 1808 yet the slave trade seems to have survived up to several decades thereafter. An article 'Aboard a Slave Ship (1829)' describes the condition aboard the slave-ship named 'The Feloz' bound to Bahia. It was intercepted by a patrol-boat in May 1829. The Rev. Robert Walsh, in charge of the boat, describes the ship and the conditions of slaves in the following:

(...) She had taken in, on the coast of Africa, 336 males and 226 females, making in all 562, and had been out seventeen days, during which she had thrown overboard 55. The slaves were all inclosed under grated hatchways between decks. The space was so low that they sat between each other's legs and [were] stowed so close together that there was no possibility of their lying down or at all changing their position by night or day. As they belonged to and were shipped on account of different individuals, they were all branded like sheep with the owner's marks of different forms. These were impressed under their breasts or on their arms, and, as the mate informed me with perfect indifference 'burnt with the red-hot iron.' Over the hatchway stood a ferocious-looking fellow with a scourge of many twisted thongs in his hand, who was the slave driver of the ship, and whenever he heard the slightest noise below, he

¹⁶⁸ Ibid.

¹⁶⁹ *Encyclopedia Virginia*, (Virginia Foundation of Humanities, 2012), s.v. 'Slave Ships and the Middle Passage' Contributed by Brendan Wolfe.

¹⁷⁰ *Encyclopedia Virginia*, s.v. 'Slave Ships and the Middle Passage'.

shook it over them and seemed eager to exercise it. I was quite pleased to take this hateful badge out of his hand, and I have kept it ever since as a horrid memorial of reality, should I ever be disposed to forget the scene I witnessed.

(...) But the circumstance which struck us most forcibly was how it was possible for such a number of human beings to exist, packed up and wedged together as tight as they could cram, in low cells three feet high, the greater part of which, except that immediately under the grated hatchways, was shut out from light or air, and this when the thermometer, exposed to the open sky, was standing in the shade, on our deck, at 89°. The space between decks was divided into two compartments 3 feet 3 inches high; the size of one was 16 feet by 18 and of the other 40 by 21; into the first were crammed the women and girls, into the second the men and boys: 226 fellow creatures were thus thrust into one space 288 feet square and 336 into another space 800 feet square, giving to the whole an average of 23 inches and to each of the women not more than 13 inches. We also found manacles and fetters of different kinds, but it appears that they had all been taken off before we boarded.

(...) It is impossible to conceive the effect of this eruption - 517 fellow creatures of all ages and sexes, some children, some adults, some old men and women, all in a state of total nudity, scrambling out together to taste the luxury of a little fresh air and water. They came swarming up like bees from the aperture of a hive till the whole deck was crowded to suffocation front stern to stern, so that it was impossible to imagine where they could all have come from or how they could have been stowed away. On looking into the places where they had been crammed, there were found some children next the sides of the ship, in the places most remote from light and air; they were lying nearly in a torpid state after the rest had turned out. The little creatures seemed indifferent as to life or death, and when they were carried on deck, many of them could not stand.

(...) While expressing my horror at what I saw and exclaiming against the state of this vessel for conveying human beings, I was informed by my friends, who had passed so long a time on the coast of Africa and visited so many ships, that this was one of the best they had seen. The height sometimes between decks was only eighteen inches, so that the unfortunate beings could not turn round or even on their sides, the elevation being less than the breadth of their shoulders; and here they are usually chained to the decks by the neck and legs.

... They heard a horrible din and tumult among them and could not imagine from what cause it proceeded. They opened the hatches and turned them up on deck. They were manacled

together in twos and threes. Their horror may be well conceived when they found a number of them in different stages of suffocation; many of them were foaming at the mouth and in the last agonies-many were dead. A living man was sometimes dragged up, and his companion was a dead body; sometimes of the three attached to the same chain, one was dying and another dead. The tumult they had heard was the frenzy of those suffocating wretches in the last stage of fury and desperation, struggling to extricate themselves. When they were all dragged up, nineteen were irrecoverably dead. Many destroyed one another in the hopes of procuring room to breathe; men strangled those next them, and women drove nails into each other's brains. Many unfortunate creatures on other occasions took the first opportunity of leaping overboard and getting rid, in this way, of an intolerable life.¹⁷¹

▪ ***Children of Slave Mothers were Slaves***

The 17th century saw an increase in shipments, with Africans arriving in the English colony of Jamestown, Virginia in 1619. These first kidnapped Africans were classed as indentured servants and freed after seven years. Chattel slavery was codified in Virginia law in 1656, and in 1662, the colony adopted the principle of *partus sequitur ventrem*, by which children of slave mothers were slaves, regardless of paternity. Irish immigrants took slaves to Montserrat in 1651, and in 1655, slaves were shipped to Belize.¹⁷²

By 1670, custom and law insisted that children were slaves if their mothers were slaves, that enslaved Africans were to be treated as rights-less, perpetual outsiders (even if they converted to Christianity), that they could be whipped to labor, and that they could be sold and moved. They were chattel property. And everyone of visible African descent was assumed to be a slave.¹⁷³

▪ ***The Middle Passage***

The transportation of these white servants shows in its true light the horrors of the Middle Passage not as something unusual or inhuman but as a part of the age. The emigrants were packed like herrings. According to Mittelberger, each

¹⁷¹ *Aboard a Slave Ship*, 1829, Eye Witness to History, www.eyewitnesstohistory.com (2000).

¹⁷² Wikipedia, s.v. '*Atlantic Slave Trade*'. 'Belize' was a country on the Caribbean coast of the Central America.

¹⁷³ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. 3.

servant was allowed about two feet in width and six feet in length in bed. The boats were small, the voyage long, the food, in the absence of refrigeration, bad, disease inevitable. A petition to Parliament in 1659 describes how seventy-two servants had been locked up below deck during the whole voyage of five and a half weeks, "amongst horses, that their souls, through heat and steam under the tropic, fainted in them." Inevitably abuses crept into the system and Fearon was shocked by "the horrible picture of human suffering which this living sepulchre" of an emigrant vessel in Philadelphia afforded. But conditions even for the free passengers were not much better in those days, and the comment of a Lady of Quality describing a voyage from Scotland to the West Indies on a ship full of indentured servants should banish any ideas that the horrors of the slave ship are to be accounted for by the fact that the victims were Negroes. "It is hardly possible," she writes, "to believe that human nature could be so depraved, as to treat fellow creatures in such a manner for so little gain."¹⁷⁴

▪ ***Life On Board Slave Ships***

Under this article, we read:

Slave ships spent several months travelling to different parts of the coast, buying their cargo. The captives were often in poor health from the physical and mental abuse they had suffered. They were taken on board, stripped naked and examined from head to toe by the captain or surgeon.

Conditions on board ship during the Middle Passage were appalling. The men were packed together below deck and were secured by leg irons. The space was so cramped they were forced to crouch or lie down. Women and children were kept in separate quarters, sometimes on deck, allowing them limited freedom of movement, but this also exposed them to violence and sexual abuse from the crew.

The air in the hold was foul and putrid. Seasickness was common and the heat was oppressive. The lack of sanitation and suffocating conditions meant there was a constant threat of disease. Epidemics of fever, dysentery (the 'flux') and smallpox were frequent. Captives endured these conditions for about two months, sometimes longer.¹⁷⁵

¹⁷⁴ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 13-14.

¹⁷⁵ International Slavery Museum, *History of the Slave Trade*, Copyright 2015.

▪ ***Transportation From Old Slavery to the New***

Besides inhuman treatment during the shipment through the Atlantic, the slaves had to face further hardships during their travel on foot in coffles to their destinations on land. After landing on the continent, these slaves were treated like pigs or other lowest types animals on the continents. In a picturesque description of the same, Mr. Edward E. Baptist reports that:

There are 1,760 yards in a mile—more than 2,000 steps. Forty thousand is a long day's journey. Two hundred thousand is a hard week. For eighty years, from the 1780s until 1865, enslaved migrants walked for miles, days, and weeks. Driven south and west over flatlands and mountains, step after step they went farther from home. Stumbling with fatigue, staggering with whiskey, even sometimes stepping high on bright spring mornings when they refused to think of what weighed them down, many covered over 700 miles before stepping off the road their footsteps made. Seven hundred miles is a million and a half steps. After weeks of wading rivers, crossing state lines, and climbing mountain roads, and even boarding boats and ships and then disembarking, they had moved their bodies across the frontier between the old slavery and the new.

Over the course of eighty years, almost 1 million people were herded down the road into the new slavery. This chapter is about how these forced marchers began, as they walked those roads, to change things about the eastern and western United States, like shifting grains moved from one side of a balance to another. It shows how the first forced migrations began to tramp down paths along which another 1 million walkers' 1.5 trillion steps would shape seven decades of slavery's expansion in the new United States.¹⁷⁶

Here is one of the reports about transportation to southern Louisiana and central Tennessee:

And not just Alabama enslavers: between 1815 and 1819, settlers transported nearly 100,000 unfree migrants to southern Louisiana, central Tennessee, and the area around Natchez, Mississippi.¹⁷⁷

¹⁷⁶ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. 2.

¹⁷⁷ *Ibid*, p. 93.

▪ **Forced Migrations**

Out of many such stories we quote only one reported in the following words:

I saw them travel in groups. . . . They looked like cattle." "They was taking them, driving them, just like a pack of mules." "I seen people handcuffed together and drove along the Williamsburg Road like cattle. They was bought to be took south." The stories of those who endured coffle, block, and whipping- machine were as like to each other as two links forged as part of the same iron chain. But enslaved people also forged their own links. They borrowed catchphrases that resonated with their own or their relatives' experiences: "My mother and daddy done told me all about it. . . . Sold just like cows, honey, right off the block." Every teller owned a piece of this story, for the experiences and forces that the words tried to describe had shaped every teller's life. They did far better than professional historians have done at identifying the common ways that forced migration shaped their lives and that of the United States. Indeed, the storytellers concluded that forced migration was slavery's truest measure.¹⁷⁸

The Auctioneers

Normally after landing at market towns, the slaves were auctioned publicly. Certain description about the same may help us know the miseries and humiliations of these biped beasts i.e. the slaves.



¹⁷⁸ Ibid, p. 172.

Referring to the auction of slaves, Mr. Baptist has recorded that:

No, on the block, only the most desperate plays had a chance. At fifteen, Delicia Patterson gave this speech, literally from the stump: "Old Judge Miller," she said, "don't you bid for me, cause if you do, I would not live on your plantation, I will take a knife and cut my own throat from ear to ear before I would be owned by you." Others wailed from the lines where they waited—keep me near my children; buy me, man who is not as harsh as that other one, I will be a good worker. Some tried a bravado approach, laughing and joking—see, you cannot break me. But while Judge Miller dropped his bid for Delicia, when the young woman's father begged his current owner to buy his daughter, the man cited her public defiance and refused. Stubbornness could also lead to physical assault. Martha Dickson, sold at an auction in St. Louis, refused to speak when she was ordered to describe herself. The auctioneer had her whipped until she talked.¹⁷⁹

The Wretched of the Earth

The grim satisfaction of focusing on a tightly controlled kernel of hate—this was all most enslaved survivors of the auction could take away as profit from the sale of their own bodies and futures. But uncertainty, humiliation, and threats stunned most minds on the block. Eventually their bodies revealed the terror. Mothers wailed. Some, physically overwhelmed, couldn't quite follow what was happening. Incoherent, they could barely stand before eyes that measured them, planned for them. "I's seen slaves" on Napoleon Street in New Orleans, remembered Elizabeth Hile, fellow slaves "who just come off the auction block. "Staggering away from Maspero s behind their new owners, they "would be sweating and looking sick.¹⁸⁰

Rachel watched. She had been leered at, too—when she came through the door, all the way back to the point of her sale in Baltimore. It had been going on ever since she reached puberty, but sale time was when the forced sexualization of enslaved women's bodies was most explicit. Before the 1830s, and sometimes after, whites usually forced women to strip. Robert Williams saw women required to pull down their dresses: each one "would just have a piece around her waist . . . her breast and things would be bare." In the middle of Smithfield, North Carolina, said Cornelia Andrews, slave

¹⁷⁹ Ibid, p. 98.

¹⁸⁰ Ibid, p. 98-99.

sellers “stripped them niggers stark naked and gallop’em over the square.” In Charleston, enslaved women stood, wrapped only in blankets, on an auction- table in the street. The “vendue-master” described their bodies, and a white bidder who took a woman back into the auctioneer’s shop could take off the blanket.

Auctioneers and bidders would turn a woman around, raise her skirt, slap “and plump her to show how fat she was.” William Johnson remembered that “bidders would come up and feel the women’s legs—lift up their [g]arments and examine their hips, feel their breast, and examine them to see if they could bear children.” For white people, seeing Mary up on the bench was one of the rewards of membership in the fraternity of entrepreneurs. Men asked questions of a woman that they did not put to John or William, questions that attempted to force her to acknowledge everything that was being bought and sold. Women who refused to play along could expect white anger, as one observer noted: “When answers were demanded to the questions usually put by the bidders to slaves on the block, the tears rolled down her cheeks, and her refusal to answer those most disgusting questions met with blood- curling oaths.” Of course, not all white bidders minded resistance. Some relished overcoming it. It was all part of the game.¹⁸¹

Inhuman Punishments to Slaves

Slaves were punished by whipping, shackling, hanging, beating, burning, mutilation, branding, and imprisonment. Punishment was most often meted in response to disobedience or perceived infractions, but sometimes abuse was carried out simply to re-assert the dominance of the master or overseer over the slave. Treatment was usually harsher on large plantations, which were often managed by overseers and owned by absentee slaveholders; in contrast with small slave-owning families, where the closer relationship between the owners and slaves sometimes resulted in a more humane environment. William Wells Brown, who escaped and became a fugitive slave, reported that on one plantation, slave men were required to pick 80 pounds per day of cotton, while women were required to pick 70 pounds; if any slave failed in his or her quota, they were given lashes of the whip for each pound they were short. The whipping post stood next to the cotton scales. A New York man who attended a slave auction in the mid-19th century reported that at least three-quarters of the male slaves he saw being sold had scars on

¹⁸¹ Ibid, p. 99-100.

their backs from whipping.¹⁸²



Francis Fedric remembered such a morning—a morning on which he, too, had begun a forced march to Kentucky. As those who were about to be led away formed up before dawn, he saw men and women fall on the damp ground behind the old I- style house “on their knees[,] begging to be purchased to go with their wives or husbands.” Some were “abroad husbands,” men owned by other enslavers, but who had been allowed Saturday night visits with their wives—and who were now watching the dawn end their marriages. Some were abroad wives who had risen at 3 a.m. to walk to the plantation, bringing the last change of clothes they would ever wash for their husbands. Holding the hands of parents who were staying were sobbing sons and daughters. Begging was “of no avail,” remembered Fedric. The man guiding the slaves out to Kentucky—well, this was not his first time. When he was ready, off they went, walking down the road toward the Blue Ridge looming in the distance.¹⁸³

A man or woman who discovered that he was being taken south might be desperate enough to do anything. Some ran.

¹⁸² Wikipedia, s.v. ‘Slavery in the United States’.

¹⁸³ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. 13.

Some fought like tigers. William Grimes tried to break his own leg with an axe. No wonder sellers and buyers schemed to take men like Charles Ball unawares. And once buyers bought, no wonder they bolted fetters on men and ran links of iron through padlocks. Men could march together carrying their chains. But there was no way that they could all run together. There was no way they could leap off a boat and swim to shore, no way thirty-three men hauling one thousand pounds of iron could hide silent in the woods. The coffer-chains enabled Georgia-men to turn feet against hearts, to make enslaved people work directly against their own love of self, children, spouses; of the world, of freedom and hope.

When the scow scraped bottom in the shallows on the other side of the river, and the people awkwardly staggered out, the Georgia-man led them up the bank and onto a road that they walked until evening fell, heading southwest. They stopped at a rough tavern. The proprietor put them in one large room. Fifty- two pairs of mostly manacled hands managed to share a large pot of cornmeal mush before it was too dark to see.¹⁸⁴

Then Charles's grandfather appeared. Born in Africa in the 1720s, he'd been kidnapped as a teenager, and sold to men who brought him across the salt water to Maryland. There they renamed him, and by the time Charles had known him, "Old Ben" was gray with half a century in slavery. Ben never surrendered his own version of Islam, or his contempt for either the enslavers or the enslaved people who behaved submissively. Charles's father, in contrast, had tried to play a less defiant part. But after the 1785 sale of his wife and children, the father changed. He spent his free time at Old Ben's hut, talking about Africa and the wrongs of slavery. The owner grew worried that the younger man would run away. He arranged a posse to help seize Charles's father for a Georgia trader. But Old Ben overheard two white men talking about the plan. He crossed three miles of woods in the dark to Charles's father's cabin. Handing his son a bag of dried corn and a jug of cider, Ben sent him off toward Pennsylvania. No one in Calvert County ever heard from Charles's father again.

Ben would have come for his grandson, too. But the old man was dead ten years gone, and these locks and chains would have defeated even his survivor's cunning. When the sun came up, it found Ball stumbling forward, trying to keep time with the rest of the coffer.

In the days to come, Ball and the other men gighed on the Georgia-man's line marched steadily southwest, covering ten to twenty miles a day. The pregnant women complained desperately. The Georgia- man rode on. After crossing the

¹⁸⁴ Ibid, p. 23.

Potomac, he moved Ball, who was physically the strongest of the men, from the middle of the chain and attached his padlocked collar to the first iron link. With Ball setting a faster pace, the two sets of double lines of people hurried down the high road, a dirt line in the Virginia grain fields that today lies under the track of US Highway 301.¹⁸⁵

Every enslaved prisoner wanted to "rise" at one point or another. Properly closed locks disabled that option. Cuffs bound hands, preventing attack or defense. Chains on men also made it harder for women to resist. Isolated from male allies, individual women were vulnerable. One night at a tavern in Virginia's Greenbrier County, a traveler watched as a group of traders put a coffle of people in one room. Then, wrote the traveler, each white man "took a female from the drove to lodge with him, as is the common practice." Ten-year-old enslaved migrant John Brown saw slave trader Starling Finney and his assistants gang-rape a young woman in a wagon by a South Carolina road. The other women wept. The chained men sat silently.¹⁸⁶

None of that mattered to the Georgia-man as long as the chain kept moving, and Ball led the file down through Virginia into North Carolina at a steady pace. As the days wore on, the men, who were never out of the chains, grew dirtier and dirtier. Lice hopped from scalp to scalp at night. Black and-red lines of scabs bordered the manacles. No matter: The Georgia-man would let the people clean themselves before they got to market.¹⁸⁷

Although France had temporarily crushed the revolt in St. Domingue but it had cost them among others the entire Mississippi valley to be handed over to USA. Violence was marching down the road towards New Orleans where we find the most tragic episode recorded in the following:

Prize of Prizes:

The US militia had very effectively killed the rebels and they were carrying the heads of some of the prominent leaders of the rebels. Charles Deslondes was counted as prize of prizes. A US navy man described his death in the following:

¹⁸⁵ Ibid, p. 23-24.

¹⁸⁶ Ibid, p. 25.

¹⁸⁷ Ibid, p. 25-26.

Deslondes “had his hands chopped off” with an axe—we can imagine Andry, who had lost his son to one of these so recently, delivering the blow through the wrists, onto the chopping block. “Then shot in one thigh, and then the other, until they were both broken—then shot in the Body.” But what else to do? Quickly, before Charles bled to death, someone broke open a bale of straw. They threw the writhing man into the straw, scattered it on him, and thrust in the torches—and so Charles Deslondes died with the flames crackling his skin.¹⁸⁸

Amar a Martyr or an Avatar:

The militia stood Amar up in the yard at the Widow Charbonnet’s place. Herded into an audience, the men, women, and children who knew him had to watch. The white men took aim and made Amar’s body dance with a volley of lead. In his head, as he slumped and fell, were 50 billion neurons. They held the secrets of turning sugarcane sap into white crystals, they held the memories that made him smile at just such a joke, they held the cunning with which he sought out his lover’s desires, they held the names of all the people who stood circled in silence. His cheek pressed on earth that his own feet had helped to pack, his mouth slackly coursing out blood, as gunpowder smoke gathered in a cloud and blew east. A white officer’s sideways boots strode toward him. The dancing electrons in Amar’s brain caressed forty five years of words, pictures, feelings, the village imam with his old book, his mother calling him from the door of a mud-brick house. The memory of a slave ship or maybe more than one, the rumor of Saint-Domingue—all this was there, was him—but his cells were cascading into sudden death. One last involuntary wheeze as a soldier raised an axe sharpened by recent practice and severed Amar’s head from his body.

Six weeks later, a merchant drifting down the river on a flatboat spied strange fruit growing. “Along between Cantrell and the Red Church I saw a number of Negro Heads sticking on Poles on the Levee,” he wrote. On the pike, Amar’s face stared out over the water. The buzzards and the crows had already taken what they could. Slowly, as his jaw became unstrung, his mouth gaped. In terror of what would happen if they were caught taking him down, in fear of his unquiet spirit, his people left him up there. Perhaps some thought he had done wrong, that his choices, and those of dozens of others whose heads now stretched up and down the levee for fifty miles, had brought disaster upon themselves and their people. Perhaps others thought him a martyr, an avatar of

¹⁸⁸ Ibid, p. 62.

revolution, of pride and resistance.¹⁸⁹

Here is another description of enslavers' treatment with the Negro slaves.

In December 1815, an enslaved woman named Anna dramatized the way in which slavery's expansion did not allow her to do that. Sold to a Georgiaman, separated from her husband and all but two of her children, she had been locked in a third-floor room at George Miller's tavern on F Street in 28 Washington, DC. Squeezing through a garret window, she was either trying to escape or jumping from despair. Whichever it was, gravity took over and Anna fell twenty-five feet, breaking her spine and both arms. Dragged into a bed, she said before dying, "I am sorry now that I did it, they have carried my children off with 'em to Carolina."¹⁹⁰

Slavery Continued to Expand

In the morning, just to make sure they all understood that they had marched into a different part of the world, the Georgia-man pried open his compressed lips and made a little speech. They were now too far from Virginia or Maryland to ever get back again, he told them. They must give up all hope of returning. And there was much truth to what the Georgia-man said. These fifty-two enslaved African Americans had now walked into a place that the coffle-chain had inked onto the map with streaks of iron oxide from sweat and dirty manacles. Beside the road, they began to see a strange crop growing in the early summer fields: "It looked not unlike buckwheat before it blossoms," Ball remembered. This was the cotton plant. In this place where chains marched past plants that looked like food but turned into fiber, they were trapped in a deeper slavery, one shifted into being by two decades of Georgia-men traveling to and from the Chesapeake. When the American Revolution had ended, 20,000 enslaved people had lived in the South Carolina backcountry. Now 75,000 were there. Meanwhile, the Georgia slave population was growing, too, increasing from 30,000 in 1790 to 107,000 in 1810.¹⁹¹

Pushing System

In most of the labor camps, the masters used to extort maximum efficiency from the slaves by lashing them

¹⁸⁹ Ibid, p. 65.

¹⁹⁰ Ibid, p. 25-26.

¹⁹¹ Ibid, p. 31.

severely or subjecting them to other tortures unheard of anywhere outside the colonial world.

Innovation in violence, in fact, was the foundation of the widely shared pushing system. Enslaved migrants in the field quickly learned what happened if they lagged or resisted. In Mississippi, Allen Sidney saw a man who had fallen behind the fore row fight back against a black driver who tried to “whip him up” to pace. The white overseer, on horseback, dropped his umbrella, spurred up, and shouted, “Take him down.” The overseer pulled out a pistol and shot the prone man dead. “None of the other slaves,” Sidney remembered, “said a word or turned their heads. They kept on hoeing as if nothing had happened.” They had learned that they had to adapt to “pushing” or face unpredictable but potentially extreme violence. Enslavers organized space so that violent supervision could extract the maximum amount of labor.¹⁹²

It has been reported about labor camp at Congaree that:

Ball arrived back at the slave cabins just as the overseer finished his roll call. Lydia came toiling up a minute later, with the baby bouncing on her back. “Where have you been?” the overseer demanded. “I only stopped a while to talk to this man,” she said, “but I shall never do it again.” She began to sob. The overseer ordered her to lie down on her stomach. Handing her baby to another woman, she complied. The white man pulled up her torn shift, exposing her buttocks and back. Then he drew from his belt the lash he had been carrying folded there all day.

The whip, ten feet of plaited cowhide dangling from a weighted handle, was, Ball realized, “different from all other whips that I have ever seen.” The impression it made would never leave him. Many other migrants reported the same feeling of shocked discovery. In Virginia and Maryland, white people used cat- o’-nine- tails, short leather whips with multiple thongs. These were dangerous weapons, and Chesapeake enslavers were creative in developing a repertoire of torment to force people to do what they wanted. But this southwestern whip was far worse. In expert hands it ripped open the air with a sonic boom, tearing gashes through skin and flesh. As the overseer beat Lydia, she screamed and writhed. Her flesh shook. Blood rolled off her back and percolated into the packed, dark soil of the yard.¹⁹³

(...) Survivors of southwestern torture said their experiences were so horrific that they made any previous “licken” seem like nothing. Okah Tubbee, a part- Choctaw, part- African teenager enslaved in Natchez, remembered his first time

¹⁹² Ibid, p. 117-118.

¹⁹³ Ibid, p. 119-120.

under "what they call in the South, the overseer's whip." Tubbee stood up for the first few blood-cutting strokes, but then he fell down and passed out. He woke up vomiting. They were still beating him. He slipped into darkness again.

Under the whip, people could not speak in sentences or think coherently. They "danced," trembled, babbled, lost control of their bodies. Talking to the rest of the white world, enslavers downplayed the damage inflicted by the overseer's whip. Sure, it might etch deep gashes in the skin of its victim, make them "tremble" or "dance," as enslavers said, but it did not disable them. Whites were open with those whom they beat about the whip's purpose. Its point was the way it asserted dominance so "educationally" that the enslaved would abandon hope of successful resistance to the pushing system's demands.¹⁹⁴

Columbus is applauded as a great hero and benefactor of the Western nations. Very few of the people might have the knowledge about the darkest sides of his carrier. We have already given some details about his inhuman treatment with the slaves but for further details about atrocities committed by him, please refer to the topics "Genocide of Native Americans" and "Genocide by Columbus" in the next chapter of the book.

Dehumanization of the Slaves

On Columbus' second voyage, he was accompanied by 1,200 men, who viewed the native population as theirs to exploit. One particularly sickening account of the raping and pillaging that Columbus' men carried out was from Michele de Cuneo, a wealthy aristocrat who called Columbus a close friend:

"While I was in the boat I captured a very beautiful Carib woman, whom the said Lord Admiral gave to me, and with whom, having taken her into my cabin, she being naked according to their custom, I conceived desire to take pleasure. I wanted to put my desire into execution but she did not want it and treated me with her finger nails in such a manner that I wished I had never begun," de Cuneo wrote. "But seeing that, (to tell you the end of it all), I took a rope and thrashed her well, for which she raised such unheard of screams that you would not have believed your ears. Finally we came to an agreement in such manner that I can tell you that she seemed to have been brought up in a school of harlots."¹⁹⁵

¹⁹⁴ Ibid, p. 120-121.

¹⁹⁵ C. Robert Gibson, *US UNCUT*, published on October, 10, 2015.



▪ ***Columbus Fed Natives to Dogs***

In the book *A Dog's History of America*, author Mark Derr described the horrific past time of Columbus and his men: using dogs to hunt natives instead of foxes. This hellish sport was referred to as the *monteria infernal*. Derr also described how the dogs brought over from Spain were bred specifically to have a bloodhound's scent, with the long legs and crushing jaws of a mastiff, used to hunt down and kill natives.

Natives were even pitted against these dogs in barbaric, gladiator-style death matches. A native would be armed with nothing but a stick and stripped naked, and colonists would entertain themselves by watching the dogs maul the natives by decapitating them with their jaws. The natives grew to fear being thrown to the dogs as the worst form of death.¹⁹⁶

▪ ***Columbus Sold Children into Slavery***

After several voyages and raping and pillaging, Columbus and his men grew increasingly depraved. When he was replaced as governor of Hispaniola and recalled back to Spain in 1500, he wrote in a casual tone of how he provided sex slaves to his men, some of whom were small children, for a high price. Death and Taxes called Columbus "the pimp of the New World."

¹⁹⁶ Ibid.

"A hundred castellanos are as easily obtained for a woman as for a farm, and there are plenty of dealers who go about looking for girls; those from nine to ten are now in demand, and for all ages a good price must be paid," Columbus wrote.¹⁹⁷

Henri Christopher's personal secretary was a slave for much of his life, expresses the following of the treatment of slaves in Saint-Domingue:

Have they not hung up men with heads downward, drowned them in sacks, crucified them on planks, buried them alive, crushed them in mortars? Have they not forced them to consume faeces¹⁹⁸? And, having flayed them with the lash, have they not cast them alive to be devoured by worms, or onto anthills, or lashed them to stakes in the swamp to be devoured by mosquitoes? Have they not thrown them into boiling cauldrons of cane syrup? Have they not put men and women inside barrels studded with spikes and rolled them down mountainsides into the abyss? Have they not consigned these miserable blacks to man eating-dogs until the latter, sated by human flesh, left the mangled victims to be finished off with bayonet and poniard?¹⁹⁹

The miseries of the slaves did not end even after US Emancipation Proclamation 1963-1965. Here is a heart-rending report about the same:

A few captives from Native American tribes who were used as slaves were not freed, when African-American slaves were emancipated. "Ute²⁰⁰ Woman," a Ute captured by the Arapaho and later sold to a Cheyenne, was one example. Used as a prostitute for sale to American soldiers at Cantonment in the Indian Territory, she lived in slavery until about 1880 when she died of a hemorrhage resulting from "excessive sexual intercourse"²⁰¹

A Westminster goldsmith made silver padlocks for blacks and dogs. In African quarters, one could come across certain horrible depictions of dehumanization of men and women at the hands of the white colonizers.

¹⁹⁷ Ibid.

¹⁹⁸ Waste matter remaining after food has been digested, discharged from the bowels.

¹⁹⁹ Wikipedia, s.v. *1804 Haiti Massacre*.

²⁰⁰ A member of an American Indian people living chiefly in Colorado, Utah, and New Mexico.

²⁰¹ Wikipedia, s.v. *Slavery in the United States*.

Referring to the Herero and Namaqua genocide, Der Kampf noted that:

This bold enterprise shows up in the most brilliant light the ruthless energy of the German command in pursuing their beaten enemy. No pains, no sacrifices were spared in eliminating the last remnants of enemy resistance. Like a wounded beast the enemy was tracked down from one water-hole to the next, until finally he became the victim of his own environment. The arid Omaheke [desert] was to complete what the German army had begun: the extermination of the Herero nation.²⁰²

Cornell wrote of the concentration camp:

Cold - for the nights are often bitterly cold there - hunger, thirst, exposure, disease and madness claimed scores of victims every day, and cartloads of their bodies were every day carted over to the back beach, buried in a few inches of sand at low tide, and as the tide came in the bodies went out, food for the sharks.²⁰³

▪ ***Rape and Sexual Abuse***

Missionary reports about the Herero and Namaqua genocide contained that 'there are accusations of Herero women being coerced into sex slavery as a means of survival.'

Because of the power relationships of the institution, slave women in the United States were at high risk for rape and sexual abuse. Many slaves fought back against sexual attacks, and some died resisting. Others carried psychological and physical scars from the attacks. Sexual abuse of slaves was partially rooted in a patriarchal Southern culture which treated black women as property or chattel. Southern culture strongly policed against sexual relations between white women and black men on the purported grounds of racial purity but, before the late 18th century, the many mixed-race slaves and slave children showed that white men had often taken advantage of slave women. Wealthy planter widowers, notably such as John Wayles and his son-in-law Thomas Jefferson, took slave women as concubines; each had six children with his partner: Elizabeth Hemings and her daughter Sally Hemings (the half-sister of Jefferson's late wife), respectively.²⁰⁴

²⁰² Wikipedia, s.v. *Herero and Namaqua Genocide*.

²⁰³ Ibid.

²⁰⁴ Wikipedia, s.v. *Slavery in the United States*.



This Jefferson had, however, been inclined to abolition of slaves and it has been recorded about him that:

Jefferson declared in regard to slavery, "I tremble for my country when I reflect that God is just." The last-named statesman, at the first Continental Congress after the evacuation by the British forces, proposed a draft ordinance (March 1st 1784) for the government of the North-West Territory, in which it was provided that "after the year 1800 there shall be neither slavery nor involuntary servitude in any of the said states, otherwise than in punishment of crime." This proviso, however, was lost; but in the Ordinance of 1787 (13 July) for the government of the territory of the United States north-west of the Ohio river, which was introduced by Nathan Dane and probably drafted by Manasseh Cutler,

slavery was forbidden in the Territory.²⁰⁵

The slavery continued on a large scale throughout USA for several decades thereafter and Civil War was one of the main causes to avert abolition till the end of the War. It is said that:

The war was practically closed by the surrender at Appomattox (7th April 1865), but already in 1862 slavery in the Territories had been abolished by Congress; on the 22nd of September of the same year Lincoln (q.v.) had issued the preliminary emancipation proclamation, followed on the 1st of January 1863 by the emancipation of all slaves in the states in arms against the Union; and in December 1865 a constitutional amendment was ratified abolishing and forever prohibiting slavery through-out the United States.²⁰⁶

In spite of the fact that United States had abolished slavery within its territory and they were also persuading other states to do the same, slavery continued to increase or exist in many other states around the north as well as the Southern American Continent. By the census of 1867, there was in Cuba a total population of 1,370,211.

In 1873 the Cubans roughly estimated the population at 1,500,000—of whom 500,000, or one-third, were slaves. Mr. Crowe, consul-general in the island, in 1885, stated that "the institution was rapidly dying,—that in a year, or at most two, slavery, even in its then mild form, would be extinct."²⁰⁷

Although slave trade had been put down in Brazil since 1850 and slavery had also been abolished in 1871 yet it had little real effect on the conditions of the slaves. It was on September 28, 1871 that the Brazilian chambers decreed that slavery should be abolished throughout the territory. The said enactment had many loopholes and the enslavers had free hand to continue exploiting the slaves for another 17-18 years. In spite of some good impact, the slavery did not cease to exist there. Finally in 1888, the chambers declared the total abolition of slavery which resulted in freedom of about 700,000 persons in the state.

²⁰⁵ *Encyclopaedia Britannica*, Vol. 20, (London: William Benton Publisher, p. 783.

²⁰⁶ *Ibid*, p. 783.

²⁰⁷ *Ibid*, p. 783.

▪ ***Branding the Slaves***

In October 1819, the Roman brothers, local enslavers who branded any person they bought, purchased a woman named Maria for the high price of \$1500. They left her in Maspero's keeping while they finished their town business. Reluctant to endure the Hot iron the Romans were paying so much to inflict on her, Maria escaped. Seven weeks later, she was still running.²⁰⁸

Other two references about branding have been given under the titles 'Trans-Atlantic Shipment' and 'Inhuman Punishments to Slaves' of this chapter.

▪ ***Separation from Family and Children***

Out of 2,567 women twenty- one years old and up sold by enslavers in New Orleans between 1815 and 1820, we can prove that at least 553 came from outside the city. Of these, enslavers bought 525 without children. Whether women like Rachel did or did not leave children behind in Maryland, they stood on the block alone. Meanwhile, only in 6 of 553 cases did New Orleans sellers deal the women's husbands with them. Even if one includes those whose origins we cannot demonstrate from the records of sale, between 1815 and 1820 only 8 women of 2,567 were sold with their husbands, and only 3 with both husband and child. Clearly, more than 1 percent of all the enslaved women over twenty, whether in Louisiana or throughout the South, were married with children. (...) From 1815 to 1820, in fact, New Orleans saw 2,646 sales of children under the age of thirteen, of whom 1,001 were sold separately from any family member. Their average age was nine. Many were younger – some much younger.²⁰⁹

▪ ***Human Zoos***

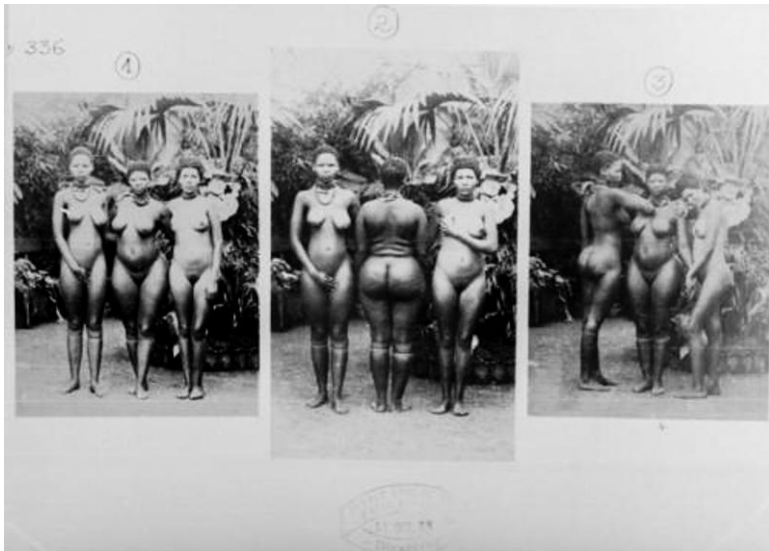
Human zoos had been one of Europe's most shameful secrets. These zoos were quite popular in many of the European countries from late 1800s to mid 1900s. Even US had fair share of human zoos. Normally thousands of people would visit these zoos at various important cultural centers of Europe. It is said that 18 million people came to visit the world fare in 1889 where 400

²⁰⁸ Edward E. Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, (New York: Basic Books, 2014), p. 88.

²⁰⁹ Ibid, p. 106.

Africans and aboriginals were displayed to them stripped down half naked and thrown into cages. In early 1906, the Bronx Zoo in New York City had an exclusive exhibit with a Congolese female named 'Ota Benga' who had been thrown into the cages with other animals. She was forced to carry apes and even to wrestle with an Orangutan. It has been reported that:

Luckily, human zoos started to wear off in Europe after the Second World War. Ironically Adolf Hitler was the one to ban them. The last human exhibition was held in Belgium circa 1958.²¹⁰



Among many features at display in the zoos had been Steatopygia showing protuberant buttocks and elongated Labia. Whites went to the zoo to stare at their curves. A description of the same cited in the article has been reproduced in the following:

The saddest emblem of the coming era was the South African Saartjie Baartman, later to be known as the Hottentot Venus. Born around 1780, she was brought to London in 1810 and put on display. She had the genetic characteristic known as steatopygia-extremely protuberant buttocks and elongated labia - which evidently delighted the cabaret-goers of the British capital. Image caption Can it teach us anything about

²¹⁰ Brittany Rosen, The Plaid Zebra, An Unconventional Lifestyle Magazine, February 20, 2015.

modern attitudes to race? Later she came to Paris, and was analysed by the budding racial anthropologists. According to the exhibition catalogue, one scientist described her as having the "buttocks of a mandrill". When she died in poverty, her skeleton was put on display. It remained on show in the Museum of Mankind in Paris until 1974. In 2002, her remains were repatriated and buried in South Africa. "Baartman marks the start of the period of description, measurement and classification, which soon leads us to hierarchisation - the idea that there are lesser and greater races," says Snoep. The climax of the story comes with the imperialist high noon of the late 19th and early 20th Centuries.²¹¹

²¹¹ By Hugh Schofield, *Human zoos: When real people were exhibits* BBC News Magazine, Paris, 27 December 2011

Ch. 6 -

GENOCIDE OF THE INDIGENOUS PEOPLE

Lemkin states that genocide is: "...any of the following acts committed with intent to destroy, in whole or in part, a national, ethnical, racial or religious group, as such:

- (a) Killing members of the group;
- (b) Causing serious bodily or mental harm to members of the group;
- (c) Deliberately inflicting on the group conditions of life calculated to bring about its physical destruction in whole or in part;
- (d) Imposing measures intended to prevent births within the group;
- (e) Forcibly transferring children of the group to another group.

Referring to pre-1948 examples, the article narrates that:

In the 16th century, the expansion of European empires led to the conquering of the Americas, Africa, Australasia and Asia. This period of expansion resulted in several instances of massacres, and genocide. Many indigenous peoples, such as the Yuki, Beothuk the Pallawah and Herero, were brought to the brink of extinction. In some cases, entire tribes were annihilated.²¹²

Scholars differ regarding their estimates about the number of indigenous populations in Americas or other territories in the Western Hemisphere from the 16th to the 19th centuries. They also differ on the question as to what may be termed genocide and what may be excluded from the same. The article referred to above records that:

Estimates of population decline in the Americas from the first contact with Europeans in 1492 until the turn of the 20th century depend on the estimation of the initial pre-contact

²¹² Wikipedia, s.v. *Genocide of Indigenous Peoples*.

population. In the early 20th century, scholars estimated low populations for the pre-contact Americas, with Alfred Kroeber's estimate as low as 8.4 million people in the entire hemisphere. Archaeological findings and a better overview of early censuses have contributed to much higher estimates. Dobyns (1966) estimated a pre-contact population of 90-112 million. Denevan's more conservative estimate was 57.3 million. Russell Thornton (1987) arrived at a figure around 70 million. Depending on the estimate of the initial population, by 1900 the indigenous population can be said to have declined by more than 80%, due mostly to the effects of diseases such as smallpox, measles and cholera, but also violence and warfare by colonizers against the Indians.

Scholars who have argued prominently that this population decline can be considered genocidal include historian David Stannard and anthropological demographer Russell Thornton, as well as scholar activists such as Vine Deloria, Jr., Russell Means and Ward Churchill. Stannard compares the events of colonization that led to the population decline in the Americas with the definition of genocide in the 1948 UN convention, and writes that "In light of the U.N. language—even putting aside some of its looser constructions—it is impossible to know what transpired in the Americas during the sixteenth seventeenth, eighteenth and nineteenth centuries and not conclude that it was genocide". Thornton does not consider the onslaught of disease to be genocide, and only describes as genocide the direct impact of warfare, violence and massacres, many of which had the effect of wiping out entire ethnic groups. Holocaust scholar and political scientist Guenter Lewy rejects the label of genocide and views the depopulation of the Americas as "not a crime but a tragedy."²¹³

There are numerous other instances of violence, disruption, exploitation, massacres, displacements, imposition of unbearable limitations and spreading of infectious diseases in the conquered areas in Africa and especially in South Africa, Argentina, Haiti, Mexico and Newfoundland etc. Due to shortage of space and time at our disposal, we shall be avoiding to quote particular instances from such states. We shall, therefore, be producing reports about genocide from different sources in the following:

In the late eighteenth century, Native Americans still controlled substantial territories only a few hundred miles inland from the coastal provinces, yet they were unable to

²¹³ Ibid.

stop the white settlers' steady encroachment. The settlers eventually won a bloody and centuries-long war, succeeding in turning the land of Native Americans into land that was legally "empty." This was a land whose social structures had been catastrophically weakened or eliminated, a land without most of its people and thus without the entanglements of history. In terms of unencumbered land, the South had no rival in the cotton-growing world.²¹⁴

In 1838, federal troops began removing the Cherokee nation from their ancestral homeland in Georgia, which was to be turned into cotton plantations. Farther south, in Florida, extraordinary rich cotton lands were expropriated from the Seminoles between 1835 and 1842, the longest war in U.S. history until the Vietnam War. It is no wonder that Mississippi planters, argues one historian, had "an obsessive concern with well-organized and trained militias, adequate weaponry, and a responsive federal army."

Native Americans understood the underlying foundations of the expanding military-cotton complex: Upon removal in 1836, the chief of the Cherokees, John Ross, in a letter to Congress decried that "our property may be plundered before our eyes; violence may be committed on our persons; even our lives may be taken away, and there is none to regard our complaints. We are denationalized; we are disenfranchised. We are deprived of membership in the human family!" The coercion and violence required to mobilize slave labor was matched only by the demands of an expansionist war against indigenous people. Nothing of this kind had even been dreamed of in Anatolia or Gujarat.²¹⁵

The western nations during the colonization of Americas, Australia and thousands of islands in the Pacific and the Atlantic Oceans had a general policy of eliminating indigenous people inhabiting those lands. They, therefore, killed countless millions of the people who had been the original occupants of the territories. Although, there is no possibility of arriving at an exact figure of the total loss of human lives caused by the colonizers yet the readers can form their opinion about the same from certain reports quoted below:

It is not known how many Taino people were on the island prior to Columbus's arrival—estimates range from several thousand to eight million—but overwork in slavery and

²¹⁴ Sven Beckert, *Empire of Cotton*, p. 105.

²¹⁵ *Ibid*, p. 108.

diseases introduced by the Europeans quickly killed a large part of the population. Between 1492 and 1494, one third of the native population on the island died. Two million had been killed within ten years of the Spaniards' arrival, and by 1514, 92% of the native population of the island were killed by enslavement and European diseases. By the 1540s the culture of the natives had disappeared from the island, and by 1548 the native population was under 500.²¹⁶

Genocide in Africa

There have been widespread massacres and genocide in Africa right from the first quarter of 16th century up to about 1950. The short space at our disposal here does not allow us to cover even the conspicuous events. It may, therefore, suffice to make reference only to rubber boom in Congo and the Herero and Namaqua genocide in the following:

▪ Rubber Boom Genocide

From 1879 to 1912, the world experienced a rubber boom. Rubber prices skyrocketed, and it became increasingly profitable to extract rubber from rainforest zones in South America and Central Africa. Rubber extraction was labor-intensive, and the need for a large workforce had a significant negative effect on the indigenous population across Brazil, Peru, Ecuador and Colombia and in the Congo. The owners of the plantations or rubber barons were rich, but those who collected the rubber made very little, as a large amount of rubber was needed to be profitable. Rubber barons rounded up all the Indians and forced them to tap rubber out of the trees. Slavery and gross human rights abuses were widespread, and in some areas 90% of the Indian population was wiped out. One plantation started with 50,000 Indians and when the killings were discovered, only 8,000 were still alive. These rubber plantations were part of the Brazilian rubber market which declined as rubber plantations in Southeast Asia became more effective.²¹⁷

▪ Congo (DRC)

In the Democratic Republic of Congo genocidal violence against the indigenous Mbuti, Lese and Ituri peoples has been endemic for decades. During the Congo Civil War (1998–2003), Pygmies were hunted down and eaten by both sides in

²¹⁶ Wikipedia, *Slavery in Haiti*.

²¹⁷ Wikipedia, s.v. '*Genocide of Indigenous Peoples*'.

the conflict, who regarded them as subhuman Sinafasi Makelo, a representative of Mbuti pygmies, has asked the UN Security Council to recognize cannibalism as a crime against humanity and also as an act of genocide. According to a report by Minority Rights Group International there is evidence of mass killings, cannibalism and rape. The report, which labeled these events as a campaign of extermination, linked much of the violence to beliefs about special powers held by the Bambuti. In Ituri district, rebel forces ran an operation code-named "Effacer le tableau" (to wipe the slate clean). The aim of the operation, according to witnesses, was to rid the forest of pygmies.²¹⁸

To know more about large scale genocide in Congo, the readers may consult the topic Congo Free State (1886-1908) in chapter No. 10, of this Volume titled 'Towards the New World Order'.

▪ ***Herero and Namaqua Genocide***

The Wikipedia reports that:

The Herero and Namaqua Genocide was a campaign of racial extermination and collective punishment that the German Empire undertook in German South-West Africa (modern-day Namibia) against the Herero and Nama people. It is considered as one of the first genocides of the 20th century. It took place between 1904 and 1907 during the Herero Wars.

In January 1904, the Herero people, led by Samuel Maharero and Nama captain Hendrik Witbooi, rebelled against German colonial rule. In August, German general Lothar von Trotha defeated the Herero in the Battle of Waterberg and drove them into the desert of Omaheke, where most of them died of dehydration. In October, the Nama people also rebelled against the Germans, only to suffer a similar fate.

In total, between 24,000 and 100,000 Herero and 10,000 Nama died. The genocide was characterized by widespread death from starvation and dehydration due to the prevention of the retreating Herero from leaving the Namib Desert by German forces. Some sources also state that the German colonial army systematically poisoned desert water wells.²¹⁹

²¹⁸ Ibid.

²¹⁹ Wikipedia, s.v. *Herero and Namaqua Genocide*.

It is said that the general Trotha's proposed solution to end the resistance of Herero was that:

I believe that the nation as such should be annihilated, or, if this was not possible by tactical measures, have to be expelled from the country... This will be possible if the water-holes from Grootfontein to Gobabis are occupied. The constant movement of our troops will enable us to find the small groups of nation who have moved backwards and destroy them gradually.²²⁰

Jan Cloete, reports that:

I was present when the Herero were defeated in a battle in the vicinity of Waterberg. After the battle all men, women, and children who fell into German hands, wounded or otherwise, were mercilessly put to death. Then the Germans set off in pursuit of the rest, and all those found by the wayside and in the sandveld were shot down and bayoneted to death. The mass of the Herero men were unarmed and thus unable to offer resistance. They were just trying to get away with their cattle.²²¹

Under the caption Concentration Camps it has been reported that:

Survivors of the massacre, the majority of whom were women and children, were eventually put in places like Shark Island Concentration Camp, where the German authorities forced them to work as slave labour for German military and settlers. All prisoners were categorised into groups fit and unfit for work, and pre-printed death certificates indicating "death by exhaustion following privation" were issued. The British government published their well-known account of the German genocide of the Nama and Herero peoples in 1918.

Many Herero died later of disease, exhaustion, and malnutrition. Estimates of the mortality rate at the camps are between 45% and 74%.²²²

Further details can be found under the topic Dehumanization of Black Slaves.

Genocide of Native Americans

From the 1490s when Christopher Columbus landed in the Americas to the end of the 19th century, the indigenous population of the Western Hemisphere declined, mostly from

²²⁰ Ibid.

²²¹ Ibid.

²²² Ibid.

disease, to 1.8 million from around 50 million, a decline of 96%. In Brazil alone, the indigenous population declined from a pre-Columbian high of an estimated 3 million to some 300,000 (1997). Estimates of how many people were living in the Americas when Columbus arrived have varied tremendously; 20th century scholarly estimates ranged from 8.4 million to 112.5 million.²²³

By contrast, David Stannard argued that the destruction of the American aboriginals from 76 million down to a quarter-million over 4 centuries, in a "string of genocide campaigns", killing "countless tens of millions", was the most massive genocide in world history. Several works on the subject were released around the year 1992 to coincide with the 500th anniversary of Columbus's voyage. In 2003, Venezuelan President Hugo Chávez urged Latin Americans not to celebrate the Columbus Day holiday. Chavez blamed Columbus for leading to the alleged genocide. David Quammen likened colonial American practices toward Native Americans to those of Australia toward its aboriginal populations, calling both genocide.²²⁴

Here is another report about the genocide:

The population figure for Indigenous peoples in the Americas before the 1492 voyage of Christopher Columbus has proven difficult to establish. Scholars rely on archaeological data and written records from settlers from the Old World. Most scholars writing at the end of the 19th century estimated the pre-Columbian population at about 10 million; by the end of the 20th century the scholarly consensus had shifted to about 50 million, with some arguing for 100 million or more. Contact with the New World led to the European colonization of the Americas, in which millions of immigrants from the Old World eventually settled in the New World. Estimates are made by extrapolations from small bits of data. In 1976, geographer William Denevan used the existing estimates to derive a "consensus count" of about 54 million people. Nonetheless, more recent estimates still range widely.²²⁵

During the 16th, 17th and 18th centuries, Indian slavery, the enslavement of Native Americans by European colonists, was

²²³ Wikipedia, s.v. '*Population History of Indigenous People of the Americas*'.

²²⁴ Wikipedia, *Genocides in History*.

²²⁵ Wikipedia, s.v. *Slavery in the United States*.

common. Many of these Native slaves were exported to the Northern colonies and to off-shore colonies, especially the "sugar islands" of the Caribbean. Historian Alan Gallay estimates that from 1670–1715, British slave traders sold between 24,000 and 51,000 Native Americans from what is now the southern part of the U.S.

Slavery of Native Americans was organized in colonial and Mexican California through Franciscan missions, theoretically entitled to ten years of Native labor, but in practice maintaining them in perpetual servitude, until their charge was revoked in the mid-1830s. Following the 1847–48 invasion by U.S. troops, the "loitering or orphaned Indians" were de facto enslaved in the new state from statehood in 1850 to 1867. Slavery required the posting of a bond by the slave holder and enslavement occurred through raids and a four-month servitude imposed as a punishment for Indian "vagrancy."²²⁶

With the advancement in colonization of Americas, the Christian nations of Europe launched well planned programs to enslave or eliminate all the indigenous people in the continents of America. An article in the Wikipedia s.v. *Genocide of Indigenous People* reports that:

Genocide of indigenous peoples is the mass destruction of entire communities or races of indigenous peoples. Indigenous peoples are understood to be ethnic minorities whose historical and current territory has also become occupied by colonial expansion, or the formation of a nation state, by a dominant political group such as a colonial power.²²⁷

While the concept of genocide was formulated by Raphael Lemkin in the mid-20th century, the earlier expansion of various European colonial powers such as the Spanish and British empires, and the subsequent establishment of nation states on indigenous territory, frequently involved acts of genocidal violence against indigenous groups in the Americas, Australia, Africa and Asia. According to Lemkin, colonization was in itself "intrinsically genocidal". He saw this genocide as a two-stage process, the first being the destruction of the indigenous population's way of life. In the second stage, the newcomers impose their way of life on the minority group. According to David Maybury-Lewis, imperial and colonial forms of genocide are enacted in two main ways, either through the deliberate clearing of territories of their original inhabitants in order to make them exploitable for purposes of resource

²²⁶ Ibid.

²²⁷ Wikipedia, s.v. *Genocide of Indigenous Peoples*.

extraction or colonial settlements, or through enlisting indigenous peoples as forced laborers in colonial or imperialist projects of resource extraction. The designation of specific events as genocidal is often controversial.²²⁸

▪ **Genocide by Columbus**

Columbus is usually regarded as a great explorer, a hero and a benefactor of mankind. The said depiction may, however, be far from the truth. Actually Columbus had never reached the mainland USA while Cuba had been the closest place from the island of Hispaniola (now Haiti and the Dominican Republic) i.e. the lands he visited during his different voyages. Instead of taking him as nobility, they say that "Columbus was one of the most evil men to ever walk the earth".

One of the few men accompanying Columbus who eventually grew disgusted with his actions was Bartolome de Las Casas. De Las Casas bore witness to the atrocities the Spanish colonists committed on the native populations, and was so moved by his experiences that he renounced his past life and became a friar, committed to social justice for indigenous populations. In one of de Las Casas' letters, he describes the monstrous brutality of the colonists toward the natives, including nursing mothers and their babies.

"They attacked the towns and spared neither the children nor the aged nor pregnant women nor women in childbed, not only stabbing them and dismembering them but cutting them to pieces as if dealing with sheep in the slaughter house," de Las Casas wrote. "They laid bets as to who, with one stroke of the sword, could split a man in two or could cut off his head or spill out his entrails with a single stroke of the pike. They took infants from their mothers' breasts, snatching them by the legs and pitching them headfirst against the crags or snatched them by the arms and threw them into the rivers, roaring with laughter and saying as the babies fell into the water, 'Boil there, you offspring of the devil!'"²²⁹

The native populations were quickly enslaved and forced to mine at least a thimbleful of gold every three months. In *A People's History of the United States*, Howard Zinn described the gradual genocide of indigenous populations in the Bahamas, saying they were "worked at a ferocious pace."

"In two years, through murder, mutilation, or suicide, half

²²⁸ Ibid.

²²⁹ C. Robert Gibson, *US UNCUT*, published on October, 10, 2015.

of the 250,000 Indians on Haiti were dead,” Zinn wrote. “By the year 1515, there were perhaps fifty thousand Indians left. By 1550, there were five hundred. A report of the year 1650 shows none of the original Arawaks [on the Bahamas] or their descendants left on the island.”²³⁰

In just 8 years, Christopher Columbus managed to begin the eradication of an entire indigenous population, put the Trans-Atlantic Slave Trade into motion, and establish precedent for centuries of raping and pillaging by other European colonists.²³¹

Other crimes of Columbus such as selling children into sex-slavery, feeding natives to dogs, subjecting them to torture and humiliation have been recorded in the preceding chapter of the book.

▪ ***Deliberate Infection***

One of the most contentious issues relating to disease depopulation in the Americas concerns the degree to which Europeans deliberately infected indigenous peoples with diseases such as smallpox.²³²

▪ ***Massacres***

Although mass killings and atrocities were not a significant factor in native depopulation, no mainstream scholar dismisses the sometimes humiliating circumstances now believed to be precipitated by civil disorder as well as Spanish cruelty.

- The Taínos in the Antilles (Some believe 80% of the population disappeared in thirty years). In 1518–1519 a devastating smallpox epidemic killed most of the region's indigenous population.²³³

Referring to United States colonization and westward expansion, the article states that:

In the late 16th century, England, France, Spain and the Netherlands launched colonization efforts in the part of North America that is now the United States. The United States has not been legally admonished by the international community for genocidal acts against its indigenous population, but many commentators and academics argue that events such as The Trail of Tears, the Sand Creek Massacre and the Mendocino War were genocidal in nature. In addition, it is documented

²³⁰ Ibid.

²³¹ Ibid.

²³² Wikipedia, s.v. *Slavery in the United States*.

²³³ Ibid.

that then Secretary of War Lewis Cass ordered that no Mandan (along with the Arikara, the Cree, and the Black feet) be given smallpox vaccinations, which were provided to other tribes in other areas. Scholarly analysis indicates that British commander Jeffery Amherst authorized the intentional use of disease as a biological weapon against indigenous populations during the Siege of Fort Pitt.²³⁴

▪ ***Spanish Colonization of the Americas***

It is estimated that during the Spanish conquest of the Americas up to eight million indigenous people died, marking the first large-scale act of genocide of the modern era. Acts of brutality in the Caribbean and the systematic annihilation occurring on the Caribbean islands prompted Dominican friar Bartolomé de las Casas to write *Brevísima relación de la destrucción de las Indias* ("A Short Account of the Destruction of the Indies") in 1552. Las Casas wrote that the indigenous population on the Spanish colony of Hispaniola had been reduced from 400,000 to 200 in a few decades. His writings were among those that gave rise to *Leyenda Negra* (Black Legend) to describe Spanish cruelty in the Indies.²³⁵

With the initial conquest of the Americas completed, the Spanish implemented the *encomienda* system. In theory, *encomienda* placed groups of indigenous peoples under Spanish oversight to foster cultural assimilation and conversion to Christianity, but in practice led to the legally sanctioned exploitation of natural resources and forced labor under brutal conditions with a high death rate. Though the Spaniards did not set out to exterminate the indigenous peoples, believing their numbers to be inexhaustible, their actions led to the annihilation of entire tribes such as the Arawak. In the 1760s, an expedition despatched to fortify California, led by Gaspar de Portolà and Junípero Serra, was marked by slavery, forced conversions and genocide through the introduction of disease.²³⁶

▪ ***Bounty on Killing Indians***

The readers will be astonished to learn that at certain occasions, the colonizers made concerted efforts to eliminate indigenous people like pests and the vermin. They launched various programs to kill the native

²³⁴ Wikipedia, s.v. *Genocide of Indigenous Peoples*.

²³⁵ *Ibid.*

²³⁶ *Ibid.*

populations by offering monetary incentives to the killers.

In 1835, the government of Mexican state Sonora put a bounty on the Apache which, over time, evolved into a payment by the government of 100 pesos for each scalp of a male 14 or more years old. Author and historian James L. Haley wrote: "Beginning in 1837 Chihuahua state also offered bounty, 100 pesos per warrior, 50 pesos per woman, and 25 pesos per child, nothing more or less than genocide." According to Harris Worcester: "The new policy attracted a diverse group of men, including Anglos, runaway slaves led by Seminole John Horse, and Indians — Kirker used Delawares and Shawnees; others, such as Terrazas, used Tarahumaras; and Seminole Chief Coacoochee led a band of his own people who had fled from Indian Territory."²³⁷

▪ ***Colonization of California and Oregon***

The U.S. colonization of California started in earnest in 1849, and resulted in a large number of state-subsidized massacres by colonists against Indians in the territory, causing several entire ethnic groups to be wiped out. In one such series of conflicts, the so-called Mendocino War and the subsequent Round Valley War, the entire Yuki people was brought to the brink of extinction, from a previous population of some 3,500 people to fewer than 100. According to Russell Thornton, estimates of the pre-Columbian population of California was at least 310,000, and perhaps as much as 705,000. By 1849, due to Spanish and Mexican colonization and epidemics this number had decreased to 100,000. But from 1849 and up until 1890 the Indigenous population of California had fallen below 20,000, primarily because of the killings. At least 4,500 California Indians were killed between 1849 and 1870, while many more perished due to disease and starvation. 10,000 Indians were also kidnapped and sold as slaves.²³⁸

The Spaniards had also been actively pursuing the policy of decimation of the indigenous population in the lands colonized by them. The New Cambridge Modern History provides us with the approximate figures of the indigenous Indian population between 1519-1597, reflecting a very sharp decline or decimation of the indigenous people in central Mexico as detailed below:

²³⁷ Ibid.

²³⁸ Ibid.

1519	11 Million
1540	6,427,466
1565	4,409,180
1597	2,500,000 ²³⁹

▪ ***French Saint Domingo***

The policy of keeping the weaker nations and the individuals under subjugation or slavery persisted in the successors of Rome for more than 1650 years after the reign of Alexander Severus mentioned earlier. Even the well acclaimed period of renaissance and enlightenment in the West failed to bring any change in the mental attitude of the Christian kings and people who never entertained the concept of equality in the human rights for all the descendants of Adam and Eve. They continued to follow the same policy of enslaving the free people or importing the slaves from abroad. Spain and France were more conspicuous among the nations who held the largest number of slaves. We learn that the western part of St. Domingo, formerly belonging to Spain, had been occupied by Buccaneers who ceded to France at the Peace of Ryswick in 1697. It has been recorded that:

So vast was the annual importation of enslaved negroes into this colony before 1791 that the ratio of the blacks to the whites was as 16 to 1. In that year there were in French St. Domingo 480,000 blacks, 24,000 mulattoes and only 30,000 whites.²⁴⁰

▪ ***Genocide in Americas up to 1957***

Some have argued that genocide occurred during the Portuguese colonization of the Americas, starting in 1549 by Pedro Álvares Cabral on the coast of what is now the country of Brazil. It has also been argued that genocide has occurred during the modern era with the ongoing destruction of the Jivaro, Yanomami and other tribes. Over 80 indigenous tribes disappeared between 1900 and 1957, and of a population of over one million during this period 80% had

²³⁹ *The New Cambridge Modern History*, ed. by G.R.Elton, 2nd Ed., (Cambridge: The University Press, 1958), footnote p. 583.

²⁴⁰ *Encyclopedia Britannica*, Vol. 20, William Benton Publisher, London, p. 781.

been killed through deculturalization, disease, or murder.²⁴¹

▪ **Brazil**

In the late 1950s until 1968, the state of Brazil submitted their indigenous peoples of Brazil to violent attempts to integrate, pacify and acculturate their communities. In 1967 public prosecutor Jader de Figueiredo Correia, submitted the Figueiredo Report to the dictatorship which was then ruling the country, the report which ran to seven thousand pages was not released until 2013. The report documents genocidal crimes against the indigenous peoples of Brazil, including mass murder, torture and bacteriological and chemical warfare, reported slavery, and sexual abuse. The rediscovered documents are being examined by the National Truth Commission who have been tasked with the investigations of human rights violations which occurred in the periods 1947 through to 1988. The report reveals that the IPS had enslaved indigenous people, tortured children and stolen land. The Truth Commission is of the opinion that entire tribes in Maranhão were completely eradicated and in Mato Grosso, an attack on thirty Cinturão Largo left only two survivors. The report also states that landowners and members of the IPS had entered isolated villages and deliberately introduced smallpox. Of the one hundred and thirty four people accused in the report the state has as yet not tried a single one, since the Amnesty Law passed in the end of the dictatorship does not allow trials for the abuses which happened in such period. The report also detailed instances of mass killings, rapes and torture, Figueiredo stated that the actions of the IPS had left the indigenous peoples near extinction. The state abolished the IPS following the release of the report. The Red Cross launched an investigation after further allegations of ethnic cleansing were made after the IPS had been replaced.²⁴²

Colonization of Australia

Most of Australian continent had been an uninhabited land up to the establishment of white colony there. It, therefore, became a dumping place of the criminals, the insurrectionists or the free-thinkers among the British after USA had closed its borders to accommodate such rubbish from Europe. It has been recorded that:

Australia was established as a penal colony in the late eighteenth century mainly so that England could transport an

²⁴¹ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Genocide of Indigenous Peoples'.

²⁴² Ibid.

irredeemable, unwanted excess population of felons to a place, originally charted by Captain Cook, that would also function as a colony replacing those lost in America. The pursuit of profit, the building of empire, and what Hughes calls social apartheid together produced modern Australia.²⁴³

▪ ***Genocide of the Indigenous Australians***

The term Indigenous Australians describes members of groups that existed in Australia and the surrounding islands prior to European colonization. Previously, they were known as 'Aborigines'.

The Encyclopedia Britannica defines 'Aborigines' as "The inhabitants found in a country at its first discovery". According to the Wikipedia, the population of Indigenous Australians at the time of permanent European settlement has been estimated between 318,000 and 1,000,000. For a long time, the British settlers in Australia did not acknowledge the indigenous people as human beings having any right to live. They were denied all privileges and rights as enjoyed by the settlers. They were ignored to such an extent that a smallpox epidemic in 1789 is estimated to have killed up to 90% of the Darug people. Some scholars have attributed the outbreak to European settlers while others disagree with such an assertion.

▪ ***Colonization of Australia and Tasmania***

Abel Tasman, a Dutch explorer from East Indies (Indonesia today) discovered Tasmania in 1642. Subsequently, a British, Captain Cook in 1770, claimed much of the eastern coast of Australia on behalf of King George III. It is stated that:

When Britain's American colonies won independence in 1776, Britain could no longer ship unwanted convicts to America. British jails became crammed beyond their capacity, and the British decided to send the convicts to Australia. The first

²⁴³ Edward Said, *Culture and Imperialism*, p. xv

Fleet, eleven ships with 730 convicts and their wardens, set sail from Portsmouth, England, on May 13, 1787, and landed at Sydney Cove, Australia, on January 21, 1788. They founded the penal colony of New South Wales, on behalf of the British Crown. New settlements were also established farther south along the coast and on Tasmania. Britain continued to send convicts to Australia until 1840.²⁴⁴

The British Empire has been accused of several genocides. The doctrine of terra nullius was used by the British to justify their seizure of territory in Australia and Tasmania. The death of the 3,000–15,000 Aboriginal Tasmanians has been called an act of genocide.²⁴⁵

The extinction of the Tasmanian Aborigines is regarded as a classic case of genocide by Lemkin, most comparative scholars of genocide, and many general historians, including Robert Hughes, Ward Churchill, Leo Kuper and Jared Diamond, who base their analysis on previously published histories. Between 1824 and 1908 White settlers and Native Mounted Police in Queensland, according to Raymond Evans, killed more than 10,000 Aborigines, who were regarded as vermin and sometimes even hunted for sport.²⁴⁶

Ben Kiernan, an Australian historian of genocide, treats the Australian evidence over the first century of colonization as an example of genocide in his 2007 history of the concept and practice, *Blood and soil: a world history of genocide and extermination from Sparta to Darfur*. The Australian practice of removing the children of Australian Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander descent from their families, has been described as genocidal. The 1997 report "Bringing them Home" concluded that the forced separation of Aboriginal children from their family constituted an act of genocide. In the 1990s a number of Australian state institutions, including the state of Queensland, apologized for its policies regarding forcible separation of aboriginal children. Another allegation against the Australian state is the use of medical services to Aboriginals to administer contraceptive therapy to aboriginal women without their knowledge or consent, including the use of Depo Provera, as well as tubal ligations. Both forced adoption and forced contraception would fall under the provisions of the UN genocide convention. Some Australian scholars, including historian Geoffrey Blainey, political scientist Ken Minogue and prominently professor Keith Windschuttle, reject the view that Australian aboriginal policy was genocidal.²⁴⁷

²⁴⁴ *Countries of the World, Australia*, Times Edition, p. 11.

²⁴⁵ Wikipedia, s.v. *Genocide of Indigenous Peoples*.

²⁴⁶ Ibid.

²⁴⁷ Ibid.

▪ ***Not Accepted as Citizens or Humans***

As a result of malnutrition, heavy death toll due to lack of medical care and proper nutrition by the government and also due to stealth of the children of the indigenous people, there had been a trend of ever decreasing population up to year 1900 when total indigenous people stood reduced to a mere 93000 persons as compared to their estimated population between 318000 and 1,000,000 at the time of the permanent European settlement in Australia. Even in 1933 they did not exceed 74000. The conscience of free people had perhaps risen thereafter to take notice of the miserable fate of indigenous people. Hence, they were granted rights as full citizens in 1960. The said reform brought a rapid increase in their population which was estimated at about 5,63,000 in 2010.

▪ ***The Stolen Generations***

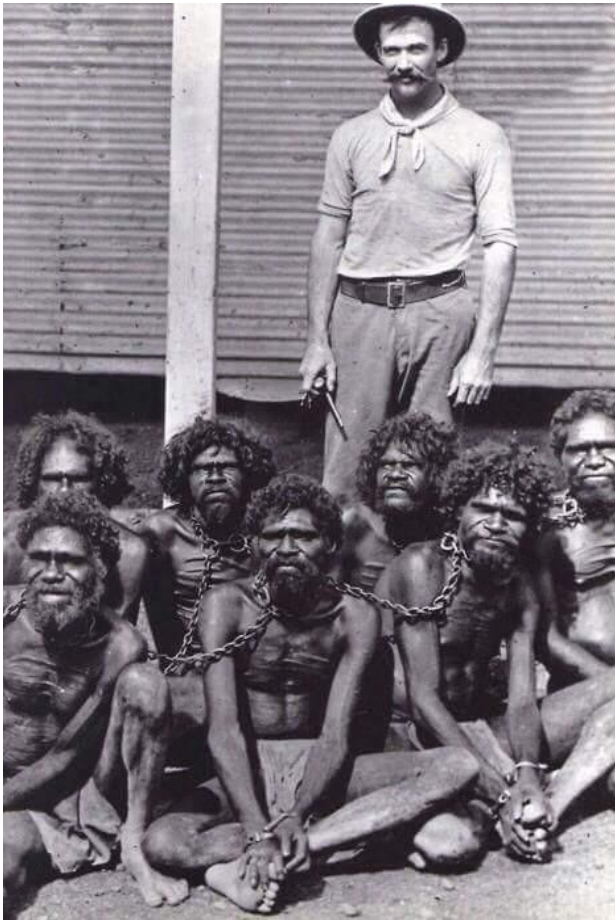
The Stolen Generations were those children of Australian Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander descent who were forcibly removed from their families by the Australian Federal and State government agencies and church missions, under acts of their respective parliaments. The removals occurred in the period between approximately 1871 and 1969, although, in some places, children were still being taken in the 1970s. On 13 February 2008, the federal government of Australia, led by Prime Minister Kevin Rudd, issued a formal apology to the Indigenous Australians over the Stolen Generations.²⁴⁸

Until 1967, official Australian population statistics excluded "full-blood aboriginal natives" in accordance with section 127 of the Australian Constitution, even though many such people were actually counted. The size of the excluded population was generally separately estimated. "Half-caste aboriginal natives" were shown separately up to the 1966 census, but since 1971 there has been no provision on the forms to differentiate 'full' from 'part' Indigenous or to identify non-Indigenous persons who are accepted by Indigenous communities but have no genetic descent.²⁴⁹

²⁴⁸ Wikipedia, s.v. *Indigenous Australians*.

²⁴⁹ Ibid.

Animals; Not Human: Australia, until 1960s, Aborigines came under the Flora And Fauna Act, classifying them as animals, not human beings.



▪ ***Will You Believe***

The miserable condition of the Aborigines can be assessed from the following:

In 1935, an Australian of part Indigenous descent left his home on a reserve to visit a nearby hotel where he was ejected for being Aboriginal. He returned home but was refused entry to the reserve because he was not Aboriginal. He attempted to remove his children from the reserve but was told he could not because they were Aboriginal. He then

walked to the next town where he was arrested for being an Aboriginal vagrant and sent to the reserve there. During World War II he tried to enlist but was rejected because he was an Aborigine so he moved to another state where he enlisted as a non-Aborigine. After the end of the war he applied for a passport but was rejected as he was an Aborigine, he obtained an exemption under the Aborigines Protection Act but was now told he could no longer visit his relatives as he was not an Aborigine. He was later told he could not join the Returned Servicemens Club because he was an Aborigine.²⁵⁰

The constitution of Australia, 1901 in its section 127 provided simply that "aboriginal natives shall not be counted" in reckoning the size of the population of the commonwealth or any part of it.

The Aboriginals were treated as 2nd class persons. They had no rights to buy land or to vote. They also could not buy Alcohol or build a house. Namatjira a celebrity as a painter and artist was the first to be granted full citizenship in 1957 ahead of the rest of his people. But when he bought alcohol and shared it with his friends and relatives, he was declared guilty of exceeding his rights and of breaking the law and in 1958, he was sent to jail. Although, he was released in 1959 yet he died soon afterwards. His death perhaps raised public consciousness about the aboriginal cause and in 1960s they were granted full citizenship rights.

▪ **Putumayo**

Roger Casement, an Irishman travelling the Putumayo region of Peru as a British consul during 1910-1911, documented the abuse, slavery, murder and use of stocks²⁵¹ for torture against the native Indians²⁵²

Russian Empire's Conquest of Siberia

Historian John F. Richards wrote: "... it is doubtful that the total early modern Siberian population exceeded 300,000 persons. ... New diseases weakened and demoralized the indigenous peoples of Siberia. The worst of these

²⁵⁰ Ibid.

²⁵¹ A farm animal or equipment.

²⁵² Wikipedia, s.v. *Genocide of Indigenous Peoples*.

was smallpox "because of its swift spread, the high death rates, and the permanent disfigurement of survivors." ... In the 1650s, it moved east of the Yenisey, where it carried away up to 80 percent of the Tungus and Yakut populations. In the 1690s, smallpox epidemics reduced Yukagir numbers by an estimated 44 percent. The disease moved rapidly from group to group across Siberia.²⁵³

Baltic States

Although racial genocide was banned under the Constitution of Soviet Union that says Citizens of the USSR of different races and nationalities have equal rights., on the Article 36, and on the article 64:It is the duty of every citizen of the USSR to respect the national dignity of other citizens, and to strengthen friendship of the nations and nationalities of the multinational Soviet state., about 600,000 Baltic people were deported in Siberian labor camp in an attempt Sovietization process.²⁵⁴

Contemporary Examples

The genocide of indigenous tribes is still an ongoing feature in the modern world, with the ongoing depopulation of the Jivaro, Yanomami and other tribes in Brazil having been described as genocide. The states actions in Bangladesh, against the Jumma have been described internationally as ethnic cleansing and genocide. Paraguay has also been accused of carrying out a genocide against the Achéwhose case was brought before the Inter-American Human Rights Commission. The commission gave a provisional ruling that genocide had not been committed by the state, but did express concern over "possible abuses by private persons in remote areas of the territory of Paraguay."²⁵⁵

Colombia

In the protracted conflict in Colombia, indigenous groups such as the Awá, Wayuu, Pijao and Paez people have become subjected to intense violence by right-wing paramilitaries, leftist guerrillas, and the Colombian army. Drug cartels, international resource extraction companies and the military have also used violence to force the indigenous groups out of their territories. The National Indigenous Organization of Colombia argues that the violence is genocidal in nature, but others question whether there is a "genocidal intent" as

²⁵³ Ibid.

²⁵⁴ Ibid.

²⁵⁵ Ibid.

required in international law.²⁵⁶

Guatemala

During the Guatemalan Civil War (1960 - 1996) the state forces carried out violent atrocities against the Maya. The government considered the Maya (...) An estimated 200,000 people, most of them Maya, disappeared during the Guatemalan Civil War. After the 1996 peace accords a legal process was begun to determine the legal responsibility of the atrocities, and to locate and identify the disappeared. In 2013 former president Efraín Ríos Montt was convicted of genocide and crimes against humanity, and was sentenced to 80 years imprisonment. Ten days later, the Constitutional Court of Guatemala overturned the conviction.²⁵⁷

Europe usually held such large number of convicts that jails remained crammed beyond their capacity. From 16th to the end of the 18th century, the European nations had been dumping the unwanted people or the criminal convicts into American continents. The traffic stopped after the declaration of independence by USA in 1776 AD. Australia, New Zealand and other far off colonies of UK continued to be utilized for the same purpose by the British up to 1840.

²⁵⁶ Ibid.²⁵⁷ Ibid.

Ch. 7 -

CULTURE AND ORIENTALISM

Culture

According to the Collier's Encyclopedia:

Culture, in its anthropological usage, is the man-made part of the human environment. A culture is the way of life of a specific group. Culture is a technical term in anthropology which is now widely employed in psychology, psychiatry, sociology, philosophy, economics, human biology, and other subjects dealing with man and his works.²⁵⁸

Basically, the idea of culture arises from the observation that what human beings do and what they refrain from doing is, in part, a consequence of being brought up in one group as opposed to another. People have a social heredity as well as a biological heredity. Members of the human species are trained in the family and in their education, formal and informal, to behave in ways that are conventional and fixed by tradition. Culture is learned rather than transmitted by genes, which pass on biological inheritance from the two parents.²⁵⁹

Culture is also a source of identity of a people or a society. Even the ethnic groups or nations in the world have their distinctive cultures as signs of differentiation from others. Edward W. Said, therefore, says that:

As I use the word, 'culture' means two things in particular. First of all it means all those practices, like the arts of description, communication, and representation, that have relative autonomy from the economic, social, and political realms and that often exist in aesthetic forms, one of whose principal aims is pleasure. Included, of course, are both the popular stock of lore about distant parts of the world and specialized knowledge available in such learned disciplines as ethnography, historiography, philology, sociology, and literary history. Since my exclusive focus here is on the modern Western empires of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, I have looked especially at cultural forms like the novel, which I believe were immensely important in the formation of imperial

²⁵⁸ *Collier's Encyclopedia*, ed. in chief Bernard Johnston, Vol. 7, (New York: Macmillan Educational Company, 1991), s.v. 'culture', p. 558.

²⁵⁹ *Collier's Encyclopedia*, Vol. 7, s.v. 'culture' p. 558.

attitudes, references, and experiences.²⁶⁰

Mr. Said further writes:

Second, and almost imperceptibly – culture is a concept that includes a refining and elevating element, each society's reservoir of the best that has been known and thought, as Matthew Arnold put it in the 1860. Arnold believed that culture palliates, if it does not altogether neutralize, the ravages of a modern, aggressive, mercantile, and brutalizing urban existence. You read Dante or Shakespeare in order to keep up with the best that was thought and known, and also to see yourself, your people, society, and tradition in their best lights. In time, culture comes to be associated, often aggressively, with the nation or the state; this differentiates "us" from "them," almost always with some degree of xenophobia. Culture in this sense is a source of identity, and a rather combative one at that, as we see in recent "returns" to culture and tradition. (...) In this second sense culture is a sort of theater where various political and ideological causes engage one another.²⁶¹

According to Edward Said, the writings of many scholars in the West were also focused on proving inferiority of the races in the East necessitating their subjugation by the superior and knowledgeable nations in the world. Commenting on their impact, Said says that:

They were widely accepted nations, and they helped fuel the imperial acquisition of territories in Africa throughout the nineteenth century. In thinking of Carlyle or Ruskin, or even of Dickens and Thackeray, critics have often, I believe, relegated these writers' ideas about colonial expansion, inferior races, or "niggers" to a very different department from that of culture, culture being the elevated area of activity in which they "truly" belong and in which they did their "really" important work.²⁶²

In view of the above, culture had been the first target of the conquerors or the imperialists so that the subjects could be assimilated as natural born slaves. The most conspicuous example in history to bring drastic change in culture of the defeated people had been set by Alexander the Great (r. 333-323 BC). We have already discussed in detail the efforts of Alexander and his

²⁶⁰ Edward W. Said, *Culture and Imperialism*, (New York: Vintage Books, 1994), s.v. Introduction, p. xii.

²⁶¹ Ibid, p. xiii.

²⁶² Ibid, s.v. Introduction, p. xiv.

followers such as Antiochus IV Epiphanes in the first volume of the book s.v. 'Persecution of the Jews'.

To the western mind the people of the Caribbean Islands, the Jamaicans, Ireland and 'the mysterious East', including the African, the Indian and the Far Eastern people like the Malaysians, the Vietnamese, Indonesians, Koreans, the Taiwanese and the Chinese were extremely uncivilized nations. They, therefore, had the strong conviction and "the notions about bringing civilization to primitive or barbaric peoples, the disturbingly familiar ideas about flogging or death or extended punishment being required when "they" misbehaved or became rebellious, because "they" mainly understood force or violence best "they" were not like "us," and for that reason deserved to be ruled."²⁶³

▪ ***Culture and Language***

The colonial discourses stressed both on the power and language to consolidate their possessions. Kenyan novelist Ngugi wa Thiong'o observes that:

Language carries culture and culture carries, particularly through orature and literature, the entire body of values by which we come to perceive ourselves and our place in the world. How people perceive themselves affects how they look at their culture, at their politics and at the social production of wealth, at their entire relationship to nature and to other human beings. Language is thus inseparable from ourselves as a community of human beings with specific form and character, a specific history, a specific relationship to the world.²⁶⁴

It has been further observed that:

The cultural values of the colonized peoples are deemed as lacking in value, or even as being 'uncivilised', from which they must be rescued. To be blunt, the British Empire did not rule by military and physical force alone. It endured by getting both colonising and colonised people to see their world and themselves in a particular way, internalizing the language of Empire as representing the natural, true order of life. Selvon's anecdote reveals just how far-reaching the invidious effects of

²⁶³ Ibid, s.v. Introduction, p. xi.

²⁶⁴ John McLeod, *Beginning Postcolonialism*, p. 18.

internalizing colonial assumptions about the 'inferiority' of certain peoples can be.²⁶⁵

▪ **A Man Among Other Men**

For laying a firm foundation, of imperialism, the colonizers needed to colonize the minds of the people so that they may respect and honor the white man. Referring to Fanon's experience, John McLeod writes:

In a narrative both inspiring and distressing, Fanon looked at the cost to the individual who lives in a world where due to the colour of his or her skin, he or she is rendered peculiar, an object of derision, an aberration. In the chapter 'The Fact of Blackness' he remembers how he felt when in France white strangers pointed out his blackness, his difference with derogatory phrases such as 'dirty nigger!' or 'look, a Negro!':

On that day, completely dislocated, unable to be abroad with the other, the white man, who unmercifully imprisoned me, I took myself far off from my own presence, far indeed, and made myself an object. What else could it be for me but an amputation, an excision, a haemorrhage that spattered my whole body with black blood? But I did not want this revision, this thematisation. All I wanted was to be a man among other men. I wanted to come lithe and young into a world that was ours and to help to build it together.²⁶⁶

He further writes about black men that:

They are never accepted on equal terms. 'The white world' writes Fanon, 'the only honourable one, barred me from all participation. A man was expected to behave like a man. I was expected to behave like a black man.'²⁶⁷

Mr. Edward Said also observed that the Western Imperial powers had been presenting degenerated pictures of the eastern religions as well as societies to justify their subjugation by them:

The knowledge that the Western imperial powers formed about their colonies helped continually to justify their subjugation. Western nations like France and Britain, he argued, spent an immense amount of time producing knowledge about the locations they dominated. Looking in particular at representations of Egypt and the Middle East in a

²⁶⁵ Ibid, p. 19.

²⁶⁶ John McLeod, *Beginning Postcolonialism*, (New York: Manchester University Press, 2000), p. 20.

²⁶⁷ Ibid, p. 21.

variety of written materials, (...) They recorded their observations based upon commonly-held assumptions about 'the Orient' as a mythic place of exoticism, moral laxity, sexual degeneracy and so forth. These observations (which were not really observations at all) were presented as scientific truths that, in their turn, functioned to justify the very propriety of colonial domination. Thus colonialism continuously perpetuated itself. Colonial power was buttressed by the production of knowledge about colonized cultures which endlessly produced a degenerate image of the Orient for those in the West, or Occident.²⁶⁸

▪ ***Decolonizing the Mind***

Both Fanon and Said agreed that:

Empires colonized imaginations. Fanon shows how this works at a psychological level for the oppressed, while Said demonstrates the legitimation of Empire for the oppressor. Overturning colonialism, then, is not just about handing land back to its dispossessed peoples, returning power to those who were once ruled by Empire. It is also a process of overturning the dominant ways of seeing the world, and representing reality in ways which do not replicate colonialist values. If colonialism involves colonizing the mind, then resistance to it requires, in Ngugi's phrase 'decolonising the mind'. This is very much an issue of language. (...) so freedom from colonialism comes not just from the signing of declarations of independence and the lowering and raising of flags. There must also be a change in the minds, a challenge to those from both the colonized and colonizing nations. People from all parts of the Empire need to refuse the dominant languages of power that have divided them into master and slave, the ruler and the ruled, if progressive and lasting change is to be achieved. As Fanon wrote, '[a] man who has a language consequently possesses the world expressed and implied by that language' (Black Skin, White Masks, p. 18). The ability to read and write otherwise, to rethink our understanding of the order to challenge the colonial order of things, contributes to the possibility of change.²⁶⁹

Said also claimed that the West produced knowledge about other peoples in order to prove their inferiority:

Colonialism was certainly dependant upon the use of force and

²⁶⁸ Ibid, p. 21-22.

²⁶⁹ Ibid, p. 22-23.

physical coercion but it would not occur without the existence of a set of beliefs that are held to justify the possession and continuing occupation of other people's lands.²⁷⁰

▪ ***Greater Powers Have Greater Rights***

All dominant powers in the past had the certitude that they were destined to rule and lead the world forever. The divine planning, however, has been assigning a predetermined time of primacy to different nations in the world. Even during the transitional period, the rulers of various empires had been trying to convert their subjects to accord to their own policy and trying to safeguard their interest for exceptionally long periods. Referring to the Iraq and Middle East Wars, Mr. Said observes that:

Two central ideas clearly were held over from the past and still hold sway: one was the great power's right to safeguard its distant interests even to the point of military invasion; the second was that lesser powers were also lesser peoples, with lesser rights, morals, claims.²⁷¹

▪ ***Western Masters to Judge What is Good or Bad***

All the powerful nations had a clear-cut conception of good or bad. Normally those who served the interests of the rulers were declared good people while those not bowing before the will of the masters were declared as mutineers or criminals to be eliminated from the face of earth. The policy can be understood from the following:

Conrad's novel embodies the same paternalistic arrogance of imperialism that it mocks in characters like Gould and Holroyd. Conrad seems to be saying, "We Westerners will decide who is a good native or a bad, because all natives have sufficient existence by virtue of our recognition. We created them, we taught them to speak and think, and when they rebel they simply confirm our views of them as silly children, duped by some of their Western masters."²⁷²

²⁷⁰ Ibid, p. 37.

²⁷¹ Edward W. Said, *Culture and Imperialism*, 36.

²⁷² Ibid, s.v. Introduction, p. xviii.

▪ ***US to Protect its Interests All Over the Globe***

Even a cursory glance at the human history reveals that the historical ambitions of the empires had always been the same. They inherited each other's experience. The Western study of the Oriental history and culture had, therefore, been subject to political needs and pressures of the circumstances. All orientalists had been bent upon justification of colonization to confirm better rights of the colonizers by proving their superiority over the indigenous people.

What Conrad discerned as the futility latent in imperialist philanthropy-whose intentions include such ideas as "making the world safe for democracy" – the United States government is still unable to perceive, as it tries to implement its wishes all over the globe, especially in the Middle East. At least Conrad had the integrity to disclose that no such schemes ever succeed because they trap the planners in more illusions of omnipotence and misleading self-satisfaction (as in Vietnam), and because by their very nature they falsify the evidence.²⁷³

▪ ***Hierarchy of Races***

In 1910 the French advocate of colonialism Jules Harmand said: It is necessary, then, to accept as a principle and point of departure the fact that there is a hierarchy of races and civilizations, and that we belong to the superior race and civilization, still recognizing that, while superiority confers rights, it imposes strict obligations in return. The basic legitimation of conquest over native peoples is the conviction of our superiority, not merely our mechanical, economic, and military superiority, but our moral superiority. Our dignity rests on that quality, and it underlies our right to direct the rest of humanity. Material power is nothing but a means to that end.²⁷⁴

In spite of all such boastful claims of moral superiority, the European history has no record of their moral superiority over other nations. One hardly finds any concept of morality among them before 1000 AD. It was merely on the basis of the weapons of mass destruction,

²⁷³ Ibid, s.v. Introduction, p. xviii-xix.

²⁷⁴ Ibid, 17.

lead in invention of machines which could produce goods more efficiently than by employing human hands and advancement in naval warfare which helped them explore and conquer more and more lands that granted superiority to the western nations with effect from 1500 AD. As for their ancient history, only the Greeks had been leading the world in philosophy, medicine and mathematics from about 600 BC to about 200 BC. Subsequently, the Romans took lead over them on the basis of their military might and subjugated many lands around the Mediterranean Sea. The Greeks hardly had any moral ethics nor could they boast for their superiority in learning.

As regards other nations in the West, they were living in the dark ages and the world hardly knew anything about their existence. Their transition from dark ages towards renaissance took place with the crusades and boosted by the conquest of Muslim centers of learning in Andalusia such as Toledo, Cordova, Valencia, Barcelona and last of all Granada in 1492. It was after this period that the western nations started taking lead over rest of the nations in the world and colonized almost all parts of the world. The history of their culture, morality and learning before that is just a farce. From 1525 AD to the present, however, the western nations had great achievements in knowledge and exploration of the World. Even during this period, the morality of the European conquerors could be appreciated only as regards the interests of their respective nations. In all other matters and personal characters, they had no moral values at all. The treatment of the colonizers with the nations conquered by them and especially with the Negro slaves from Africa and the indigenous population of the American as well as Australian continents was extremely inhuman. For details, the readers may kindly go through our chapters 4, 5, 6, 10, 11 and 12 of this Volume. From 1835 AD, there had been many proclamations to abolish slavery in different European countries. Most famous among them were US Emancipation Proclamation 1863-5, Universal Declaration of Human Rights by UNO 1948 and Vienna Conference on Human Rights 1993. In spite of all this,

there had hardly been any difference in the position of the Negroes and other colored people in the Western Hemisphere, Australia and many of the south Asian colonies. A white man remains white in all respects while a black person has to live in the black environments throughout his life.

▪ ***Contrast between the White and the Black***

Whiteness, Fanon asserts, has become a symbol of purity, of Justice, Truth, Virginity. It defines what it means to be civilized, modern and human. That is why the Negro knows nothing of the cost of freedom; when he has fought for liberty and Justice ... these were always white liberty and white justice; that is, values secreted by his masters. Blackness represents the diametrical opposite: in the collective unconsciousness, it stands for ugliness, sin, darkness, immorality.²⁷⁵

Fanon stresses on universal human values based on the notions of dignity, equality and equity on a concrete and ever new understanding of man. He, therefore, criticizes Western Nations who not only denigrate the Negroes but also take them as symbols of sin. He observes:

So the first thing that the black man wants is to say no. No to degradation of man. No to exploitation of man. No to the butchery of what is most human in man: freedom. And, above all no to those who attempt to build a definition of him.²⁷⁶

Referring to the conditions of the indigenous people and the blacks in Martinique in the Lesser Antilles, Fanon records the following:

My mother wanting a son to keep in mind
if you do not know your history lesson
you will not go to mass on Sunday in
your Sunday clothes
that child will be a disgrace to the family
that child will be our curse
shut up I told you, you must speak French
the French of France
the Frenchman's French

²⁷⁵ Frantz Fanon: *Black Skin White Masks* (London: Pluto Press, United Kingdom, 2008), p. xiii.

²⁷⁶ Ibid, p. xiv.

French French.²⁷⁷

Here is an interesting footnote highlighting the fate of the blacks in the colonies:

Since he is the master and more simply the male, the white man can allow himself the luxury of sleeping with many women. This is true in every country and especially in colonies. But when a white woman accepts a black man there is automatically a romantic aspect. It is a giving, not a seizing. In the colonies, in fact, even though there is little marriage or actual sustained cohabitation between whites and blacks, the number of hybrids is amazing. This is because the white men often sleep with their black servants. None the less, that does not provide any foundation for this passage from Mannoni:

"Thus one part of our drives would quite naturally impel us toward the most alien types. That is no mere literary illusion; there was no question of literature, and the illusion was probably very slight when Galliéni's soldiers chose young ramatoa²⁷⁸ as their more or less temporary wives. In fact these first contacts presented no difficulties at all. This was in part due to the healthy sex life of the Malagasies, which was unmarred by complexes. But this only goes to show that racial conflicts develop gradually and do not arise spontaneously. (Prospero and Caliban, p. 112).

Let us not exaggerate. When a soldier of the conquering army went to bed with a young Malagasy girl, there was undoubtedly no tendency on his part to respect her entity as another person. The racial conflicts did not come later, they coexisted. The fact that Algerian colonists go to bed with their fourteen-year-old housemaids in no way demonstrates a lack of racial conflicts in Algeria. No, the problem is more complicated. And Mayotte Capécia is right: It is an honor to be the daughter of a white woman. That proves that one was not "made in the bushes." (This expression is applied exclusively to all the illegitimate children of the upper class in Martinique; they are known to be extremely numerous: Aubery, for example, is supposed to have fathered almost fifty.)²⁷⁹

As regards the Negroes, Fanon observes that:

We know historically that the Negro guilty of lying with a white woman is castrated. The Negro who has had a white woman makes himself taboo to his fellows.²⁸⁰

Here is another observation from Fanon:

²⁷⁷ Ibid, p. 10.

²⁷⁸ Madam or Mrs. in Malagasy, the Austronesian Language of Madagascar.

²⁷⁹ Frantz Fanon: *Black Skin White Masks*, p. 32.

²⁸⁰ Ibid, p. 52.

In America, Negroes are segregated. In South America, Negroes are whipped in the streets, and Negro strikers are cut down by machine-guns. In West Africa, the Negro is an animal.²⁸¹

Mr. Fanon quotes the following from 'Color Prejudice' by Sir Alen Burns

It [colour prejudice] is nothing more than the unreasoning hatred of one race for another, the contempt of the stronger and richer peoples for those whom they consider inferior to themselves, and the bitter resentment of those who are kept in subjection and are so frequently insulted. As colour is the most obvious outward manifestation of race it has been made the criterion by which men are judged,²⁸² irrespective of their social or educational attainments. The light-skinned races have come to despise all those of a darker colour, and the dark-skinned peoples will no longer accept without protest the inferior position to which they have been relegated.²⁸³

Referring to the abducted people of black Africa, Mr. Fanon quotes that:

What sort of men were these, then, who had been torn away from their families, their countries, their religions, with a savagery unparalleled in history?

Gentle men, polite, considerate, unquestionably superior to those who tortured them — that collection of adventurers who slashed and violated and spat on Africa to make the stripping of her the easier.

The men they took away knew how to build houses, govern empires, erect cities, cultivate fields, mine for metals, weave cotton, forge steel.

Their religion had its own beauty, based on mystical connections with the founder of the city. Their customs were pleasing, built on unity, kindness, respect for age.

²⁸¹ Ibid, p. 85.

²⁸² Here lies the greatest difference of human values based on color till today.

The Holy Prophet (pbAh) had emphatically declared in 632 Ad that:

"All mankind is from Adam and Eve, an Arab has no superiority over a non-Arab nor a non-Arab has any superiority over an Arab; also a white has no superiority over a black nor a black has any superiority over a white - except by piety and good action." (Hadith, *Sahih Bukhari*, Vol. 7, Ch. 3)

Here is another Hadith of the Holy Prophet (pbAh):

"The Prophet Muhammad (peace be upon him) said to an (Arab) companion: "You are not better than people (of other races) unless you excel them in piety". (*Jame Al-Tirmidhi*, Hadith No. 1361)

This shows that European nations are lagging behind Islam by about 1400 years as regards human rights and universal brotherhood of man on earth.

²⁸³ Frantz Fanon: *Black Skin White Masks*, p. 89.

No coercion, only mutual assistance, the joy of living, a free acceptance of discipline. Order—Earnestness—Poetry and Freedom.²⁸⁴

The colonizers have been denigrating their captives from Africa as people having black consciousness. Fanon, however, quotes some more verses explaining the feelings of the people abducted from Africa:

Africa I have kept your memory Africa
 you are inside me
 Like the splinter in the wound
 like a guardian fetish in the center of the village
 make me the stone in your sling
 make my mouth the lips of your wound
 make my knees the broken pillars of your abasement
 AND YET
 I want to be of your race alone
 workers peasants of all lands . . .
 . . . white worker in Detroit black peon in Alabama
 uncountable nation in capitalist slavery
 destiny ranges us shoulder to shoulder
 repudiating the ancient maledictions of blood taboos
 we roll away the ruins of our solitudes (...) ²⁸⁵

From another poem, he quotes the white reasoning justifying cruelties perpetrated against the Negroes:

The white man killed my father
 Because my father was proud
 The white man raped my mother
 Because my mother was beautiful
 The white man wore out my brother in the hot sun of the roads
 Because my brother was strong
 Then the white man came to me
 His hands red with blood
 Spat his contempt into my black face
 Out of his tyrant's voice:
 "Hey boy, a basin, a towel, water." ²⁸⁶

▪ ***I Am A Negro***

Here is another depiction of the wretchedness of a Negro:

And there was my poor brother—living out his neurosis to the

²⁸⁴ Ibid, p. 99-100.

²⁸⁵ Ibid, p. 103-104..

²⁸⁶ Ibid, p. 104.

extreme and finding himself paralyzed:

THE NEGRO: I can't, ma'am.

LIZZIE: Why not?

THE NEGRO: I can't shoot white folks.

LIZZIE: Really! That would bother them, wouldn't it?

THE NEGRO: They're white folks, ma'am.

LIZZIE: So what? Maybe they got a right to bleed you like a pig just because they're white?

THE NEGRO: But they're white folks.

A feeling of inferiority? No, a feeling of nonexistence. Sin is Negro as virtue is white. All those white men in a group, guns in their hands, cannot be wrong. I am guilty. I do not know of what, but I know that I am no good.²⁸⁷

Referring to a Spanish play by André de Claramunte, *El valiente negro de Flandres*, Mr. Fanon quotes that:

Only the color of his skin there lacked
That he should be a man of gentle blood.
And the Negro, Juan de Mérida, says this:
What a disgrace it is to be black
in this world!
Are black men not
men?
Does that endow them with a baser soul,
a duller, an uglier?
And for that they have earned scornful names.
I rise burdened with the shame of my color
And I let the world know my courage . . .
Is it so vile to be black?²⁸⁸

Fanon continues to say:

It is not because the Indo-Chinese has discovered a culture of his own that he is in revolt. It is because "quite simply" it was, in more than one way, becoming impossible for him to breathe. When one remembers the stories with which, in 1938, old regular sergeants described the land of piastres and rickshaws, of cut-rate boys and women, one understands only too well the rage with which the men of the Viet-Minh go into battle. An acquaintance with whom I served during the Second World War recently returned from Indo-China. He has enlightened me on many things. For instance, the serenity with which young Vietnamese of sixteen or seventeen faced firing squads. "On one occasion," he told me, "we had to shoot from a kneeling position: The soldiers' hands were shaking in

²⁸⁷ Ibid, p. 106.

²⁸⁸ Ibid, p. 166.

the presence of those young ‘fanatics.’” Summing up, he added: “The war that you and I were in was only a game compared to what is going on out there.” Seen from Europe, these things are beyond understanding. There are those who talk of a so-called Asiatic attitude toward death. But these basement philosophers cannot convince anyone. This Asiatic serenity, not so long ago, was a quality to be seen in the “bandits” of Vercors and the “terrorists” of the Resistance. The Vietnamese who die before the firing squads are not hoping that their sacrifice will bring about the reappearance of a past. It is for the sake of the present and of the future that they are willing to die.²⁸⁹

The black man wants to be like the white man. For the black man there is only one destiny. And it is white. Long ago the black man admitted the unarguable superiority of the white man, and all his efforts are aimed at achieving a white existence.²⁹⁰

I find myself suddenly in a world in which things do evil; a world in which I am summoned into battle; a world in which it is always a question of annihilation or triumph.²⁹¹

Moral anguish in the face of the massiveness of the Past? I am a Negro, and tons of chains, storms of blows, rivers of expectoration flow down my shoulders. I am not the slave of the Slavery that dehumanized my ancestors.²⁹²

The disaster of the man of color lies in the fact that he was enslaved. The disaster and the inhumanity of the white man lie in the fact that somewhere he has killed man.²⁹³

Fanon has gone into detailed discussion to describe the miseries and wretchedness of the black men. According to him black represents ugliness, sin, darkness and immorality. Black man is not a man who could aspire for Justice, freedom and liberty. He has no white world of his own nor confronts any white ethics. Negro is viewed as a penis symbol and a member of the cursed race. White men are predestined to be masters of the world while the western civilization must dominate the world forever.

²⁸⁹ Ibid, p. 176-177.

²⁹⁰ Ibid, p. 178.

²⁹¹ Ibid, p. 178.

²⁹² Ibid, p. 179.

²⁹³ Ibid, p. 180.

▪ **Identity Crisis**

During the post colonial time, the Eastern People emigrated to the Western Christian nations of Europe and USA had been the worst sufferers from identity crisis. Even living there for 50 to 60 years, they were not accepted as equals with other people in the land. They remain in-betweens i.e. neither the fully eastern inferiors nor the Western masters. (see pgs 212-15 of John McLeod, *Beginning Postcolonialism*). There is another reference about the same in Ch. 6, *Genocide of Indigenous People*, s.v. 'Will You Believe'.

Orientalism

▪ **Oriental Studies**

Oriental studies had actually started during the 13th century AD. Primarily, such studies had religious origins. First time it was during the 11th century that the priests and missionaries tried to represent Islam in most fearsome manner. There are numerous books denigrating Islam and criticizing the Qur'ān severely. One of such references can be found on pages 62-67 of *Orientalism* by Edward Said. After referring to Erchembert, a cleric in Monte Casino in the 11th century, Edward Said observes that:

Not for nothing did Islam come to symbolize terror, devastation, the demonic, hordes of hated barbarians. For Europe, Islam was a lasting trauma. Until the end of the seventeenth century the "Otto-man peril" lurked alongside Europe to represent for the whole of Christian civilization a constant danger, and in time European civilization incorporated that peril and its lore, its great events, figures, virtues, and vices, as something woven into the fabric of life.²⁹⁴

Besides the increasing interests of the crusaders in the east, the western Christendom also discovered that they could derive great benefit from the Arabic translations of the Greek literature and other books on medicine,

²⁹⁴ Edward Said, *Orientalism*, (London: Penguin Books, 2003), p. 59-60.

surgery, philosophy, astronomy, mathematics and various other sciences including up to date developments made by the Arab scholars which became the bases of the modern sciences in the West. The Western nations and especially France had a large number of people who could read, write and translate Arabic sciences and philosophy into Latin and other languages of the West. The efforts to translate Arabic works of medicine, philosophy and science etc. also called the *studia linguarum* originating from middle ages led to the renaissance of the 12th century when figures like Constantine de African translated 37 books mostly on medical texts from Arabic to Latin. The earliest translation of Qur'ān into Latin was also completed in 1143 although little use of the translation was made until it was printed in 1543. In about the 16th century several chairs were established in Oxford, Paris and other universities to promote studies of Hebrew and Arabic in the West.

It was not until 18th century when the western colonial domination in Asia became more pronounced and obvious. From that time, they felt themselves compelled to conduct extensive studies about the near eastern and far eastern societies and cultures, languages, peoples, history and archeology to know more and more about the people and the lands they had dominated or were planning to subjugate. Such studies made by most of the western scholars and missionaries did not aim at merely knowing the true history and culture of the eastern lands. Many of the paid professional scholars were bound to promote imperial interests to assert superiority of the West and to propagate inferiority of the cultures, the languages, the traditions and history of the people subjugated by them. They, therefore, did their best to show that the ignorant, uncivilized and unintelligent people in Asia needed to be civilized and educated by the superior nations in the west. So much so that the orientalist started asserting that they (eastern people) cannot represent themselves hence they must be represented by the orientalist. This, therefore, was the contrived justification from

prolongation of the foreign rule over the backward nations in the East.

In his preface to *Orientalism*, Edward Said observes that:

So from the very same directorate of paid professional scholars enlisted by the Dutch conquerors of Malaysia and Indonesia, the British armies of India, Mesopotamia, Egypt, West Africa, the French armies of Indochina and North Africa, came the American advisers to the Pentagon and the White House, using the same clichés, the same demeaning stereotypes, the same justifications for power and violence (after all, runs the chorus, power is the only language they understand) in this case as in the earlier ones. These people have now been joined in Iraq by a whole army of private contractors and eager entrepreneurs to whom shall be confided every thing, from the writing of textbooks and the constitution to the refashioning of Iraqi political life and its oil industry. Every single empire, in its official discourse, has said that it is not like all the others, that its circumstances are special, that it has a mission to enlighten, civilise, bring order and democracy, and that it uses force only as a last resort. And, sadder still, there always is a chorus of willing intellectuals to say calming words about benign or altruistic empires, as if one shouldn't trust the evidence of one's eyes watching the destruction and the misery and death brought by the latest mission civilizatrice.²⁹⁵

The imperialist powers of the past and even the supreme powers of the present (USA) believe that they are free to do whatever they like. As regards history, it has no reality for them.

The worst aspect of this essentializing stuff is that human suffering in all its density and pain is spirited away. Memory and with it the historical past are effaced as in the common, dismissively contemptuous American phrase, "you're history."²⁹⁶

The British had occupied Egypt in 1882. Long after the occupation, Mr. Balfour was speaking to defend occupation of Egypt and other countries. Here is an excerpt from a speech:

Is it a good thing for these great nations—I admit their

²⁹⁵ Ibid, p. xv-xvi.

²⁹⁶ Ibid,, p. xvi.

greatness—that this absolute government should be exercised by us? I think it is a good thing. I think that experience shows that they have got under it far better government than in the whole history of the world they ever had before, and which not only is a benefit to them, but is undoubtedly a benefit to the whole of the civilised West We are in Egypt not merely for the sake of the Egyptians though we are there for their sake; we are there also for the sake of Europe at large.²⁹⁷

Referring to orientalists thinking of Mr. Balfour, Edward Said writes that:

Balfour's logic here is interesting, not least for being completely consistent with the premises of his entire speech. England knows Egypt; Egypt is what England knows; occupying Egypt; for the Egyptians, Egypt is what England has occupied and now governs; foreign occupation therefore becomes "the very basis" of contemporary Egyptian civilization; Egypt requires, indeed insists upon, British occupation.²⁹⁸

Such justifications also provided a good cover to the western rulers to exploit all the natural resources, works of art and wealth, whether in the form of gold, gems, jewels, antiques, books or other valuables found in the fabulously rich East. Looting, pillaging and destruction of Iraq's libraries and museums in the start of the present century is a conspicuous example of the same.

As regards their studies of the East, they were mere critical and prejudiced representations of the Orient to prove the advantages of cultural imperialism of the West against the culturally static and intellectually undeveloped people of the East. Western domination, therefore, attributed to the awakening of the orient under the impact of the western ideas. To their own people, they provided fascinating images of the people, the lands and the resources to be exploited by the Western adventurers. It has been observed that:

In *Empire: A Very Short Introduction* (2000), Stephen Howe agreed with Said that Western nations and their empires were created by the exploitation of underdeveloped countries, by the extraction of wealth and labour from one country to another country.²⁹⁹

²⁹⁷ Ibid, p. 33.

²⁹⁸ Ibid, p. 34.

²⁹⁹ *Wikipedia*, s.v. 'Orientalism'.

John McLeod has rightly observed that:

Orientalism is a study of how the western colonial powers of Britain and France represented North African and Middle Eastern lands in the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries,"

(...) Orientalism' refers to the sum of the West's representations of the Orient. In the book's later chapters, Said looks at how Orientalism still survives today in Western media reports of Eastern, especially Arab, lands, despite formal decolonization for many countries. This reinforces the point made previously that the machinery of colonialism does not simply disappear as soon as the colonies become independent. Indeed, Said shows how the modes of representation common to colonialism have continued after decolonization and are still very much a part of the contemporary world.³⁰⁰

Fundamental to the view of the world asserted by Orientalism is the binary division it makes between the Orient and the Occident (the West). Each is assumed to exist in opposition to the other: the Orient is conceived as being everything that the West is not, its 'alter ego'. However, this is not an opposition of equal partners. The Orient is frequently described in a series of Negative terms that serve to buttress a sense of the West's superiority and strength. If the West is assumed as the seat of knowledge and learning, then it will follow that the Orient is the place of ignorance and naiveté. Thus in Orientalism, East and West are positioned through the construction of an unequal dichotomy. The West occupies a superior rank while the Orient is its 'other', in a subservient position. This makes the relations between them asymmetrical.³⁰¹

Orientalism is a Western fantasy. It is important to grasp Said's argument that Western views of the Orient are not based on what is observed to exist in Oriental lands, but often result from the West's dreams, fantasies and assumptions about what this radically different, contrasting place contains. Orientalism is first and foremost a fabricated construct, a series of images that come to stand as the Orient's 'reality' for those in the West. This contrived 'reality' in no way reflects what may or may not actually be there in the Orient itself; it does not exist outside of the representations made about it by Westerners.³⁰²

³⁰⁰ John McLeod, *Beginning Postcolonialism*, p. 38.

³⁰¹ Ibid, p. 40-41.

³⁰² Ibid, p. 41.

It transpires from the above that the Orientalist representation of Islam is a contrived reality imagined and represented by the westerners. The primary aim of such writers had always been to target Islam as an inferior religion as compared to Christianity. Superiority of the Christianity and the West had to be asserted to justify possession and occupation of other people's lands.

The Christian missionaries had been accusing Islam for its propagation through the sword but they have no historical facts to prove their allegation. The readers may go through the articles Native American Civil Rights, God, Gold and Glory and Indian Termination Policy in Wikipedia to know the Christian attempts to terminate the original religions of the Indians in the American continents. After going through the Articles, we hope they will find no force in their allegation that Islam was propagated by the sword.

It, however, must be remembered that up to 300 years since the death of Jesus only about 10% of the Roman subjects had converted to Christianity. A substantial change came after the pro-Christianity efforts of Constantine I. In about 380 AD, Emperor Theodosius I issued the Edict of Thessalonica making Christianity the state religion of Rome. Many of his descendants took extreme coercive measures to convert people to Christianity which is on record. Christianity received another great push since colonization of almost all the world by the Christian West. This was the time when Christianity was spread throughout the world by invaders armed with the rifles and Bibles. Consequently, the Negroes of Africa, the Indians in the North as well as the South America and people in various other colonized regions were forced to convert into Christianity by the Christian powers. The missionaries and the orientalist had been serving as a smoke-screen to cover all illegitimate acts of the colonizers by providing justifications for the same. John McLeod, therefore, writes that:

Orientalism is legitimating. All these points underline the important detail that Orientalism is a far-reaching system of

representations bound to a structure of political domination. Orientalist representations function to justify the propriety of Western colonial rule of Eastern lands. They are an important part of the arsenal of Empire. They legitimate the domination of other peoples and lubricate the political and judicial structures which maintain colonial rule through physical coercion.³⁰³

Orientalism makes assumptions about gender: Similarly, popular gendered stereotypes circulated, such as the effeminate Oriental male or the sexually promiscuous exotic Oriental female. The Oriental male was frequently deemed insufficiently 'manly' and displayed a luxuriousness and foppishness that made him appear a grotesque parody of the (itself stereotyped) 'gentler' female sex. The exoticised Oriental female, often depicted nude or partially-clothed in hundreds of Western works of art during the colonial period, was presented as an immodest, active creature of sexual pleasure who held the key to a myriad of mysterious erotic delights. In both examples, the Oriental is deemed as failing to live up to received gender codes.³⁰⁴

▪ ***Dominance Confers Masculinity***

In Orientalism, the East as a whole is 'feminised', deemed passive, submissive, exotic, luxurious, sexually mysterious and tempting; while the West becomes 'masculine' – that is, active, dominant heroic, rational, self-controlled and ascetic. This trope makes way for a specifically sexual vocabulary available to those from the West when describing their encounters: the Orient is 'penetrated' by the traveler whose 'passions' it rouses, it is 'possessed', 'ravished', 'embraced' ... and ultimately 'domesticated' by the muscular colonizer.³⁰⁵

These fantasies did much to stimulate the domination of the Orient, but also its continuing fascination for many in the West. It seemed deliciously to offer Western men the opportunity to sample an untrammelled life free from the prohibitions of society back home. Travellers to the Orient might think they were going to place where moral codes of behaviour did not function, and where they could indulge in forms of sexual excess. The fantasy of the Orient as the desirable repository of all that is constrained by Western civilization acted as a continual stimulus for those that studied it or traveled through it. So, as we noted previously, in writing

³⁰³ Ibid, p. 43.

³⁰⁴ Ibid, p. 45.

³⁰⁵ Ibid, p. 45.

'about' the Orient, they were actually writing about themselves, putting on the page their own desires, fantasies and fears.³⁰⁶

▪ ***Weakness and Vileness as Twin Sisters***

The western conquerors believe that:

The Oriental is degenerate. Compositely, Oriental stereotypes fixed typical weaknesses as (amongst others) cowardliness, laziness, untrustworthiness, fickleness, laxity, violence and lust. Oriental peoples were often considered as possessing a tenuous moral sense and the readiness to indulge themselves in the more dubious aspects of human behaviour. In other words, Orientalism posited the notion that Oriental peoples needed to be civilized and made to conform to the perceived higher moral standards upheld in the West. So, once again, in creating these stereotypes, Orientalism justified the propriety of colonialism by claiming that Oriental peoples needed saving from themselves.³⁰⁷

▪ ***Conclusion***

There are scores of books describing Orientalism in great detail. We shall, therefore, be providing a list of some of such books for further studies of the scholars. Presently, we intend to inform the readers that Orientalism has taken hundreds of new forms. In addition to the western missionaries and scholars, the western Christendom has acquired services of many people with Muslim names and origins. Such people with the Muslim background have studied not only Qur'ān and Sunnah for a particular purpose but they also are being paid for finding loopholes in Islam and to provide a perverted picture of its teachings. Due to their Muslims names, most of readers read their books with an open mind without knowing their true background and intention behind such writings. Some of the famous figures among them are Salman Rushdi, Tasleema Nasreen, Ibn Warraq, Ayan Hirsi Ali, Maryam Namazi, Magdi Allam, Ali Sina and others. There are many other professional scholars serving the same purpose under the cover of Islamic names and origins. Readers must, therefore, apply care and caution while studying the books of such

³⁰⁶ Ibid, p. 46.

³⁰⁷ Ibid, p. 46.

hypocrites/missionaries hiding their true identity by adopting Muslim names.

Muslim research scholars today have the responsibility to present Islam in its true colors and also to remove all distortions in the history made by the orientalists. They must consult the original sources to restore the truth and critically examine the observation made by the missionary writers of the West. Without this, we will not be able to decolonize our minds nor to provide true history and faith to our future generations. The habit of translating the history, the customs and the faith from the books of the orientalists must be discarded immediately and each nation needs to restore its history, culture, religion and characteristics as per the original sources available to them. In case, no efforts are made to restore the truth, we will have to depend on English, French, German, Spanish, Italian and other western sources which highlight their own history, art, culture, language and heroes as the most superior examples for the world to follow. Since the colonizers and the conquerors had presented history and culture of the nations subjugated by them by denigrating them as subhumans and uncivilized people to justify their own rule to educate and civilized them, therefore, the inferiority complex infused in these nations must be removed as soon as possible. This can't be done just by translating the books written by the orientalists and other western scholars. It is the duty of the decolonized nations to decolonize their history, culture, civilization and the mind so that they may gain confidence to achieve marvelous success in each and every field of life. Only the self confidence and dependence upon their own sources can open the way for them to restore their glorious past. No nation has ever achieved success without utmost devotion and hard work by its people. As such, if any of the nations starts making earnest efforts to improve its fate, it can far exceed the nations that have been ruling them for hundreds of years.

Ch. 8 -

AMERICAN IMPERIALISM

Imperialism

Most of the people do not know the history and the connotation of imperialism. They cannot differentiate between an empire and the imperialism. We may, therefore, consult Collier's Encyclopedia for a better understanding of the concept:

[Imperialism implies] the extension of the power and influence of a nation or state over other nations, territories, or groups of people. In accordance with this broad definition it follows that there are degrees of imperialistic control. Some writers would restrict imperialism to territorial control, to what is generally known as the acquisition of colonies, or to the complete political domination of lesser satellite states. Such control usually involves modification of the governmental structure of the controlled state or territory and its alignment more or less with the political organization of the dominant imperialist power.³⁰⁸

The Britannica, however, defines imperialism in the following manner:

Imperialism is the policy of a state aiming at establishing control beyond its border over people unwilling to accept such control. Because of this unwillingness imperialist policy always involves the use of power against its victims. It has therefore often been considered morally reprehensible, and the term has been employed in international propaganda to discredit an opponent's policy.³⁰⁹

▪ ***The Continuity of Imperialism***

The process of decolonization had started with the end of the World War II while USA had been a strong advocate of decolonization throughout the world. USA took a leading share to rehabilitate the war-torn countries on the one hand and to improve industries as

³⁰⁸ Collier's Encyclopedia, Vol. 12, s.v. 'Imperialism', p. 558.

³⁰⁹ Encyclopedia Britannica, Vol. 12, s.v. 'Imperialism', p. 4.

well as economies of Europe and the former colonies through generous aid to such nations. The underdeveloped nations started aspiring for ever-increasing independence and development of their natural resources and the industrial projects for a better future of their people. All such hopes, however, went in vain with the passage of time when they started realizing that imperialism was expanding day by day than providing any relief through freedom of trade, use of natural resources and taking independent political decisions by such nations. A writer, therefore, comments that:

Imperialism did not end, did not suddenly become “past,” once decolonization had set in motion, the dismantling of the classic empires. A legacy of connections still binds countries like Algeria and India to France and Britain respectively. A vast new population of Muslims, Africans, and West Indians from former colonial territories now resides in metropolitan Europe; even Italy, Germany, and Scandinavia today must deal with these dislocations, which are to a large degree the result of imperialism and decolonization as well as expanding European population. Also, the end of the Cold War and of the Soviet Union has definitively changed the world map. The triumph of the United States as the last superpower suggests that a new set of force lines will structure the world and they were already beginning to be apparent in the 1960s and '70s.

Michael Barratt-Brown, in a preface to the 1970 second edition of his *After Imperialism* (1963), argues “that imperialism is still without question a most powerful force in the economic, political and military relations by which the less economically developed lands are subjected to the more economically developed.”³¹⁰

▪ ***Imperial Mentality***

The modern imperial powers are fully confident that the whole world belongs to them. They can exercise fuller control over the natural resources of the underdeveloped nations, their lands, strategic spots, culture, finances, industries and politics of such lands. Their mode of thinking has been exposed in the quotation that follows:

Holroyd, the San Francisco financier who backs Charles Gould,

³¹⁰ Edward W. Said, *Culture and Imperialism*, 282.

the British owner of the San Tome mine, warns his protégé that "we won't be drawn into any large trouble" as investors. Nevertheless, We can sit and watch. Of course, some day we shall step in. We are bound to. But there's no hurry. Time itself has got to wait on the greatest country in the whole of God's universe. We shall be giving the word for everything—industry, trade, law, journalism, art, politics, and religion, from Cape Hom clear over to Surith's Sound, and beyond it, too, if anything worth taking hold of turns up at the North Pole. And then we shall have the leisure to take in hand the outlying islands and continents of the earth. We shall run the world's business whether the world likes it or not. The world can't help it—and neither can we, I guess.³¹¹

▪ ***Mind-Deadened Third World***

The modern western views about underdeveloped nations are also apparent from another quotation which shows that the entire world is at the disposal of the rich and scientifically developed nations possessing huge arsenals of mass destruction. Other nations are lifeless and unconscious of the world affairs. Only the western nations enjoy the privilege to choose any sheep from the herd to slaughter, when and where they please to do so. It has, therefore, been observed that:

Yet all these works, which are so indebted to Conrad's anti-imperialist irony in *Nostromo*, argue that the source of the world's significant action and life is in the West, whose representatives seem at liberty to visit their fantasies and philanthropies upon a mind-deadened Third World. In this view, the outlying regions of the world have no life, history, or culture to speak of, no independence or integrity worth representing without the West. And when there is something to be described it is, following Conrad, unutterably corrupt, degenerate, irredeemable.³¹²

▪ ***Conquest of Culture, History and Language***

It is worth noting here that the colonizers had quickly realized that their conquests would be temporary and incomplete as long as they do not conquer the history, the language and culture of the people of those lands.

³¹¹ Ibid, s.v. Introduction, p. xvii.

³¹² Ibid, p. xix.

They, therefore, started not only to impose their own culture on their subjects but also to obliterate the history of the downtrodden nations to sever them from their past. Numerous teams of evangelists, missionaries and paid scholars were arranged to rewrite the past history of the nations and to reinterpret their holy scriptures with such remarks that prove absurdity, degeneration and corruption in those writings. All this was done to prove inferiority and ignorance of the subjects so that they may readily bow before the superior knowledge, traditions and history of the rulers. This was necessary to prove that the conquerors had full justification and right to rule over the subhuman communities to civilize them and to improve their participation in the rapidly developing world around them. Mr. Fanon has alluded to the same in the following:

Fanon penetratingly links the settler's conquest of history with imperialism's regime of truth, over which the great myths of Western culture preside:

"The settler makes history; his life is an epoch, an odyssey. He is the absolute beginning. "this land was created by us"; he is the unceasing cause: "If we leave all is lost, and the country will go back to the Middle Ages." Over against him torpid creatures, wasted by fevers, obsessed by ancestral customs, form and almost inorganic background for the innovating dynamism of colonial mercantilism."³¹³

Fanon adopts much of this extremely audacious thesis, which is oppositional even with oppositional Marxism, in passages like the following, where the settler's consciousness functions like that of a capitalist, turning human workers into inhuman and non-conscious objects:

The settler makes history and is conscious of making it. And because he constantly refers to the history of his mother country, he clearly indicates that he himself is the extension of that mother country. Thus the history which he writes is not the history of the country which he plunders but the history of his own nation in regard to all that she skins off, all that she violates and starves."³¹⁴

³¹³ Ibid, 268.

³¹⁴ Ibid, 270.

▪ **USA the Land of Liberty**

The American continents had a long history of slavery of the African Negroes and genocide of hundreds of millions of the indigenous people on the main land as well as in the islands in the American sphere. During the 17th and the 18th centuries, the continent had also been accommodating all fugitive criminals as well as the seekers of fortune from Europe and other lands. In spite of all this, it has been observed that:

Ideas about slavery's history determine the ways in which Americans hope to resolve the long contradiction between the claims of the United States to be a nation of freedom and opportunity, on the one hand, and, on the other, the unfreedom, the unequal treatment, and the opportunity denied that for most of American history have been the reality faced by people of African descent.³¹⁵

The US since 1865 had gradually started to change into a haven of the outcasts of the European nations many of whom found great fortune waiting for them. Towards the fourth quarter of the 19th century, the US was gaining the reputation as the land of liberty for the people of the world. It was during this period that statue of liberty was erected on Bedloe's Island – a state-owned small island – at the mouth of the New York harbor in New York City. Subsequently, the name of island was changed as the Liberty Island.

There had been great rivalry between France and Great Britain in respect of their possessions in the American Continent. The USA declaration of independence 1776 was good news for the French who had all their sympathies for USA. To show their affiliation with USA, therefore, the French people gifted to the people of USA the 46 meter tall bronze statue of liberty designed by Frédéric Auguste Bartholdi a French sculptor which was built by Gustave Eiffel. The statue consisted of a robed female figure representing Libertas, the Roman Goddess who bears a torch and a tablet evoking the law. The US people themselves had to raise funds to construct the 47

³¹⁵ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. xix.

meter high pedestal for the statue of liberty which at present stands 93 meters from ground to the torch. The statue is an icon of freedom and a welcoming site to immigrants arriving from abroad. A broken chain lying at the feet of the Libertas was, therefore, an insignia of freedom for all who reached USA. All such pretensions were just ridiculous because hundreds of millions of the negro slaves from Africa and millions of captured slaves from the indigenous people were suffering from worst torture, exploitation and inhuman treatment at the hands of the settlers ever witnessed in the world. This was the reason that even at the time of dedication there had been many skeptics to criticize the dedication as a sign of liberty.

Shortly after the dedication, The Cleveland Gazette, an African American newspaper, suggested that the statue's torch not be lit until the United States became a free nation "in reality":

"Liberty enlightening the world," indeed! The expression makes us sick. This government is a howling farce. It can not or rather does not protect its citizens within its own borders. Shove the Bartholdi statue, torch and all, into the ocean until the "liberty" of this country is such as to make it possible for an inoffensive and industrious colored man to earn a respectable living for himself and family, without being ku-kluxed, perhaps murdered, his daughter and wife outraged, and his property destroyed. The idea of the "liberty" of this country "enlightening the world," or even Patagonia, is ridiculous in the extreme.³¹⁶

The observation quoted above had been a living truth since then. In the appendix-A of the book Hagar the Princess,(2013) published by the present author it was observed that:

Although the condition of the slaves had started showing improvement in the USA after the Civil War and the proclamation of emancipation on January 1, 1863 by Abraham Lincoln, the 16th President of the USA (1809 – 1865) and the 13th amendment (1865), yet the process of attaining equal human rights had been extremely slow and discouraging for the former slaves/or other people

³¹⁶ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Statue of Liberty'.

of the black race. Subsequently, a good deal of improvement occurred due to the incessant efforts of Black clergyman Martin Luther King Jr. (1929-1968) who was also awarded a Noble prize in 1964. On August 28, 1963, the King Jr. delivered a stirring address to an audience of more than 200,000 civil rights supporters in the USA. He said:

I have a dream that one day this nation will rise up and live out the true meaning of its creed: We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal [stress added]. (...) I have a dream that my four little children will one day live in a nation where they will not be judged by the color of their skin but by the content of their character [stress added].³¹⁷

Although King's efforts won many supporters even from the white Americans who supported his civil rights movement, yet no major improvement in the racial discrimination could be discerned in the USA during his lifetime. Eventually Martin Luther King was assassinated in 1968 while his dream was yet to be materialized. Others continued to fight for their equal rights with the white Americans, but in spite of succeeding on legal, theological and theoretical grounds, the black Americans fail to enjoy any practical parity with the white Americans in the society, in the services and the schools till today.

For more than half a century since the dedication of the Statue of Liberty in 1886, USA had been a welcoming site for the immigrants from various parts of the world. Subsequently, the US authorities started taking some

³¹⁷ Mr. Martin Luther King was perhaps unaware of the fact that the holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) had openly declared equality between the black and the white in all respects. No one had ascendance over the other unless he exceeded in piety and virtuousness. It was in 632 AD i.e. about 1331 years before Martin Luther was dreaming for such equality of rights when the God had declared. *"O mankind! We created you from a single (pair) of a male and a female, and made you into nations and tribes, that ye may know each other (not that ye may despise (each other)). Verily the most honoured of you in the sight of Allah is (he who is) the most righteous of you. And Allah has full knowledge and is well acquainted (with all things)."* (Al-Qur'ān 49:13) The declaration was implemented word and spirit during the life of the Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) and the believers have no permission to create differentiation between the black and white or in the equality of their rights.

stringent measures to curtail the visits and stay of the foreigners or the immigrants in USA. They had, therefore, been adopting ever new changes to curtail and discourage visits of the non-whites to USA. In the recent past USA had been the only country in the world which insisted to humiliate many of the visitors by inspecting them in a stark naked position. In spite of all this, they continue to assert that "this is the land of the free". As regards hope for the future we are afraid that the condition may change for the worse under the administration of Mr. Donald Trump, the newly elected president of USA.

The present writer can recollect sweet memories of his teenage when during the early fifties of the 20th century, he occasionally overheard some college student asking the other as to 'who was the luckiest person in the world?' The expected reply was 'the one who was bestowed with three gifts of God.

1. He who had a Japanese woman for a wife. It was so because the Japanese women were known for their devotion and veneration to their husbands. They served them as if they were serving their deity.

2. He who had a Chinese cook; because only the Chinese cook had the capability to prepare a tasty dish out of any vegetable or living creature in the air, land or sea.

3. He who had the American passport. This was so because USA was a dream land or a fairy land for people in the world. It was a land of freedom, affluence, peace and security unknown to other people in the world. People used to venerate the American citizens as benefactors of mankind. The holder of American passport was, therefore, welcomed to any state on earth without the formality of any visa or formal permission for the entry. USA did not impose any limit on its citizens to send or receive foreign exchange. It enjoyed great veneration throughout the world for its anti-colonialism. It was the major country to finance rehabilitation of the war ruined economies of Europe besides providing valuable aids to the recently freed and

under developed countries. As such, there had been numerous plus points for USA to be the beloved one of most of the nations in the world.

US citizen was, therefore, welcomed as an angel of love, help and peace throughout the world. After the sixties, however, the other side of the portrait of USA started unveiling itself. Instead of the upholders of liberty, the US authorities were concentrating on establishment of a global empire subduing most of the lands and people on earth. They started asserting themselves as the only supreme strategic power wielding control on the politics, natural resources and finances of the world. The collective impact of their policies of self-aggrandizement and unnecessary interference in each and every corner of the world started not only to deprive USA of its sincere friends but also caused a setback to their credibility as reliable allies of the weak nations. It was not, therefore, unnatural for the US citizens to lose their popularity throughout the world. With the exception of a few countries in Europe, it is impossible for an American citizen to move openly without elaborate security arrangements to protect himself. The think-tanks and policy making authorities paid no attention to growing hatred for USA in Africa, Asia, the Far East and the South Asian regions. Humiliation and curtailment of the visitors to USA is increasing its unpopularity which is likely to reflect in the international trade, industry, financial position and the politics of the world. Without a major change in the policies, therefore, the US is likely to be reduced to a regional power than a leader of the world.

Warfare tools have undergone a radical change since the start of the 20th century. To cope with the same, diplomacy and sophistication have also touched new heights where the think tanks tactfully keep their true goals concealed from the masses and the underdeveloped countries in the world. The world leaders, therefore, have adopted such camouflaging that even their own people remain ignorant of the true

meanings and intentions of different operations undertaken by them. The rapid advancement in the scientific knowledge and techniques in the developed countries has inspired them to extend their effective control not only on the economic resources throughout the world but also on the information technology and thinking of the people. The poor and the ill-informed masses both within the advanced economies as well as other states around the globe are skillfully kept ignorant of the actual development and planning in the world. The Illuminati and corporate players in advanced countries like USA, UK, France, Germany and Russia are increasing their control on physical freedom as well as on the minds of the citizens. People in the underdeveloped countries are kept completely ignorant about radical corporate globalization agenda of USA and its allies.

The super powers in the world have already developed thousands of devices not only to obtain control over the minds of their own people but they are also actively working on the plans to exercise their control on the thinking and actions of all the people in the world. About 14 years ago, David Icke unveiled many of the sinister designs of the most advanced nation i.e. USA to invade the world and to establish one economy at one time. Instead of plain truth, however, the persons at the helm of affairs deftly sell their programs under attractive packages and alluring labels. President G. W. Bush, therefore, took care to conceal his agenda for radical corporate globalization under the popularly pleasing terminology such as we find in the following:

We will actively work to bring the hope of democracy, development, free markets and free trade to every corner of the world.³¹⁸

Let us not forget that by 'free trade' they mean free for USA but not for the weak and underdeveloped countries in the world. Similarly, the terms 'democracy and development' have different implications depending upon the interests of USA. One instance of such

³¹⁸ Antonia Juhasz, *The Bush Agenda*, p. 21. National Security Strategy of the United States of America September 17, 2002.

ambitions of dominance and global empire can be traced in the disclosure made by President Bush:

The failure to prepare for tomorrow's challenges will ensure that the current Pax³¹⁹ Americana comes to an early end. (The Project for The New American Century, September 2000).³²⁰

The positive role of USA from the World War I up to first half of the last century had made them the uncrowned kings of the world. Soon, thereafter, the Americans embarked on the policy of establishing the global empire based on power and finance to subdue almost all the weaker nations in the world. Certain details of the fresh visions and actions of USA had already been given in the preceding chapters which we need not repeat here. Presently, we shall be giving some hints about certain policies and projects envisaging all embracing control not only on the land, financial resources and political dominance throughout the world but also to turn human beings into vocal instruments or machines with physical, mental and behavioral programming and guidance from the centre of the Illuminati.

³¹⁹ *Pax* means a kiss of peace. *Pax Romana* had been the celebrated term used by the Romans denoting their 'kiss' to establish peace. For a better understanding of the nature of the 'kiss', the readers may go through the history of the Romans. The Kiss of peace had obliterated the Carthagians from the face of earth during Carthagians War (149-146 BC). Further conspicuous instances of the Roman traditions to restore and maintain peace, the readers may study the destruction, devastation and massacre of millions of the Jews at Jerusalem in 63 BC by Pompey the Great, in 70 AD by the Roman General Titus, and in 135 AD during the reign of Hadrian. Although the objects behind the *Pax Romana* and *Pax Americana* remain the same yet they differ primarily in two aspects. The Romans, in spite of holding a vast empire around the Mediterranean Sea had only a limited part of earth to deal with. Since the modern inventions have reduced the planet Earth from a world to a global village, therefore, the *Pax Americana* aims at revival of the same Roman policy of "peace" through their dominance all over the globe. The US ambitions for a world empire are evident from The Project for The New American Century, Sep 2000. The *Pax Americana* also differs from *Pax Romana* as regards the tools applied to restore peace. Except for the arsonage, Romans had no element of the horrific temperature as the world has witnessed during atomic attacks at Hiroshima and Nagasaki 1945. They also had no chemical bombs of various categories to kill, to disable, to paralyze or to subject the victims to everlasting skin and stomach diseases. The future of humankind on earth can, therefore, be visualized from the same.

³²⁰ Antonia Juhasz, *The Bush Agenda*, p. 21.

American Imperialism is the economic, military and cultural influence of the United States on other countries. Yale historian Paul Kennedy put it 'from the time the first settlers arrived in Virginia from England and started moving westward, this was an imperial nation, a conquering nation'. Another journalist opines that empire does not even exist; 'we are merely protecting the causes of freedom, democracy and justice worldwide'.³²¹ The American journalist John T. Flynn says:

The enemy aggressor is always pursuing a course of larceny, murder, rapine and barbarism. We are always moving forward with high mission, a destiny imposed by the Deity to regenerate our victims, while incidentally capturing their markets; to civilise savage and senile and paranoid peoples, while blundering accidentally into their oil wells.³²²

As such, the USA like the Israelites consider themselves the privileged nation enjoying God-given rights to subjugate other nations and to usurp their natural resources as well as the markets. In 1898, Senator Albert Beverage proclaimed that an expansion of markets was absolutely necessary, "American factories are making more than the American people can use; American soil is producing more than they can consume. Fate has written our policy for us; the trade of the world must and shall be ours."³²³

Geographer David Harvey says:

There are tensions between the three major blocs over resources and economic power, citing the 2003 invasion of Iraq, whose goal was to prevent rivals from controlling oil. Furthermore, Harvey argues there can arise conflict within the major blocs between capitalists and politicians due to their opposing economic interests. Politicians, on the other hand, live in geographically fixed locations and are, in the U.S. and Europe, accountable to the electorate. The 'new' imperialism, then, has led to an alignment of the interests of capitalists and politicians in order to prevent the rise and expansion of possible economic and political rivals from challenging

³²¹ *Wikipedia*, s.v. 'American Imperialism'.

³²² John Thomas Flynn, *As We Go Marching*, (Alabama: The Ludwig Vog Mises Institute, 2007), p. 222.

³²³ *Wikipedia*, s.v. 'American Imperialism'.

America's dominance.³²⁴

Michael Hardt says that Iraq war is a classically imperialist war and is the lost gasp of a doomed strategy. This new era still has colonizing power, but it has moved from national military forces based on an economy of physical goods to networked bio-power based on an informational and affective economy.³²⁵

▪ **US Expansion Policy**

The US expansion policy is evident from the observation quoted below:

Yet the fact is that during the nineteenth century the United States did expand territorially, most often at the expense of native peoples, and in time came to gain hegemony over the North American continent and the territories and seas adjacent to it. Nineteenth-century offshore experiences ranged from the North African coast to the Philippines, China, Hawaii, and of course throughout the Caribbean and Central America. The broad tendency was to expand and extend control farther, and not to spend much time reflecting on the integrity and independence of others, for whom the American presence was at very best a mixed blessing.

Almost from the moment Haiti gained its independence as a Black republic in 1803 Americans tended to imagine it as a void into which they could pour their own ideas. Abolitionists, says Dash, thought of Haiti not as a place with its own integrity and people but as a convenient site for relocating freed slaves. Later the island and its people came to represent degeneracy and of course racial inferiority. The United State occupied the island in 1915³²⁶ (and Nicaragua in 1916) and set in place a native tyranny that exacerbated an already desperate state of affairs. And when in 1991 and 1992 thousands of Haitian refugees tried to gain entry into Florida, most were forcibly returned.³²⁷

▪ **New Stratagem, Deployments and Think-tanks**

Edward W. Said has observed that:

A truly amazing conceptual arsenal—theories of economic

³²⁴ Ibid.

³²⁵ Wikipedia, s.v. 'American Imperialism'.

³²⁶ Haiti had regained independence from USA in 1934.

³²⁷ Edward W. Said, *Culture and Imperialism*, 288-9.

phases, social types, traditional societies, systems transfers, pacification, social mobilization, and so on—was deployed throughout the world; universities and think tanks received huge government subsidies to pursue these ideas, many of which commanded the attention of strategic planners and policy experts in (or close to) the United States government. Not until the great popular disquiet at the Vietnamese war did critical scholars pay attention to this, but then, almost for the first time, the criticism was heard not just of United States policy in Indochina but of the imperialist premises of United States attitudes to Asia.³²⁸

▪ **Conquest of the Earth**

In his novel *Heart of Darkness* (1899), Conrad³²⁹ observed that the Ancient Romans were “no colonists; their administration was merely a squeeze and nothing more”. Such people conquered and did little else by contrast “what saves us is efficiency, the devotion to efficiency” unlike the Romans who relied on brute force which is scarcely more than an accident arising from the weakness of others. Today, however,

The conquest of the earth, which mostly means the taking it away from those who have a different complexion or slightly flatter noses than ourselves, is not a pretty thing when you look into it too much. What redeems it is the idea only. An idea at the back of it; not a sentimental pretence but an idea; and an unselfish belief in the idea – something you can set up, and bow down before, and offer a sacrifice to ...(...) “We are saved because first of all we needn’t look directly at the results of what we do; we are ringed by and ring ourselves with the practice of efficiency, by which land and people are put to use completely; the territory and its inhabitants are totally incorporated by our rule, which in turn totally incorporates us as we respond efficiently to its exigencies.”³³⁰

We think Joseph Conrad was entirely honest and correct in making the observation quoted above. The British, in fact, had been extremely efficient to exploit all the material as well as human resources in India and other countries ruled by them. In case of India they not only concentrated on improving the ways of communication

³²⁸ Ibid, 290.

³²⁹ Joseph Conrad (1857–1924) was a Polish-British writer regarded as one of the greatest novelists to write in the English language. He was granted British nationality in 1886.

³³⁰ Edward W. Said, *Culture and Imperialism*, 69.

for keeping a tight control over their subjects but also to export all raw materials from India to their factories in England. For the first 150 years of their rule, they effectively banned all types of manufacturing industries in India. No scientific education was allowed to the Indians. They could merely learn to read, write and speak English to serve as intermediaries between the rulers and the ruled. Lord Macaulay, president of the council on education in India had said in 1835:

It is impossible for us with our limited means to attempt to educate the body of the people. We must at present do our best to form a class who may be interpreters between us and the millions whom we govern; a class of persons, Indian in blood and colour, but English in taste, in opinions, in morals, and in intellect. To that class, we may leave it to refine the vernacular dialects of the country, to enrich those dialects with terms of science borrowed from western nomenclature, and to render them by degrees, fit vehicles for conveying knowledge to the great mass of the population.³³¹

The proposal of Macaulay, therefore, was directed to a predetermined goal as observed by John McLeod:

An Orientalist Hierarchy is asserted between a knowledgeable, civilized West and an ignorant, savage East. Thus, the education of Indians is part of a civilizing process that involves a certain moral improvement – it is not just a process that will heighten intellect and opinion. The education of Indians for the purposes of consolidating power is legitimised by seeming morally just and improving.

This was also the concern of many evangelicals in India at the time who were keen that Indians converted to Christianity. However it became clear during the early nineteenth century that many Indians objected to the denigration of their own religions by missionaries and the teaching of biblical scripture in schools.³³²

They also made good use of the Indian army in china, between 1829 and 1856, in Persia 1856, Ethiopia and Singapore 1867, Hong Kong 1868, Afghanistan 1878, Egypt 1882, Burma 1885, Ngasse 1893, Sudan and

³³¹ John McLeod, *Beginning Postcolonialism*, (New York: Manchester University Press, 2000), p. 141.

³³² *Ibid*, p. 141.

Uganda 1896.³³³ Factually, Indian army had been deployed by the British to promote their own cause throughout the world. Indian Armies including a good number of Muslims were utilized against the Muslims at many occasions, the most important of which had been their deployment at Mecca in 1916/1924. It was one of the most disgusting events for the Muslims to attack Mecca and Taif to push out the Ottomans from the Muslim Arabian countries. The British also utilized Indian Army during the World War I and II in Africa as well as in Europe.

▪ ***New World Order***

Much of the rhetoric of the "New World Order" promulgated by the American government since the end of the Cold War-with its redolent self-congratulation, its unconcealed triumphalism, its grave proclamations of responsibility-might have been scripted by Conrad's Holroyd: we are number one, we are bound to lead, we stand for freedom and order, and so on. No American has been immune from this structure of feeling, and yet the implicit warning contained in Conrad's portraits of Holroyd and Gould is rarely reflected on since the rhetoric of power all too easily produces an illusion of benevolence when deployed in an imperial setting. Yet it is a rhetoric whose most damning characteristic is that it has been used before, not just once (by Spain and Portugal) but with deafeningly repetitive frequency in the modern period; by the British, the French, the Belgians, the Japanese, the Russians, and now the Americans.³³⁴

▪ ***World Empire or World Law Guided/Directed by USA***

According to the globalists like Lynden Banis, Johnson and Nixon:

The goal of U.S. foreign policy is to bring about a world increasingly subject to the rule of law. But it is the United States which must "organize the peace," to use Secretary of State Rusk's words. The United States imposes the "international interest" by setting the ground rules for economic development and military deployment across the planet. Thus the United States sets rules for Soviet behavior in Cuba, Brazilian behavior in Brazil, Vietnamese behavior in

³³³ Edward W. Said, *Culture and Imperialism*, 73.

³³⁴ *Ibid*, s.v. Introduction, p. xvii.

Vietnam. Cold War policy is expressed by a series of directives on such extraterritorial matters as whether Britain may trade with Cuba or whether the government of British Guiana may have a Marxist dentist to run it. Cicero's definition of the early Roman Empire was remarkably similar. It was the domain over which Rome enjoyed the legal right to enforce the law. Today America's self-appointed writ runs throughout the world, including the Soviet Union and China, over whose territory the U.S. government has asserted the right to fly military aircraft. The United States, uniquely blessed with surpassing riches and an exceptional history, stands above the international system, not within it. Supreme among nations, she stands ready to be the bearer of the Law.

Although these words were published in 1972, they even more accurately describe the United States during the invasion of Panama and the Gulf War, a country which continues to try to dictate its views about law and peace all over the world.³³⁵

The writer describes the extraordinary role of USA in "manufacturing consent" and an average American feels that it is up to "us" to right the wrongs of the world. As Kiernan puts it:

"America loved to think that whatever it wanted, was just what the human race wanted." For years the United States government has had an active policy of direct and announced intervention in the affairs of Central and South America: Cuba, Nicaragua, Panama, Chile, Guatemala, Salvador, Grenada have had attacks made on their sovereignty ranging from outright war to coups and proclaimed subversion, from assassination attempts to the financing of "contra" armies. In East Asia the United States fought two large wars, sponsored massive military drives that caused hundreds of thousands of deaths at the hands of a "friendly" government (Indonesia in East Timor), overturned governments (Iran in 1953), and supported states in lawless activity, flouting United Nations resolutions, contravening stated policy (Turkey, Israel). The official line most of the time is that the United States is defending its interests, maintaining order, bringing justice to bear upon injustice and misbehavior. Yet, in the case of Iraq, the United States used the United Nations Security Council to push through resolutions for war, at the same time that in numerous other instances (Israel's chief among them) United Nations resolutions supported by the United States were unenforced or ignored, and the United States had unpaid dues

³³⁵ Ibid, 286.

to the United Nations of several hundred million dollars.³³⁶

▪ ***US To Regulate Behavior of States***

The threat to independence in the late twentieth century from the new electronics could be greater than was colonialism itself are beginning to learn that de-colonization and the growth of supra-nationalism were not the termination of imperial relationships but merely the extending of a geo-political web which has been spinning since the Renaissance. The new media have the power to penetrate more deeply into a "receiving" culture than any previous manifestation of Western technology. The results could be immense havoc, an intensification of the social contradictions within developing societies today.³³⁷

▪ ***Postcolonialism***

The essential product of colonialism was that non-whites being less than fully human should be considered inferior to the white man as his master. Trinidadian writer Sam Selvon notes that:

When one talks of colonial indoctrination, it is usually about oppression or subjugation, or waving little Union Jacks on Empire Day and singing 'God Save the King'. But this gut feeling I had as a child, that the Indian was just a piece of cane trash while the white man was to be honoured and respected.³³⁸

▪ ***Post Colonial Position***

Edward W. Said, therefore, writes that:

Domination and inequities of power and wealth are perennial factors of human society. But in today's global setting they are also interpretable as having something to do with imperialism, its history, its new forms. The nations of contemporary Asia, Latin America, and Africa are politically independent but in many ways are as dominated and dependent as they were when ruled directly by European powers.

³³⁶ Ibid, 287.

³³⁷ Ibid, 291-2.

³³⁸ John McLeod, *Beginning Postcolonialism*, p. 17.

Apologies for the Slave Trade

In spite of the fact that writers like John J. Pool had been incriminating only the Muslim nations for slavery to show moral superiority of the western nations having emancipated all the slaves yet the position has been far different from the propagation of people like him. It was perhaps two thousand years after the Christian practice of slavery that some western leaders tried to apologize this age long practice in them. We, therefore, produce certain such apologies to update the information of our readers.

▪ ***France***

On 30 January 2006, Jacques Chirac (the then French President) said that 10 May would henceforth be a national day of remembrance for the victims of slavery in France, marking the day in 2001 when France passed a law recognizing slavery as a crime against humanity.

▪ ***United Kingdom***

On 27 November 2006, British Prime Minister Tony Blair made a partial apology for Britain's role in the African slave trade. However African rights activists denounced it as "empty rhetoric" that failed to address the issue properly. They feel his apology stopped shy to prevent any legal retort. Blair again apologized on March 14, 2007.

On 24 August 2007, Ken Livingstone (Mayor of London) apologized publicly for London's role in the slave trade. "You can look across there to see the institutions that still have the benefit of the wealth they created from slavery", he said pointing towards the financial district, before breaking down in tears. He claimed that London was still tainted by the horrors of slavery. Jesse Jackson praised Mayor Livingstone, and added that reparations should be made.

▪ **United States of America**

On 24 February 2007 the Virginia General Assembly passed House Joint Resolution Number 728 acknowledging "with profound regret the involuntary servitude of Africans and the exploitation of Native Americans, and call for reconciliation among all Virginians." With the passing of that resolution, Virginia became the first of the 50 United States to acknowledge through the state's governing body their state's involvement in slavery.

On 30 July 2008, the United States House of Representatives passed a resolution apologizing for American slavery and subsequent discriminatory laws.

The U.S. Senate unanimously passed a similar resolution on June 18, 2009, apologizing for the "fundamental injustice, cruelty, brutality, and inhumanity of slavery". It also explicitly states that it cannot be used for restitution claims.³³⁹

The language included a reference to the "fundamental injustice, cruelty, brutality and inhumanity of slavery and Jim Crow" segregation. On 18 June 2009, the United States Senate issued an apologetic statement decrying the "fundamental injustice, cruelty, brutality, and inhumanity of slavery". The news was welcomed by President Barack Obama.

On 8 September 2000, the head of the United States Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA) formally apologized for the agency's participation in the "ethnic cleansing" of Western tribes.³⁴⁰

³³⁹ Wikipedia, s.v. *Slavery in the United States*.

³⁴⁰ Ibid.

Ch. 9 -

SLAVE REVOLTS AND THE ABOLITIONISTS

The readers will observe that colonization and expansion in the American continents depended mostly on exploitation of the slaves to produce various crops such as tobacco, sugar, cotton and a vast variety of fruits. While sugarcane had been the most important cash crop for the British, the Americans depended much more on cotton and tobacco. Cotton, like oil later on, was the world's most widely traded commodity and had been the backbone of the US Economy for more than 100 years. US had 66% of all cotton production in the world in 1860. An observation about cotton produce affirms the same:

"Cotton! Cotton! Cotton! . . . is the theme of nearly all the conversations now a days," wrote one migrant to Florida. "Even the Ladies talk learnedly upon the subject. . . . If you see a knot of Planters engaged in earnest conversation, without even approaching, you may [know] the topic of their discourse. Get within earshot of them, and, I will guranty, that the first word that you will hear will be cotton".³⁴¹

Growing of more and more cotton on vast tracts of land through slaves, indentured or hired labor had, therefore, been extremely useful for the settlers. Their prime concern was to increase produce by improving efficiency of the slaves. Stringent measures were applied to increase output at the rate of 2.6% every year from 1811 to 1860. While a slave could pick 50 pounds per day average in year 1818, his out put averaged 341 pounds each on a good day during year 1846. The efficiency did not, however, increase by applying normal methods. The enslavers had to make the slaves do it ... by flogging and that quite often. It was said that a picker would "have as many lashes as there were

³⁴¹ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. 124.

pounds short". Besides this, they had to work from dawn to the dusk:

In 1829, also in Alabama, Henry Gowens saw an overseer force slow women to kneel in front of their cotton baskets. Shoving their heads into the cotton, he would pull up their dresses and beat them until blood ran down their legs. (...) So, afraid of what lurked behind their bent backs, afraid of the scale and slate that lay before them, enslaved people kept picking till the end of the day.³⁴²

Initially the colonizers had to depend entirely on human labor to clear the forests and to level the lands to make useful for plantation of various crops. The primary accumulation of wealth in the American continents depended entirely on the sweat and blood of the slaves, indentured labor and exploitation of the red Indians from whom they tried to extort maximum possible produce on lands. Thank God due to excessive profits the entrepreneurs could save time and enough capital to invent and develop machines that proved to be much more efficient than the slave labor. Cotton ginning machine was invented in 1793 bringing a revolution in the process of cotton through machine instead of human hands. Baptist reports that:

The best- known innovation in the history of cotton production, as every high-school history student knows, is the cotton gin. It allowed enslavers to clean as much cotton for market as they could grow and harvest. As far as most historians have been concerned, the gin is where the study of innovation in the production of cotton ends—at least until the invention of the mechanical cotton picker in the 1930s, which ended the sharecropping regime.³⁴³

Inventions were also made as regards clearing the forests, leveling the lands through machines more efficiently with lesser costs as compared to the human labor. Similarly, there was much increase in efficiency in weaving, in the produce of sugar, tobacco products, processing and tin packing the fruits and numerous other products to save intensive labor. Subsequently, the commercial/ industrial use of electric power during 1880-1890 brought a great relief to coercive labor from

³⁴² Ibid, p. 134.

³⁴³ Ibid, p. 116.

the human employees. It was during this time that the colonizers discovered that human labor was wasteful and unproductive as compared to production through new technologies and machines. Extorting more and more labor from slaves was becoming not only more expensive but also endangering peace and prosperity of those nations.

There had been many revolts in the southern as well as the northern continents creating great upheavals in various parts of America. It was, therefore, more due to the economic and political pressures than moral considerations that France had to abolish slavery in 1794 but Napoleon restored it in 1802. Besides weakening military power of France, the St. Domingue revolution had led France to such financial crisis that it had to sell Louisiana – the whole west bank of Mississippi and its tributaries – extending over 828,000 miles consisting of 530 million acres at 3 cents per acre. This purchase against mere \$15 million added to USA an area forming 15 new states. The necessity of selling Louisiana had arisen due to the fact that Napoleon needed transfer of all French armies to crush revolt in St. Domingue. The overall impact of the slave revolt especially that of St. Domingue was such a jolt on the nerves of Great Britain, USA, Spain and Portugal that they started imposing embargo on slave trade one after the other during the next few years.

The End of Slave Trade

The honor to end slave trade before others goes to Denmark where a royal order was issued on May 1792 that the slave traffic should cease in Danish possessions from the end of 1802. Many other states such as Spain, Portugal, Britain, USA and others followed the said example in the forth coming years. Ultimately at the congress of Vienna on Nov 1814, the principle was acknowledged that slave trade will be abolished as soon as possible. Dutch trade was, therefore, closed in 1814 while Swedish had been abolished in 1813. In due

course, European powers and especially the British started patrolling the Atlantic to check any violation of the embargo on the slave trade. The Britannica, therefore, reports that:

In consequence of the activity of the British cruisers the traders made great efforts to carry as many slaves as possible in every voyage, and practised atrocities to get rid of the slaves when capture was imminent. It was, besides, the interest of the cruisers, who shared the price of the captured slave-ship, rather to allow the slaves to be taken on board than to prevent their being shipped at all. Thrice as great a number of negroes as before, it was said, was exported from Africa, and two-thirds of these were murdered on the high seas. It was found also that the abolition of the British slave trade did not lead to an improved treatment of the negroes in the West Indies. The slaves were overworked now that fresh supplies were stopped, and their numbers rapidly decreased. In 1807 there were in the West Indies 800,000; in 1830 they were reduced to 700,000. It became more and more evident that the evil could be stopped only by abolishing slavery altogether.³⁴⁴

The last recorded slave ship to land on American soil was the *Clotilde*, which in 1859 illegally smuggled a number of Africans into the town of Mobile, Alabama. The Africans on board were sold as slaves; however, slavery in the U.S. was abolished five years later following the end of the American Civil War in 1865. The last survivor of the voyage was Cudjoe Lewis, who died in 1935.³⁴⁵

The last country to ban the Atlantic slave trade was Brazil in 1831. However, a vibrant illegal trade continued to ship large numbers of enslaved people to Brazil and also to Cuba until the 1860s, when British enforcement and further diplomacy finally ended the Atlantic trade. In 1870 Portugal ended the last trade route with the Americas where the last country to import slaves was Brazil. In Brazil slavery itself however did not end until 1888, which was the last country in the Americas to end involuntary servitude.³⁴⁶

Abolitionists

Ashoka the emperor of India (r. 268-232 B.C.) was so much impressed by the preachings of non-violence of

³⁴⁴ *Encyclopaedia Britannica*, Vol. 20, p. 782.

³⁴⁵ Henry Epps, *A Concise Chronicle History of the African-American People Experience in America*, p. 79.

³⁴⁶ *Wikipedia*, s.v. '*Atlantic Slave Trade*'.

Buddha that he not only abolished the slave-trade in the 3rd century BC but also encouraged people to treat slaves well. Under the same influence, Ashoka also had stopped wars against others simply because it caused massive killing of human beings. It is said that during 9 to 12 AD, the emperor Wang Mang usurped the Chinese throne and instituted sweeping reforms including the abolition of slavery and radical land reforms. All such reforms, however, had temporary effects. Islam was, therefore, the first religion to introduce comprehensive and enduring reforms about treatment of the slaves and opening the highway towards their manumission. Besides this, Islam also enjoined a detailed charter of human rights introducing universal brotherhood, equality of rights of all human beings and generosity towards all descendants of Adam. Other nations of Asia, Africa and Europe had no well-defined concept of human rights or a community based on ideals of justice and tranquility among them. It was about 600 years later than Islamic reforms that Magna Carta was signed in 1215 AD. prior to that Europe had no concept of human rights. Only clause 30 of Magna Carta could be taken as basis of the future laws about slavery in England. Sweden and Finland had, however, made slavery illegal in 1335 but it had little impact on the actual conditions of the slaves. Pope Paul III (papacy 1534-1549) forbade slavery of the indigenous people of Americas as well as of any new population that would be discovered but only catholic countries paid some heed to the interdict of the Pope. Other European nations, especially the colonizers, continued to enslave the Negroes and others and to exploit them for their benefits.

There had been many other efforts made by different countries between 1700 and 1800 AD suggesting improvement in the condition of the labors or abolition of slavery. Meanwhile English and American quackers continued their movement for abolition questioning morality of slavery with great impact in about 1839 AD. The general response of enslavers in America was, however, that "Abolitionists were snakes in the garden,

responsible for a Civil War in which hundreds of thousands of white people died. Maybe the end of slavery had to come for the South to achieve economic modernity, but it didn't have to come that way, they said".³⁴⁷

The period from 1800 to 1950 can be taken as the enlightenment period during which abolition bills totaling about 200 had been passed including the most famous US Emancipation Proclamation 1865. Most of the remaining countries also passed similar bills between 1865 and 1948 when article 4 of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights of UNO declared slavery to be contrary to human rights. In spite of all these efforts, slavery continued to exist in its crude forms or under different other deceptive yet attractive names in the world.

It has been stated that humanitarians were the spearheads of the movement which destroyed the West Indian System and freed the Negro. Among them was Wilberforce. Clarkson personifies all the best in the humanitarianism of the age. His labors in the cause of justice to Africa were accomplished only at the cost of much personal discomfort and imposed a severe strain on his scanty resources. Then there were James Stephen the father and James Stephen the son.

One of the earliest, ablest and most diligent of the abolitionists was James Ramsay, who, as a rector in the West Indies, had had some twenty years' experience of slavery. "The only use," he wrote to Wilberforce in 1787, "I can be of in the business is as a pioneer to remove obstacles; use me in this way and I shall be happy." He knew from experience the heavy mortality occasioned by the slave trade among the white sailors; he could speak at first hand of the heavy mortality occasioned among the slaves by excessive toil on the plantations. The planters pursued him with a relentlessness reserved for him alone. "Ramsay is dead," boasted one of them, "I have killed him."³⁴⁸

Slavery was such a blessed institution in the Christian world that the abolitionists were termed as visionaries, hyenas and tigers.

³⁴⁷ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. xvii.

³⁴⁸ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 180-181.

These were the men whom the planters called visionaries and fanatics, and likened to hyenas and tigers. With the aid of the others, Macaulay, Wesley, Thornton and Brougham, they were successful in raising anti-slavery sentiments almost to the status of a religion in England, and these religious reformers who made Clapham into more than a railway junction were not inappropriately nicknamed "the Saints."³⁴⁹

It was not until 1823 that emancipation became the avowed aim of the abolitionists. The chief reason was the persecution of the missionaries in the colonies the death of Smith in Guiana, the expulsion of Shrewsbury in Barbados, the persecution of Knibb in Jamaica.³⁵⁰

In their campaign against the West Indian planters the abolitionists inaugurated what Cochin has called "a sort of pious and silly crusade." They urged their sympathisers to boycott slave-grown produce in favor of the free-grown produce of India. This crusade was recommended by the Abolition Committee in 1795 and by many pamphleteers. William Fox in 1792 informed the British people that in every pound of sugar they consumed two ounces of human flesh. By an elaborate mathematical computation it was estimated that if one family using five pounds of sugar a week would abstain for twenty-one months, one Negro would be spared enslavement and murder. The consumer of sugar was really "the prime mover, the grand cause of all the horrible injustice" By substituting East for West Indian sugar, the Peckham Ladies' African Anti-Slavery Association was informed, they were undermining the system of slavery in the safest, easiest and most effective manner. An abolitionist leaflet was circulated, entitled "The Negro Slave's Complaint to the Friends of Humanity." The Negro pleaded: "And now, massa, you be de friend of freedom, good man, pity poor Negro, me beg buy de East Sugar, no slave sugar, de free, and den my massa vill tink and say, ve no much sell de slave sugar, slaves must be no slaves, must be free, and ve pay de vages, and den vill vork villing and do more work, and ve den sell more sugar, and get more of de money. De men at de East be vise men, and de vise men at de East no slave make sugar free, free, free."³⁵¹

³⁴⁹ Ibid, p. 181.

³⁵⁰ Ibid, p. 182.

³⁵¹ Ibid, p. 183-184.

▪ ***John Brown the Abolitionist***

Avoiding other details about John Brown, we just quote a passage from the book about the impact of his efforts towards abolition and his martyrdom for the same:

Rumors of slave conspiracies and news of lynchings competed with each other throughout the anxious winter and spring of 1859–1860, and alongside them were stories about northern whites who heaped hagiographic praise on John Brown as he dangled. National Republican politicians disavowed the raid, but even moderate opponents of slavery expansion adopted Brown as a symbol of uncompromising resistance against much-resented slave-lords. The city of Albany, New York, fired one hundred salutes to John Brown on December 2, starting at the scheduled time of his execution. Northern middle-class public culture depicted him as Christ-like. Ralph Waldo Emerson wrote that John Brown would “make the gallows as glorious as the cross.” And Henry David Thoreau, last heard from as a pacifist proponent of nonviolence, and a non-taxpaying protestor against the Mexican War, said that “for manly directness and force, and for simple truth,” all the talk of politicians could not equal “the few casual remarks of crazy John Brown.” Brown was, Thoreau believed, “the first northern man whom the slaveholder has learned to respect.”³⁵²

▪ ***Fear of Revolts or Emancipation***

With the increasing awareness and knowledge leading to virtuous feelings, there prevailed a confused state of affairs in Europe and the colonies to observe the unnatural, torturous and miserable conditions of the slaves. Extreme unrest also prevailed in Brazil where rebellious slaves had designed a quilombos community which had been helping to make settlements formed by the fugitive slaves and freeborn Africans. In 1807, the slaves were planning a revolt that would take place on May 28. The goal of uprising was believed to have capture ships in the harbor and make a massive flight back to Africa. Luckily one of the slaves betrayed the secret to his master a week before the date fixed for the revolt and everything was brought under control without much loss to the Brazilian government.

³⁵² Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. 386.

A Muslim slave revolt began on January 24, 1835 in the streets of Salvador but was crushed by the government within three hours by killing about 70 of the rebels. The grievances besides slavery also pertained to cultural, social, religious and domestic lives and feelings of the slaves. Such factors were the aftermath of the Slave Rebellion of Zumbi Dos Palmares and Berbice Slave Uprising 1763-4 in Guiana, Curacao (a Dutch Colony) Slave Revolt of 1795, uprising of Alafaiates 1798 and Male revolt at Salvador 1835.

Besides certain revolts, there had been an overall feeling of unrest and the necessity to bring an improvement in the relationship between the masters and the slaves irrespective of the fact they were Negroes, Indians, mulattos or others. The position has been explained superbly in the following:

"The increasing uncertainty of the continuance of the system of slavery." Drawing on "the blood-stained produce" constituted a "suicidal dependence" on the "crime of American slavery."

In 1835, Thomas Baring carefully observed the United States, expecting that "the further agitation of the Slave question might materially alter the result, acting of course, favourably on prices." How secure, after all, would slave property be in an industrializing America with increasing abolitionist sympathies? Would the political economy of southern planters collide with that of northern economic elites? And could the increasingly expansionist designs of wealthy and powerful slaveholders in the American South and their proto-nationalist project be contained within an industrializing United States? Southern planters, the "lords of the lash," emboldened by their wealth, began to lament their subordinate role within the global economy; their fledgling design to revolutionize their own position within it were yet another threat to the system as a whole.³⁵³

The Los Angeles Times in its article dated Oct 13, 1991 by Michael Perry has provided a short detail of the barbarity committed by the Australians with the slaves during 1842-1904. The interested readers may peruse the same to update their information about the

³⁵³ Sven Beckert, *Empire of Cotton*, p. 121-122.

treatment of slaves by the colonists. Presently, we continue with a report of slave conditions in the American continents in the following:

On the plantation itself, another terror was lurking. A visit to the industrial cotton fields of the "black belt" impressed on many observers that slavery was unstable because the war between slaves and their masters could turn at any point. "A Cotton Spinner" warned in 1844 that "the safety of this country depends upon our obtaining an improved supply of Cotton from British India," since in America "on the first opportunity ... these slave-gangs will naturally disperse, the improvident negroes will cease to grow cotton, and there being no white men to supply their places; Cotton cultivation in America will terminate." He feared an "exterminating war of races – a prospect too horrible to dwell upon." Emancipation, he worried, might shake "our country ... to [its] very foundations." Talk of runaways, refusals to work, and even outright rebellion kept planters and European cotton manufacturers on their toes. Merchant Francis Carnac Brown warned in 1848 of "a race of discontented slaves, ruled by tyranny, and threatening daily some ruinous outbreak, which it is known must one day come." Americans tried to explain to their European customers that slavery in the United States, unlike in Saint-Domingue, was safe – not least, as Tench Coxe put it, because of the presence of a powerful white militia and because slaves have "no artillery nor arms".³⁵⁴

Cotton manufacturers understood that their prosperity was entirely dependent on the labor of slaves and they "dreaded the severity of the revulsion which must sooner, or later arrive."³⁵⁵

The voracious appetite for accumulation sped the "social metabolism" of cotton production. The logic of war capitalism in fact now emanated from its industrial (wage labor) center in Lancashire. While in the eighteenth century, slavery had enabled industrial takeoff, it now became integral to its continued expansion.³⁵⁶

In between the end of the slave-trade in 1807 and just before the Emancipation Proclamation, there had been many people like Charles Mallori and his comrades struggling for emancipation. Such people were some time declared as contrabands. About them, it has been recorded that:

³⁵⁴ Ibid, p. 122.

³⁵⁵ Ibid, p. 121.

³⁵⁶ Ibid, p. 117.

Those first three “contrabands” struck a crack in slavery’s centuries-old wall. Over the next four years, hundreds of thousands more enslaved people widened the crack into a gaping breach by escaping to Union lines. Their movement weakened the Confederate war effort and made it easier for the United States and its president to avow mass emancipation as a tool of war. Eventually the Union Army began to welcome formerly enslaved men into its ranks, turning refugee camps into recruiting stations—and those African- American soldiers would make the difference between victory and defeat for the North, which by late 1863 was exhausted and uncertain.³⁵⁷

It has been further reported that:

Within half a century after Butler sent Charles Mallory away from Fortress Monroe empty- handed, the children of white Union and Confederate soldiers united against African- American political and civil equality. This compact of white supremacy enabled southern whites to impose Jim Crow segregation on public space, disfranchise African- American citizens by barring them from the polls, and use the lynch- mob noose to enforce black compliance. White Americans imposed increased white supremacy outside the South, too. In non- Confederate states, many restaurants wouldn’t serve black customers. Stores and factories refused to hire African Americans. Hundreds of midwestern communities forcibly evicted African- American residents and became “sundown towns” (“Don’t let the sun set on you in this town”). Most whites, meanwhile, believed that science proved that there were biologically distinct human races, and that Europeans were members of the superior one. Anglo- Americans even believed that they were distinct from and superior to the Jews from Russia, Italians, Greeks, Slavs, and others who flooded Ellis Island and changed the culture of northern urban centers.³⁵⁸

▪ ***Political Influence of Slave Holders***

Due to the distressing circumstances in the colonies, the slaves, the humanists, the abolitionists and certain saintly souls were actively thinking and struggling for equality of human rights and abolition of slavery. Their efforts, however, used to be foiled by strong and effective political influence of the slave holders. Certain

³⁵⁷ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. xv-xvi.

³⁵⁸ Ibid, p. xiv-xv.

short extracts from Sven Beckerts' *Empire of Cotton* are being reproduced to explain the position:

The political influence of slaveholders in the American Republic was also decisive because it allowed them to expand the institution of slavery into the new acquired territories of the South and Southwest, while successfully committing the federal government to a policy of expropriating Native Americans.³⁵⁹

Southern Slaveholders had enshrined the basis of their power into the Constitution with its three-fifths clause. A whole series of slaveholding presidents, Supreme Court judges, and strong representation in both houses of Congress guaranteed seemingly never-ending political support for the institution of slavery. Such power on the national level was enabled and also supplemented by the absence of competing elites in the slaveholding states themselves, and the enormous power slaveholders enjoyed over state governments.³⁶⁰

The disjunction of political from economic spaces in fact proved to be crucial for the world's most dynamic industry – with cotton-growing slave owners dominating regional governments and exerting significant influence on the national government, their interests and the policies of the state could be aligned to a stunning degree, an impossibility for slaveholders within the British Empire.

How these factors came together can be seen, for example, in the Yazoo-Mississippi Delta. Here, in an area of approximately seven thousand square miles, the mighty Mississippi had unloaded its rich sediments for millennia, becoming the seedbed of the world's most productive cotton land. In 1859, as many as sixty thousand Delta slaves produced a staggering 66million pounds of cotton, nearly ten times as much as was exported from Saint-Domingue to France during the height of its production in the early 1790s.³⁶¹

For the Delta to become the chief grower of the industrial world most important commodity – a kind of Saudi Arabia of the early nineteenth century – its land had to be taken from its original inhabitants and labor, capital, knowledge, and state power had to be mobilized. Between 1820 and 1832 a series of treaties backed by skirmishes and armed confrontations transferred much of the land from the Choctaws – its native inhabitants – to white settlers. Using wagons, rafts, and flatboats, hopeful cotton planters brought slaves from elsewhere in the South to clear that land of its

³⁵⁹ Sven Beckert, *Empire of Cotton*, p. 112.

³⁶⁰ Ibid, p. 111

³⁶¹ Ibid, p. 112-113.

"jungle-like" vegetation, and later to hoe the soil, sow seeds, prune the young plants, and then harvest the cotton.³⁶²

Slave Revolts

Most of the European historians skip over the prolonged struggle of slaves to get rid of their chains and to breathe freely like others on the planet Earth. Among numerous other stories, the revolt of St. Domingue had been unique in many respects. In our chapter on 'Genocide of the Indigenous People', we have given a brief sketch of the atrocities committed by Columbus to eliminate entire population of the indigenous people on the isles. A part of the narrative can, however, be reproduced here how Columbus and his companions committed genocide in the Caribbean Islands.

"In two years, through murder, mutilation, or suicide, half of the 250,000 Indians on Haiti were dead," Zinn wrote. "By the year 1515, there were perhaps fifty thousand Indians left. By 1550, there were five hundred. A report of the year 1650 shows none of the original Arawaks [on the Bahamas] or their descendants left on the island."³⁶³

Since no indigenous people had been left to live in St. Domingue the French being successors of the Spanish people had to import large number of enslaved people from Africa for plantation of various cash crops and to render numerous services to the French being their masters. The Britannica, therefore, reports that:

So vast was the annual importation of enslaved negroes into this colony before 1791 that the ratio of the blacks to the whites was as 16 to 1. In that year there were in French St. Domingo 480,000 blacks, 24,000 mulattoes and only 30,000 whites.³⁶⁴

These slaves were subjected to such torture at the hands of the French that they had no option except to revolt against them as described in the following:

³⁶² Ibid, p. 113.

³⁶³ C. Robert Gibson, *US UNCUT*, published on October, 10, 2015.

³⁶⁴ *Encyclopaedia Britannica*, Vol. 20, p. 781.

▪ ***The Successful Revolt of St. Domingo***

The most successful slave rebellion in history had been the 18th century Haitian revolution. The French colony of St. Domingue known as the “Pearl of the Antilles” was one of the richest colonies in the world. The French were extracting enormous wealth from the colony through the implementation of harsh system of slavery on the blacks. It has been reported that:

Thousands of slaves were imported from Africa to work on the tobacco, cocoa, cotton, and indigo farms. By the mid eighteenth century Saint-Dominique had become the most lucrative colony in the Caribbean. Over 40 percent of all European sugar and 75 percent of all European coffee as well as much of France's eighteenth century wealth and glory came from the slave labor in the plantations of "la perle des Antilles", Saint-Dominique.³⁶⁵

St. Domingo had been the most important cotton Island of all.

As one British observer put it, “That Island, which has been the grand Source of Supply to us, of the Article of Cotton Wool, is, from these Causes, in a State of Anarchy, Distress, and almost Dissolution.” Indeed, he predicted that it was unlikely that the soil of the Planters, fertilized by the Thirst and Blood of the Negroes, will always increase the Store of our Coffers, in order to add to the Excess of your Wealth, Extravagance and Voluptuousness.³⁶⁶

According to the history of the colony, it has been recorded that:

When Columbus arrived in what is today Haiti in December 1492 and met the native Taino Arawak people, they were friendly, exchanging gifts with the Spaniards and volunteering their help. But Columbus was already planning to enslave them. He wrote in a letter to Queen Isabella of Spain that the natives were “tractable, and easily led; they could be made to grow crops and build cities”.³⁶⁷

When Columbus returned to Europe in 1493, 30 of his soldiers stayed to build a fort there called La Navidad. They began stealing from, raping, and enslaving the natives—in some cases they held native women and girls as sex slaves. Finding gold was a chief goal for the Spanish; they quickly forced

³⁶⁵ Wikipedia, s.v. *1804 Haiti Massacre*.

³⁶⁶ Sven Beckert, *Empire of Cotton*, p. 96.

³⁶⁷ Wikipedia, s.v. *Slavery in Haiti*.

enslaved natives to work in gold mines, which took a heavy toll in life and health. In addition to gold the slaves mined copper, and they grew crops for the Spaniards. In response to the brutality, the natives fought back. Some Taino escaped into remote parts of the island's mountains and formed communities in hiding as "maroons", who organized attacks against Spaniards' settlements. the Spanish responded to the native resistance with severe reprisals, for example destroying crops to starve the natives. The Spaniards brought to the island dogs trained to kill the natives and unleashed them upon those who rebelled against enslavement.³⁶⁸

A photo under the caption "Columbus Fed Natives to Dogs", in our Chapter Dehumanization of Slaves depicts the same.

In 1791, Africans enslaved in the French Caribbean colony of Saint-Domingue exploded in a revolt unprecedented in human history. Saint-Domingue, the eastern third of the island of Hispaniola, was at that time the ultimate sugar island, the imperial engine of French economic growth. But on a single August night, the mill of the first slavery's growth stopped turning. All across Saint- Domingue's sugar country, the most profitable stretch of real estate on the planet, enslaved people burst into the country mansions. They slaughtered enslavers, set torches to sugar houses and cane fields, and then marched by the thousand on Cap-Francais, the seat of colonial rule. Thrown back, they regrouped. Revolt spread across the colony.

By the end of the year thousands of whites and blacks were dead. As the cane fields burned, the smoke blew into the Atlantic trade winds. Refugees fled to Charleston, already burdened by its own fear of slave revolt; to Cuba; and to all the corners of the Atlantic world. They brought wild- eyed tales of a world turned upside down. Europeans, in the throes of epistemological disarray because of the French Revolution's overthrow of a throne more than a millennium old, reacted to these events with a different but still profound confusion. Minor slave rebellions were one thing. Total African victory was another thing entirely—it was so incomprehensible, in fact, that European thinkers, who couldn't stop talking about the revolution in France, clammed up about Saint-Domingue. The German philosopher Georg Hegel, for instance, who was in the process of constructing an entire system of thought around the idealized, classical image of a slave rebelling against a master, never spoke of the slave rebellion going on

³⁶⁸ Ibid.

in the real world. Even as reports of fire and blood splattered every weekly newspaper he read, he insisted that African people were irrelevant to a future that would be shaped by the newly free citizens of European nation-states.³⁶⁹

An ex- slave named Toussaint Louverture had welded bands of rampaging rebels into an army that could defend their revolution from European powers who wanted to make it disappear. Between 1794 and 1799, his army defeated an invasion of tens of thousands of antirevolutionary British Redcoats.³⁷⁰

By 1800, Saint-Domingue, though nominally still part of the French Republic, was essentially an independent country. In his letters to Paris, Toussaint Louverture styled himself the "First of the Blacks." He was communicating with a man rated the First in France—Napoleon Bonaparte, first consul of the Republic, another charismatic man who had risen from obscure origins. Napoleon, an entrepreneur in the world of politics and war, rather than business, used his military victories to destroy old ways of doing things. Then he tried to create new ones: a new international order, a new economy, a new set of laws, a new Europe—and a new empire. But after he concluded the Peace of Amiens with Britain in 1800, the ostensible republican became monarchical. He set his sights on a new goal: restoring the imperial crown's finest jewel, the lost Saint-Domingue. In 1801, he sent the largest invasion fleet that ever crossed the Atlantic, some 50,000 men, to the island under the leadership of his brother-in-law Charles LeClerc. Their mission was to decapitate the ex-slave leadership of Saint-Domingue. "No more gilded Africans," Napoleon commanded. Subdue any resistance by deception and force. Return to slavery all the Africans who survived.³⁷¹

LeClerc successfully captured Toussaint by deception and packed him off to France to be imprisoned in a fortress in the Jura Mountains. Resistance, however, did not cease. The army Louverture had built began to win battles over the one Napoleon had sent. French generals turned to genocide, murdering thousands of suspected rebels and their families. The terror provoked fiercer resistance, which—along with yellow fever and malaria—killed thousands of French soldiers, including LeClerc. By the middle of 1802, the first wave of French forces had withered away. Napoleon reluctantly diverted the Louisiana army to Saint-Domingue. Then this second expedition to the Caribbean was also destroyed.³⁷²

³⁶⁹ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. 44-45.

³⁷⁰ Ibid, p. 45.

³⁷¹ Ibid, p. 45.

³⁷² Ibid, p. 46.

The financial crisis and military reverses had dismayed the French to such an extent that French minister offered Robert R. Livingston (US minister to France 1801-1804) all French Louisiana – the whole west bank of Mississippi and its tributaries – extending over 828,000 miles consisting of 530 million acres at 3 cents per acre. This purchase against mere \$15 million added to USA an area forming 15 new states. This American acquisition had been caused by the sacrifices of hundreds of thousands of black African men, women and children who in St. Domingue rose up against the one social institution whose protection appeared to be written – the enslavement of African people. Besides this, St. Domingue revolt had sounded the death knell for the new world slavery and end of the slave trade. It perhaps was due to the incidence of St. Domingue that the British parliament banned the slave trade in 1807 followed by abolition of slave trade by Spain, France, Portugal and USA up to 1808. Alexander Hamilton wrote that:

“to the deadly climate of St. Domingo, and to the courage and obstinate resistance made by its black inhabitants are we indebted. . . . [The] truth is, Bonaparte found himself absolutely compelled”— and not by Jefferson—“to relinquish his daring plan of colonizing the banks of the Mississippi.”

Even today, most US history textbooks tell the story of the Louisiana Purchase without admitting that slave revolution in Saint-Domingue made it possible. And here is another irony. Haitians had opened 1804 by announcing their grand experiment of a society whose basis for citizenship was literally the renunciation of white privilege, but their revolution's success had at the same time delivered the Mississippi Valley to a new empire of slavery. The great continent would incubate a second slavery exponentially greater in economic power than the first.³⁷³

The French revolutionaries had exerted their influence on the national assembly which abolished slavery in France in 1794. Napoleon, however, restored it in 1802 which added to the miseries of the slaves. The fight between France and the slaves continued up to the end

³⁷³ Ibid, p. 48-49.

of April 1804 causing death of about 5000 people. Ultimately, the insurgents succeeded to expel the French people from the colony. In the 1805 constitution all citizens were defined as 'black' and white men were banned from owning land. The revolution as such, had a great impact on USA and other colonial powers in America and the Islands.

The slaves, however, were not prepared to wait for freedom to come to them as a dispensation from above. The frequency and intensity of slave revolts after 1800 reflect the growing tensions which reverberated in the stately halls of Westminster. In 1808 a slave revolt broke out in British Guiana.³⁷⁴

In 1816 came the turn of Barbados. It was a rude shock for the Barbadian planters who flattered themselves that the good treatment of the slaves would "have prevented their resorting to violence to establish a claim of natural right which by long custom sanctioned by law has been hitherto refused to be acknowledged." (...) "They stoutly maintained however," so the commander of the troops wrote to the governor, "that the island belonged to them, and not to white men, whom they proposed to destroy, reserving the females."³⁷⁵

But the tension was rapidly mounting. British Guiana in 1808, Barbados in 1816. In 1823 British Guiana went up in flames, for the second time. Fifty plantations revolted, embracing a population of 12,000. Here again the revolt was so carefully and secretly planned that it took the planters unawares. The slaves demanded unconditional emancipation. The governor expostulated with them they must go gradually and not be precipitate. The slaves listened coldly. "These things they said were no comfort to them, God had made them of the same flesh and blood as the whites, that they were tired of being slaves to them, that they should be free and they would not work any more."³⁷⁶

The climax came with a revolt in Jamaica during the Christmas holidays. Jamaica was the largest and most important British West Indian colony, and had more than half the slaves in the entire British West Indies. With Jamaica on fire, nothing could stop the flames from spreading. An "extensive and destructive insurrection" broke out among the slaves in the western district. The insurrection, reported the governor, "was not occasioned by any sudden grievance or immediate cause of discontent, it had been long concerted and at different periods

³⁷⁴ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 204.

³⁷⁵ Ibid, p. 194.

³⁷⁶ Ibid, p. 205.

deferred."³⁷⁷

▪ **Hundreds of Outbreaks Across Russia**

In Russia, slaves were usually classified as 'Kholophs'. A Kholoph's master had unlimited power over his life. (...)

During the 16th and 17th centuries, runaway serfs and kholops known as Cossacks ("outlaws") formed autonomous communities in the southern steppes. There were numerous rebellions against slavery and serfdom, most often in conjunction with Cossack uprisings, such as the uprisings of Ivan Bolotnikov (1606–1607), Stenka Razin (1667–1671), Kondraty Bulavin (1707–1709), and Yemelyan Pugachev (1773–1775), often involving hundreds of thousands and sometimes millions. Between the end of the Pugachev rebellion and the beginning of the 19th century, there were hundreds of outbreaks across Russia.³⁷⁸

Besides Russia there had been hundreds of rebellions concerning capturing of slaves, during their transportations or during their miserable conditions in different colonies of the world. In North America alone, there had been 250 uprisings involving ten or more slaves during 18th and 19th centuries.

▪ **French West Africa**

Several hundred thousand people in French West Africa decamped in 1905-6 making this one of the most significant slave revolts in history.³⁷⁹

Abraham Lincoln On Slavery

From the foregoing, we gather that there had been long standing turmoil in the United States and also in the South American states struggling for freedom and equality of human rights. One can, therefore, find hundreds of books explaining the events leading to emancipation. In the present context, however, we intend to focus on US Emancipation Proclamation of 1863/65 and Abraham Lincoln's unique role to leave an

³⁷⁷ Ibid, p. 206.

³⁷⁸ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Slave Rebellion'.

³⁷⁹ William Gervase Clarence-Smith, *Islam and the Abolition of Slavery*, p. 5.

everlasting benevolent impression in the history of the West. It has been reported that:

Abraham Lincoln decided to challenge Douglas for his Senate seat. Lincoln used the election to test his arguments, in particular his claim that any policy that enabled further forced migration to occur—like Douglas's "popular sovereignty"—inevitably led to the subordination of all political and economic freedom to the needs of enslavers. In the seven Lincoln-Douglas debates of August to October 1858, the challenger grounded the antislavery argument on a foundation that held true whether the listener was an open racist like David Wilmot, an abolitionist, or something in between. Lincoln insisted that slavery contradicted what he understood to be the fundamental truths of American identity, particularly the natural-rights claims of the Declaration: "If slavery is not wrong, nothing is wrong." Lincoln acknowledged the difficulty of ending slavery in a day, a week, or a year. Slavery, he said, was like a gruesome metastatic cancer growing on a man's neck. "He dares not cut it out. He bleeds to death if he does, directly." Slavery, he said, was also like a rattlesnake that crawled into "a bed where the children are sleeping. Would I do right to strike him there? I might hurt the children." Or the awakened serpent "might bite the children." But leave it coiled in the bed, let the cancer grow, and the result was also death. Permit expansion, and, as the past seventy years had shown, you deepen American slavery's severity, entrench more securely its "immense pecuniary interest."

For the Union, Lincoln insisted, cannot "endure permanently half slave and half free. . . . It will become all one thing or the other." His ultimate opponents, the slavery-expansionist politicians of the South, agreed with his analysis of slavery as a system that needed geographic growth in order to function. And, Lincoln warned, they would try to ensure that growth would happen by trying to turn the entire United States into slave territory. This would limit all Americans' rights, making people in the free states as subservient to the thought-policing of proslavery orthodoxy as those in the South. Historians have dismissed the idea that slavery could have returned to the free states. But perhaps his claim was not implausible. At the Ottawa, Illinois, debate, Lincoln asked: "What is necessary for the nationalization of slavery? It is simply the next Dred Scott decision. It is merely for the Supreme Court to decide that no State under the Constitution can exclude it, just as they have already decided that under the Constitution neither Congress nor the Territorial Legislature can do it."³⁸⁰

³⁸⁰ Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, p. 381-382.

Credit, therefore, goes to Lincoln for stressing the rights of freedom as well as rights for equality of human beings. He said:

Slavery undermined freedom's future for whites as well as blacks. It could not be allowed to expand, or it would go everywhere and change everything. Though its excision must not be rushed destructively, it must begin, and excision should begin with the defeat of the Douglas Democrats who had long enabled southern expansionists to get their way.³⁸¹

Among many others, there had been two prominent radical abolitionists like William Seward and Salmon Chase to support the cause of Abraham Lincoln and John Brown to fight against the protectors of future of slavery. Ultimately "Lincoln's victory led Deep South slaveholders to claim that only secession could save the south from being "stripped," as one Alabama editor, a former Douglas supporter, said, "of 25 hundred millions of slave property & to have loose among us 4,000,000 of freed blacks".³⁸²

In spite of all such strong differences of thinking, the northern republicans declared its commitment to equality between the white and the Negro races. It has been reported that:

Not only had the Republican Party declared its goal to be abolition, but it "now demand[s] . . . equality in the right of suffrage, equality in the honors and emoluments of office, equality in the social circle, equality in the right of matrimony." Not only would emancipation mean that non-planters would lose the chance to move up in the world—a chance that ownership of even one slave could represent. Worse, the everyday distinctions that gave status to all whites, especially men, would vanish. Lincoln's victory left only one choice. Secede, or your neighbor's field "hand" will marry your daughter. Secede, or offer up your "wives and daughters to pollution and violation to gratify the lust of half-civilized Africans." Republican domination, the emissary concluded, meant a "saturnalia of blood," "a war of extermination" that would lead to the destruction of the white

³⁸¹ Ibid, p. 383.

³⁸² Ibid, p. 390.

people by “assassinations” and “amalgamation,” or rape.³⁸³

The abolition, therefore, meant not only the stoppage of the sale of commodified black bodies, reducing the number of isolated and rapeable black women but also conflation of sexual force and political power and the mixing of sexual pleasure with the use of enslaved bodies for making wealth. The position was such that many Republican Party leaders anxiously participated in the compromised negotiations. Lincoln, however, took a different stand as quoted below:

To Thurlow Weed, master of the New York Republican machine, Lincoln wrote, “Let there be no compromise on the question of extending slavery. If there be, all our labor is lost, and ere long, must be done again.” The people had spoken. They voted for a platform that opposed all expansion of slavery. Lincoln refused to abandon the result of the election.³⁸⁴

Since the beginning of the civil war, Lincoln had been trying to convince politicians to agree to gradual or compensative emancipation plans. On April 10, 1862, Congress declared that the federal government would compensate slave owners who freed their slaves. As such, \$300 were paid for each slave to those freed them. Many states refused to bend but after the Union won its narrow victory in anti-Etam, Lincoln released the document of Preliminary Emancipation Proclamation:

The Preliminary Emancipation Proclamation would prove to be the most important executive order ever issued by an American president. It announced that as of January 1, 1863, any slaves in rebel-held areas would be free. The Proclamation wasn’t complete. It excluded the enslaved in Union-held territory, which meant not only the border states, but also the western Virginia counties that were forming themselves into a separate pro-Union state. Also exempted was southern Louisiana, where Union leaders were trying to create a “reconstructed” state government and didn’t want to antagonize local whites.³⁸⁵

On January 1, 1863, Lincoln reaffirmed the Emancipation Proclamation. He also confirmed that the executive branch would fulfill Congress’s summer 1862 mandate allowing the

³⁸³ Ibid, p. 391.

³⁸⁴ Ibid, p. 392.

³⁸⁵ Ibid, p. 400-401.

Union Army to enlist African Americans.³⁸⁶

Other Factors to Abolish Slavery

The historian Walter Rodney contends that it was a decline in the profitability of the triangular trades that made it possible for certain basic human sentiments to be asserted at the decision-making level in a number of European countries—Britain being the most crucial because it was the greatest carrier of African captives across the Atlantic. Rodney states that changes in productivity, technology and patterns of exchange in Europe and the Americas informed the decision by the British to end their participation in the trade in 1807. In 1809 President James Madison outlawed the slave trade with the United States.³⁸⁷

Nevertheless, Michael Hardt and Antonio Negri argue that it was neither a matter of strictly economics nor of morals. First, because slavery was (in practice) still beneficial to capitalism, providing not only influx of capital, but also disciplining hardship into workers (a form of "apprenticeship" to the capitalist industrial plant). The more "recent" argument of a "moral shift" (the basis of the previous lines of this article) is described by Hardt and Negri as an "ideological" apparatus in order to eliminate the sentiment of guilt in western society. Although moral arguments did play a secondary role, it usually had major resonance when used as a strategy to undercut competitors' profits. This argument holds that Eurocentric history has been blind to the most important element in this fight for emancipation, precisely, the constant revolt and antagonism of slaves' revolts. The most important of those being the Haitian Revolution. The shock of this revolution in 1804, certainly introduces an essential political argument into the end of slavery trade, which happen only three years later.³⁸⁸

Reciprocal Violence

The violence of the colonial regime and the counter-violence of the native balance each other and respond to each other in an extraordinary reciprocal homogeneity ... The settler's work is to make even dreams of liberty impossible for the native. The native's work is to imagine all possible methods for destroying the settler. On the logical plane, the Manicheanism of the settler produces a Manicheanism of the natives, to the

³⁸⁶ Ibid, p. 402.

³⁸⁷ Wikipedia, s.v. *Atlantic Slave Trade*.

³⁸⁸ Ibid.

theory of the “absolute evil of the native” the theory of the “absolute evil of the settler” replies.³⁸⁹

Slavery Till Today

After the Universal Declaration of Human Rights by UNO in 1948 and Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action by World Conference on Human Rights 1993, there was no legal basis for existence of slaves in any part of the world. It is, however, surprising that many countries in the world were holding slaves in large numbers even in 2013.

Despite the abolition of slavery in Russia in 1723, when Peter the Great converted household slaves to serfs, Russia remains the 6th largest holder of slaves, estimated at 516,000 in 2013. Russia, however, was the first largest holder of slaves keeping in view the number of slaves quoted above. In June 2013, US Department of State released a report on slavery, placing Russia in the worst offenders category. This slavery mostly affects the Uzbekistan and Tajikistan nationals who migrate to Russia but have problems with the Federal Migration Service.³⁹⁰

Keeping in view the total number of slaves, Russia had been the largest holder of slaves in the world. Anyhow, taking into account the number of slaves as a percentage of the Total population, it was at number 6 as shown in the report reproduced above.

³⁸⁹ Edward W. Said, *Culture and Imperialism*, 271.

³⁹⁰ Wikipedia, s.v. ‘Slavery in Russia’.

Ch. 10 -

TOWARDS THE NEW WORLD ORDER

The 20th Century

The 20th century can be considered a period of history when civilization reached its zenith in the field of knowledge and technology. Inventions such as radio, airplanes, rockets, satellites, air-born as well as submarine drones, TV, x-rays, mobiles, internet facilities, computers, nuclear technology, laser guns and thousands of other inventions including improvements in medicine, comfort and luxuries took place during the century. Taking in view the over all revolution in knowledge and technology, the 20th century alone far exceeds the collective scientific knowledge and inventions by humankind from its very beginning up to year 1900 AD.

In spite of all this, the 20th century cannot be counted as a century of peace, happiness and welfare of the humankind. Unluckily, it turned to be by far the bloodiest and the most grotesque period of human existence on planet earth. Invention of numerous precision instruments, guided devices and missiles multiplied human miseries, desperation devastation and exploitation of the poor and the helpless people and nations in the world. Power, wealth and technological advancement was utilized to subjugate the weaker and the poor nations while the guided missiles were placed in the hands of misguided people blinded by their lusts for power, wealth and dominance over the world. Instead of promoting peace and prosperity in the world, the 20th century brought greater and greater devastation and miseries for the people on earth due to increased intolerance, avarice and hatred towards the members of our own species. The future historians if any

will, therefore, mention it as the century of ruthless and relentless violence in the world. Human rights and humaneness touched its abyss and mass suffering touched the skies. Mankind is, therefore, being driven towards its extinction unless they consciously revert to moral rectitude, justice and universal brotherhood of mankind on earth. About 1400 years ago the Qur'ān had forewarned mankind to refrain from wickedness admonishing them about elimination of humankind from the face of Earth. The Almighty said:

ظَهَرَ الْفَسَادُ فِي الْبَرِّ وَالْبَحْرِ بِمَا كَسَبَتْ أَيْدِي النَّاسِ لِيُذِيقَهُمْ بَعْضَ الَّذِي عَمِلُوا لَعَلَّهُمْ يَرْجِعُونَ

[Since they have become oblivious of God,] corruption has appeared on land and in the sea as an outcome of what men's hands have wrought: and so He will let them taste [the evil of] some of their doings, so that they might return [to the right path].³⁹¹

By the time of the revelation of the Qur'ān, humankind had polluted only the lands and the seas with their nefarious designs. The Lord, therefore, did not mention human wickedness in the skies as we find it today. Anyhow, keeping in view the conduct of human beings on earth, the Qur'ān forewarned them to refrain from too much greed,³⁹² injustice and aggression against other creatures of the Lord on earth. The Lord said:

The blame is only against those who oppress men and wrongdoing and insolently transgress beyond bounds through the land, defying right and justice: for such there will be a penalty grievous.³⁹³

Today, however, human inventions and stockpiling of atomic devices in the world are touching a flash point which may destroy not only all types of living beings on earth but may also make it uninhabitable for centuries thereafter. The powerful nations in the world today are bent upon depriving all poor and weaker nations on earth of their freedom, natural resources and other possessions. They have attained good expertise in carving out convincing excuses to do so. Vast resources at their disposal are utilized to transfer the entire guilt to

³⁹¹ Al-Quran 30:41 Muhammad Asad.

³⁹² Ibid, 102:1-2, 92:8-11.

³⁹³ Ibid, 42:42.

the vanquished people while all good attributes are reserved to glorify their own selves. Such people in fact have no consciousness of God nor do they fear Him. It was for such transgressors that a stern warning was given by the Lord:

1. Woe unto every slandering traducer, 2. Who hath gathered wealth (of this world) and arranged it. 3. He thinketh that his wealth will render him immortal. 4. Nay, but verily he will be flung to the Consuming One. 5. Ah, what will convey unto thee what the Consuming One is! 6. (It is) the fire of Allah, kindled, 7. Which leapeth up over the hearts (of men). 8. Lo! it is closed in on them 9. In outstretched columns.³⁹⁴

By pondering over the contents of verses quoted above read with verse 41 of chapter 30 of the Qur'ān quoted earlier, we get the clear-cut message of the Almighty that men will be recompensed with the "outcome of what men's hands have wrought: and so He will let them taste [the evil of] some of their doings". It will be the fire of Allah, kindled, which leapeth up over the hearts (of men). Lo! It is closed in on them in outstretched columns.

Isn't it a clear portent of the elimination of man from earth through the explosion of the outstretched columns such as nuclear weapons and missiles etc? Humankind must, therefore, ponder the revelation of the Almighty.

Only turning to the Lord with sincere repentance and obedience to His commandments especially those teaching universal brotherhood, equality of rights, justice and mercy with each other can be the only ray of hope for human survival on earth. It's a pity that even the modern illumination period has utterly failed to reduce the inner darkness of human souls which stands soiled to such an extent that was unknown to humankind before the 20th century.

The powerful modern and the so-called most civilized nations in the world had been following the path of the ancient Empires with most advanced and destructive

³⁹⁴ Ibid, ch. 104, Muhammad M. Pikthal.

technology in their hands. Such powers also enjoy facilities of powerful media and technologies to keep their true aims concealed even from their own people. Sources of information, therefore, are actively engaged to provide disinformation to the masses. Instead of crude methods to squeeze the vanquished people in the olden days, the modern empires have hundreds of other methods to enslave the poor and weaker nations and to deprive them of all their wealth and resources through expansion of corporate sectors throughout the world. These corporations are strangling the indigenous and smaller industries and hampering the trades throughout the world. Mr. Perkins observes that:

Corporations are highly effective at channeling brilliant ideas into concrete action. But their dream of maximizing profits without regard for the environmental and social costs, their orientation toward pillaging resources and promoting debt and materialism, has been disastrous. It is time for a new dream that is based on serving the earth, the public, and future generations — not just of humans but of all beings.³⁹⁵

It was perhaps for such reasons that Islam had laid down the golden principle of aid and trade by enjoining that:

Believers! Do not devour one another's possessions wrongfully; rather than that, let there be trading by mutual consent. You shall not kill yourselves. Surely Allah is ever Compassionate to you. And whoever does this by way of transgression and injustice him shall We surely cast into the Fire; that indeed is quite easy for Allah.³⁹⁶

Maoulana Maududi comments on this verse that:

The expression 'wrongfully' embraces all transactions which are opposed to righteousness and which are either legally or morally reprehensible. By contrast, 'trade' signifies the mutual transfer of benefits between the parties concerned, such as that underlying those transactions in which one person provides whatever satisfies the needs of another person and is paid in return. 'Mutual consent' means that the exchange should be free of undue pressure, fraud and deception. Although bribery and interest apparently represent transactions based on mutual consent, closer examination reveals that such consent takes place by constraint and under

³⁹⁵ John Perkins, *The New Confessions of an Economic Hit Man*, p. 291.

³⁹⁶ Al-Qur'ān 4:29-30 (Maoududi).

pressure. In games of chance, too, the participants seem to consent freely to the outcome. This kind of consent, however, is due to the expectation entertained by the participants that they will win. No one takes part anticipating loss. Fraudulent transactions also seem to be based on the mutual consent of the parties concerned. That kind of consent, however, is based on the false assumption that no fraud is involved in the transaction. Nobody who knew that he would be subjected to fraud would consent to be a party to that transaction.³⁹⁷

Economic Subjugation of the World

▪ ***EHM***

During a conversation at a dinner at Quito in 1968, a seismologist working for Texaco informed John Perkins that his duty was to prepare a report which will be used to justify huge bank loans to the country (Ecuador) and to persuade Wall Street to invest in Texaco and other business that would benefit from the oil boom. Debt servitude, therefore, is one of the most effective tools to enslave the poor economies in the world. We shall be discussing the same in detail subsequently. Here is another modern technique to conquer different lands.

Instead of deploying their own armies, the most advanced nations in the world utilize the military and other resources of the underdeveloped nations to promote their own cause. The seismologist, therefore, disclosed that:

To begin with, we control the military. We pay their salaries and buy them their equipment. They protect us from the Indians who don't want oil rigs on their lands. In Latin America, he who controls the army controls the president and the courts. (...) Remember, countries like this have long histories of coups. If you take a good look, you'll see that most of them happen when the leaders of the country don't play our game."³⁹⁸

³⁹⁷ Abul A'la Mawdudi, *Towards Understanding the Qur'ān*, tr. by Zafar Ishaq Ansari, (London: The Islamic Foundation, 1989), Vo. II, p. 32.

³⁹⁸ John Perkins, *The New Confessions of an Economic Hit Man*, (London: Ebury Press, 2016), p. 9.

The Economic Hit Man (EHM) of USA would convince the leader of a backward nation by pleading that:

All he had to do was sign off on a World Bank loan that would hire US corporations to build infrastructure projects in his country.

Then I casually mentioned that a refusal would bring in the jackals. "Remember," I said, "what happened to ..." I rattled off a list of names like Mossedegh of Iran, Arbenz of Guatemala, Allende of Chile, Lumumba of the Congo, Diem of Vietnam. "All of them," I said, "were overthrown or ..." — I ran a finger across my throat — "because they didn't play our game."³⁹⁹

The success of an Economic Hit Man would, therefore, ensure promotion of the global empire of the supreme power in the world.

If an EHM was completely successful, the loans were so large that the debtor was forced to default on its payments after a few years. When this happened, we EHMs, like the Mafia, demanded our pound of flesh. This often included one or more of the following: control over United Nations votes, the installation of military bases, or access to precious resources such as oil. Of course, the debtor still owed us the money — and another country was added to our global empire.⁴⁰⁰

▪ ***The EHM at Indonesia***

Before describing the experience of the EHM at Indonesia, we may quote from John Perkins about the background of Indonesia. He records:

When Columbus set sail in 1492, he was trying to reach Indonesia, known at the time as the Spice Islands. Throughout the colonial era, it was considered a treasure worth far more than the Americas. Java, with its rich fabrics, fabled spices, and opulent kingdoms, was both the crown jewel and the scene of violent clashes between Spanish, Dutch, Portuguese, and British adventurers. The Netherlands emerged triumphant in 1750, but even though the Dutch controlled Java, it took them more than 150 years to subdue the outer islands.⁴⁰¹

The Japanese had invaded Indonesia during World War II. Following the Japanese surrender, there had been a 4-5 years struggle against Netherlands when after a

³⁹⁹ Ibid, p. 12.

⁴⁰⁰ Ibid, p. 13-14.

⁴⁰¹ Ibid, p. 32.

domination of more than three centuries over 17500 islands, Netherlands lowered its flag in Java in 1949. Sukarno emerged as the leader of independent Indonesia and in 1963, he became president of Indonesia for life. Later on his alliance with communist governments in the region was the excuse for USA and other western countries to check the trend. There was a coup against the Sukarno government and top military officials and ultimately General Suharto took over as president of Indonesia in 1968. Three to five hundred thousand people were killed during the coup. Indonesia too had vast oil resources. The apparent efforts to save the country from communism, therefore, concealed the ambitions of economic dominations of the country by the corporatocracy of USA and other western powers. Mr. Perkins observes that:

A string of subsequent US presidents—most notably Taft, Wilson, and Franklin Roosevelt—relied on it to expand Washington's Pan-American activities through the end of World War II. Finally during the latter half of the twentieth century, the United States used the Communist threat to justify expansion of this concept to countries around the globe, including Vietnam and Indonesia.⁴⁰²

The scholars observe that Modern Empires are based on four pillars i.e. fear, debt, insufficiency and the divide and conquer mindset. US corporations, as such, are deceiving, abusing and economically exploiting the developing countries.

Although the top leaders of the world powers had been taking utmost care to conceal their true goals yet in spite of their helplessness the under developed countries like Indonesia had not been totally oblivious of the game behind the play. It was perhaps in early 70s that Mr. Perkins was invited to watch a puppet show at Bandung. He describes that:

After completing a classic selection from the ancient texts of the Ramovana, the dalang produced a puppet of Richard Nixon, complete with the distinctive long nose and sagging jowls. The US president was dressed like Uncle Sam, in a

⁴⁰² Ibid, p. 68.

stars-and-stripes top hat and tails. He was accompanied by another puppet, which wore a three-piece pin-striped suit. The second puppet carried in one hand a bucket decorated with dollar signs. He used his free hand to wave an American flag over Nixon's head in the manner of a slave fanning a master.

A map of the Middle and Far East appeared behind the two, the various countries hanging from hooks in their respective positions. Nixon immediately approached the map, lifted Vietnam off its hook, and thrust it to his mouth. He shouted something that was translated as "Bitter! Rubbish. We don't need any more of this!" Then he tossed it into the bucket and proceeded to do the same with other countries.

I was surprised, however, to see that his next selection did not include the domino nations of Southeast Asia. Rather, they were all Middle Eastern countries – Palestine, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia, Iraq, Syria, and Iran. After that, he turned to Pakistan and Afghanistan. Each time, the Nixon doll screamed out some epithet before dropping the country into his bucket, and in every instance, his vituperative words were anti-Islamic: "Muslim dogs," "Mohammad's monsters," and "Islamic devils."⁴⁰³

John Perkins continues that:

Then Nixon said something that made my scalp tingle when Rasy translated it.

"Give this one to the World Bank. See what it can do to make us some money off Indonesia." He lifted Indonesia from the map and moved to drop it into the bucket, but just at the moment another puppet leaped out of the shadows. This puppet represented an Indonesian man, dressed in batik shirt and khaki slacks, and he wore a sign with his name clearly printed on it. "A popular Bandung politician," Rasy explained.

This puppet literally flew between Nixon and bucket Man and held up his hand.

"Stop!" he shouted. "Indonesia is sovereign."

The crowd burst into applause. Then Bucket Man lifted his flag and thrust it like a spear into the Indonesian, who staggered and died a most dramatic death.⁴⁰⁴ (...)

Several days later the popular Bandung politician, whose puppet stood up to Nixon and was impaled by bucket Man, was struck and killed by a hit-and-run driver.⁴⁰⁵

The puppet show, as such, was not only an eye opener for countries like Indonesia but also a wonderful insight

⁴⁰³ Ibid, p. 54.

⁴⁰⁴ Ibid, p. 54-55.

⁴⁰⁵ Ibid, p. 57.

depicting ingeniousness of the Dalang at Bandung. Mr. Perkins also recounted his conversation with a female university student who observed that US agencies were looking at states like Indonesia as they were some bunch of grapes from which you could pick or choose. "Keep England, Eat China and throw away Indonesia. (...) The West – especially its leader, the US – is determined to take control of all the world, to become the greatest empire in history. It has already gotten very close to succeeding".⁴⁰⁶

The Congo Free State 1886-1908 was a spill over from the 19th century. The World War I and II, the Vietnam War, The Korean War, the Gulf War and the Iraq War, during the 20th century had been the most tragic incidents of the foreign invasions in the human history. Besides this, the Russian civil war (1917-1922) took a toll of about 9 million. The democides during the Lenin's regime (1917-1924) exceeded 4 million, during Hitler's Chancellery (1933-1945) 20 million and Stalin's regime (1922-1952) took the life of another 20 million people. To refresh the memories of our readers, therefore, we shall be giving brief comments on the worldwide catastrophes taking place during 20th century. Keeping in view all this and taking into account the prevailing designs of the superpowers in the world today, we can visualize a total elimination of mankind through their own planning and misdeeds.

▪ ***Congo Free State (1886-1908)***

E. D. Moral had estimated that Congo's population began with an original 20 or 30 million people. In spite of wide differences in the reports, we observe that no estimate fell below 20 millions. In 1911 an official census was taken which was not published in Belgium yet it had been reported in one of the British councilor's dispatches. It revealed that only 8.5 million people were left. Genocide, therefore, might have caused the loss

⁴⁰⁶ Ibid, p. 56.

ranging between 8 millions and 21.5 millions.⁴⁰⁷ Main credit for this holocaust goes to Belgium with only a smaller part to France.

▪ **October Revolution of Russia (1917)**

Among the earthshaking revolutions during the 20th century was the Bolshevik revolution of Russia in the year 1917. The revolution was based on the teachings of Karl Marx (1818-1883) who has been described as one of the most influential figures in human history. His books *Communist Manifesto* (1848) and *Das Kapital* (1867) were written under the influence of G. W. F. Hegel.⁴⁰⁸ Both Hegel and Karl Marx held that societies progress through class struggle and the working class should unite to conquer the political power to establish a classless society i.e. communism to be run or to be supervised by a free association of producers. Karl Marx concluded that the history of all hitherto existing societies is the account of class struggles. He, therefore, interpreted the entire human history in terms of materialism. God had no part to play in the world and spirituality as well as moral ethics were just useless terms. A passage from the preface to his 1843 'A Contribution to the Critique of Hegel's Philosophy of Right' sums up his understanding of religion:

Religious suffering is, at one and the same time, the expression of real suffering and a protest against real suffering. Religion is the sigh of the oppressed creature, the heart of a heartless world, and the soul of soulless conditions. It is the opium of the people. The abolition of religion as the illusory happiness of the people is the demand for their real happiness. To call on them to give up their illusions about their condition is to call on them to give up a condition that requires illusions.⁴⁰⁹

Marxism, therefore, was bent upon eliminating all ruling families, landlords and richer classes of the society. They were stanch enemies of all religions including Christianity, Islam and Judaism. Their treatment with

⁴⁰⁷ Mathew White, *necrometrics.com* (©1999-2010). For further details see 'Belgian Congo', *Encyclopedia Britannica*, Vol. III, (1966), p. 414-418.

⁴⁰⁸ German philosopher of the late enlightenment (1770-1831).

⁴⁰⁹ Sikivu Huthinson, *Godless Americana Race and Religious Rebels* (Los Angeles: Infidels Books, 2013), 167-168.

Tzar Family and the Muslim population, temples and Madrassas is evident from the following:

Shortly after the 1917 revolution, Czar Nikola and all his household, including his children in cradles, were killed in the forests of Bryansk. The number of people who were killed or died of hunger and destitution, as a result of the bloody revolution that reigned over Russia from 1917 until 1947, was 63,800,000. The following figures and documents are given to demonstrate manifestly what an irreligious regime, founded on blood and bones, will bring to the countries it invades. These documents are collected from very reliable sources. How unfortunate those are who do not wake up!

THE TEMPLES RUINED IN RUSSIA

Fourteen thousand large and small mosques in Turkestan, 8,000 in Caucasus and Crimea, and 4,000 in Tataristan and Main Kurdistan were destroyed. In Bukhara city alone, 360 mosques were destroyed. Only one madrasa (school) was left and it is now used as a museum of atheism. And in Samarqand city, the Ulugh Bey madrasa survives as a museum of atheism, and two churches are used for indoor basketball and volleyball.

MEN OF RELIGION MURDERED

More than 270,000 Muslim religious scholars were killed. Others were exiled to camps in Siberia, where a cold temperature of 65°C below zero reigns. As for religious people, more than three million people were martyred on account of their religious beliefs in Turkestan, alone. When they entered Afghanistan in December 1979, the Russians immediately attacked the villages. They confiscated all sorts of food, clothing, household utensils and jewellery. They killed the Muslims they came across, women or children alike. For example, when they entered the town of Kunday with tanks, they bombarded the great mosque with artillery and martyred hundreds of Muslims while they were praying. The above-given figures on the communists' terrible massacre or banishment to Siberian camps of those who opposed the revolution and paganism portray an alarming scene of savagery that should be a lesson for all humanity.⁴¹⁰

Marx's appeal, however, had in it a great attraction for the masses. During 1917 to 1922, all industries, agricultural lands and properties were nationalized. This also included Russian banks where bank accounts were confiscated. Church properties and bank accounts were

⁴¹⁰ *The Proof of Prophethood*, 9th Ed. (Istanbul: Hakikat Kitabevi, Waqf Ikhlas Publications No. 9, 1989), p. 62.

seized. All foreign debts were repudiated. Wages of the laborers were fixed at higher rates and a shorter working day i.e. of 8 hours was introduced.

Although the change introduced some initial boost up in the production and the economy of the Soviet Union for some years but soon inherent defects of the socialist system came to light during actual practice of the socialism / communism. The revolution had, however, cost from 9 to 12 million lives of land owners and feudal lords resisting the revolutionists to deprive them of their properties.

Due to mismanagement and lack of personal interests, there had been ever-decreasing trend in production. The atrocities against the dissenters had no limits. While a large number of nonconformists were exiled to Siberia, millions of others were interned or killed through NKVD in the Soviet Union. About 4 million democides occurred during the Lenin regime from 1917-1924 and a minimum of 20 million during Stalin's regime 1924-1953.⁴¹¹ Some relief in the human conditions could, however, be seen only after dissolution of the Soviet Union in 1991.

Human Miseries during the World Wars

▪ *The First World War*

It was a global War which began on 28 Jul, 1914 and lasted up to 11 Nov, 1918. It was fought between the Allies i.e. the British Empire, France and the Russian Empire on one side against the central powers of Germany, and Austro-Hungary on the other. Later on Italy, Japan and United States joined the Allies while Ottoman Empire and Bulgaria joined the Central Powers. The war ended in the allied victory in 1918. One of its great impacts was the end of the German, the Russian, the Ottoman and the Austro-Hungarian Empires. The Wikipedia has provided us with the following details of casualties and losses during the First World War.

⁴¹¹ Mathew White, Historical Atlas of 20th Century, (necrometrics.com, ©1999-2010).

	Allied Powers	Central Powers
Military Dead	5525000	4386000
Military Wounded	12831500	8388000
Military Missing	4121000	3629000
Total	22477500	16103000

As such, the death toll of military personnel comes to $5525000 + 4386000 = 9911000$. Another source gives us the figure of 15 million dead during the war. The 2nd source might also have included the civilian deaths during the war.⁴¹²

Skipping over other details of tortures, miseries and violence especially against the women and children, we proceed to a short description of the World War II.

▪ **The Second World War**

This war lasted from 1939 to 1945. It involved all of the great powers and many other countries in the world. The war ended with Allies' victory causing collapse of Nazi Germany and fall of Japanese and the Italian Empires. Casualties and losses have been assessed in the following:

	Allied Powers	Axis Powers	Total
Military Dead	16 million	8 million	24 Million
Civilian Dead	45 million	Over 4 million	49 Million
Total	61 million	12 million	73 million

Although we find no figures for the total number of the wounded people yet it might have been at least twice the number of the dead. The Soviet Union alone had lost $\frac{1}{4}$ of its total population during 1939-1945. The analysis also reveals an alarming increase in the number of the civilian deaths as compared to the First World War. In the Second World War civilian death casualties of the Allies were three times as compared to their military personnel. This, therefore, is a warning for the civilians throughout the world because in the event of any

⁴¹² Ibid.

nuclear warfare in future they will be the main sufferers in terms of the loss of lives and property. The top most politicians, scientists, manipulators of wars and senior military personnel will be safe underneath the mountains or underground bunkers. Only the innocent masses will have to bear the brunt of the war.

Kat Conolly has reported that:

Winston Churchill was effectively a war criminal who sanctioned the extermination of Germany's civilian population through indiscriminate bombing of towns and cities. (...) The British government set out at the start of the Second World War to destroy as many German cities and kill as many of their inhabitants as possible. Civilian deaths were not collateral damage, he says, but rather the object of the exercise. He argues that Churchill had favoured a strategy of attacking the civilian population centres from the air some 20 years before Hitler ordered such raids. (...) Britain's war leader is quoted during the First World War as saying: "Perhaps the next time round the way to do it will be to kill women, children and the civilian population".⁴¹³

From the above, we can read the minds of the modern European leaders about humankind and especially the women and the children. Even in 1943 the British and Americans began the combined bomber offensive against Germany with the goals to disrupt the German war economy, reduce German morale and "de-house" the civilian population.⁴¹⁴ For this, the readers are also advised to study the impact of the Atomic Bombs at Hiroshima and Nagasaki in August 1945.

For paucity of space, we cannot go into the details of human atrocities in the Nazi concentration camps and slavery as well as forced labor from the war prisoners and others in different countries during and after the World War II. Nazi racial policy is believed to have encouraged excessive brutality against what it considered to be inferior people of whom there had been mass executions at the German hands. Americans too did not lag behind while dealing with the Japanese after their surrender in 1945. During the Second World War

⁴¹³ Kate Connolly, *The Telegraph*, 19 Nov 2002, (The Telegraph Media Group, United Kingdom, 2002).

⁴¹⁴ Wikipedia, s.v. WWII.

the US senior officers opposed taking of prisoners on the grounds that it needlessly exposed American troops to risks. Many times prisoners of wars were shot during transport. There had been a widespread American "conviction that Japanese were 'animals' or subhuman and unworthy of the normal treatment accorded to prisoners of War."⁴¹⁵ The US Armies, therefore, preferred to kill most of the Japanese soldiers after their surrender. Meanwhile, there had been many stories of their raping Japanese women. In the following, we find a glimpse of the same:

"The widespread rape of Okinawan women by American servicemen." Although Japanese reports of rape were largely ignored at the time, academic estimates have been that as many as 10,000 Okinawan women may have been raped.⁴¹⁶

▪ ***Rape during Occupation of Germany***

It has been reported that:

As Allied troops entered and occupied German Territory during the later stages of World War II, Mass rapes took place both in connection with combat operations and during the subsequent occupation. Most Western scholars agreed that the majority of the rapes were committed by Soviet servicemen, while some Russian historians maintain that these crimes were not widespread. The wartime-rapes had been surrounded by decades of silence.⁴¹⁷

Historians have written about sexual violence committed by the armies of the Western Allies and the Red Army as these forces fought their way into the Third Reich and during the period of occupation. (...) The majority of the assaults were committed in the Soviet occupation zone; estimates of the numbers of German women raped by Soviet soldiers have ranged up to 2 million. According to historian William Hitchcock, in many cases women were the victims of repeated rapes, some as many as 60 to 70 times. At least 100,000 women are believed to have been raped in Berlin, based on surging abortion rates in the following months and contemporary hospital reports, with an estimated 10,000 women dying in the aftermath. Female deaths in connection with the rapes in Germany, overall, are estimated at

⁴¹⁵ *Wikipedia*, s.v. 'United States War Crimes'.

⁴¹⁶ *Ibid.*

⁴¹⁷ *Wikipedia*, s.v. 'Rape During the Occupation of Germany'..

240,000. Antony Beevor describes it as the "greatest phenomenon of mass rape in history", and has concluded that at least 1.4 million women were raped in East Prussia, Pomerania and Silesia alone.⁴¹⁸

In *Taken by Force*, J. Robert Lilly estimates the number of rapes committed by U.S. servicemen in Germany to be 11,040. As in the case of the American occupation of France after the D-Day invasion, many of the American rapes in Germany in 1945 were gang rapes committed by armed soldiers at gunpoint.⁴¹⁹

After the fighting moved on to German soil, there was a good deal of rape by combat troops and those immediately following them. The incidence varied between unit and unit according to the attitude of the commanding officer. In some cases offenders were identified, tried by court martial, and punished. The army legal branch was reticent, but admitted that for brutal or perverted sexual offences against German women, some soldiers had been shot – particularly if they happened to be Negroes. Yet I know for a fact that many women were raped by white Americans. No action was taken against the culprits. In one sector a report went round that a certain very distinguished army commander made the wisecrack, 'Copulation without conversation does not constitute fraternization. (...) A typical victimization with sexual assault by drunken American personnel marching through occupied territory involved threatening a German family with weapons, forcing one or more women to engage in sex, and putting the entire family out on the street afterward. As in the eastern sector of the occupation, the number of rapes peaked in 1945, but a high rate of violence against the German and Austrian populations by the Americans lasted at least into the first half of 1946, with five cases of dead German women found in American barracks in May and June 1946 alone. Carol Huntington writes that the American soldiers who raped German women and then left gifts of food for them may have permitted themselves to view the act as a prostitution rather than rape. Citing the work of a Japanese historian alongside this suggestion, Huntington writes that Japanese women who begged for food "were raped and soldiers sometimes left food for those they raped."⁴²⁰

French troops took part in the invasion of Germany, and France was assigned an occupation zone in Germany. Perry Biddiscombe quotes the original survey estimates that the French for instance committed "385 rapes in the Constance area; 600 in Bruchsal; and 500 in Freudenstadt."

⁴¹⁸ Ibid.

⁴¹⁹ Ibid.

⁴²⁰ Ibid.

French soldiers were alleged to have indulged in an orgy of rape in the Höfingen District near Leonberg. Katz and Kaiser, though they mention rape, found no specific occurrences in either Höfingen or Leonberg compared to other towns. (...) According to Norman Naimark, French Moroccan troops matched the behavior of Soviet troops when it came to rape, in particular in the early occupation of Baden and Württemberg, providing the numbers are correct.⁴²¹

▪ ***They Raped Every German Female from 8 to 80***

Under this title, Antony Beevor reports that:

"Red Army soldiers don't believe in 'individual liaisons' with German women," wrote the playwright Zakhar Agranenko in his diary when serving as an officer of marine infantry in East Prussia. "Nine, ten, twelve men at a time - they rape them on a collective basis."⁴²²

He further recorded that:

"many Germans declare that all German women in East Prussia who stayed behind were raped by Red Army soldiers". Numerous examples of gang rape were given - "girls under 18 and old women included". (...) The commander of one rifle division is said to have "personally shot a lieutenant who was lining up a group of his men before a German woman spread eagled on the ground". But either officers were involved themselves, or the lack of discipline made it too dangerous to restore order over drunken soldiers armed with submachine guns.⁴²³

At another place in the article it has been written that General Tsygankov recorded that:

A group of 35 provisional lieutenants on a course and their battalion commander entered the women's dormitory in the village of Grutenberg and raped them. (...) In Dahlem, Soviet officers visited Sister Kunigunde, the mother superior of Haus Dahlem, a maternity clinic and orphanage. The officers and their men behaved impeccably. In fact, the officers even warned Sister Kunigunde about the second-line troops following on behind. Their prediction proved entirely accurate. Nuns, young girls, old women, pregnant women and mothers

⁴²¹ Ibid.

⁴²² Antony Beevor, *The Guardian*, May 2002.

⁴²³ Ibid.

who had just given birth were all raped without pity.⁴²⁴

About Berlin it has been written that:

Estimates of rape victims from the city's two main hospitals ranged from 95,000 to 130,000. One doctor deduced that out of approximately 100,000 women raped in the city, some 10,000 died as a result, mostly from suicide. The death rate was thought to have been much higher among the 1.4 million estimated victims in East Prussia, Pomerania and Silesia. Altogether at least two million German women are thought to have been raped, and a substantial minority, if not a majority, appear to have suffered multiple rape.⁴²⁵

▪ ***Rapes in England and France***

Here is another report of the rapes:

A study by Robert J. Lilly estimates that a total of 14,000 civilian women in England, France and Germany were raped by American GIs during World War II. It is estimated that there were around 3500 rapes by American servicemen in France between June 1944 and the end of the war and one historian has claimed that sexual violence against women in liberated France was common.⁴²⁶

Mao Zedong's Regime (1949-1975)

Historical Atlas of 20th Century, provides us with a long narrative of human death toll during Mao Zedong's regime totaling about 46.5 million to 72 million in the People's Republic of China. For further details please refer to the Mathew White, Historical Atlas of 20th Century, (necrometrics.com, ©1999-2010).

The Vietnam War

The Vietnam War also known as 2nd Indo-China War or Resistance War against America started in November 1955 and ended with the fall of Saigon on 30 April 1975 AD. Tracing the background of Vietnam wars, we start from 1850 AD when France began its conquest of Indonesia. The 1884 A.D. treaty of Hue formed the basis of French colonial rule in Vietnam for next 7 decades. In 1940, Japan invaded Indo-China and took control of it.

⁴²⁴ Ibid.

⁴²⁵ Ibid.

⁴²⁶ Wikipedia, s.v. 'United States War Crimes'.

The tussle between Japan and France aided by its allies was continuing when during 1944-45 a deep famine struck northern Vietnam during which, about 2 million people died of starvation. The death toll, therefore, amounted to 40 percent of the Total 10 million people in the affected area. This instance is enough to depict the cruelty as well as apathy of the so-called most civilized, rich and prosperous nations against the poor and the most helpless people in the world. Humaneness could nowhere be seen even during the war at Vietnam from 1955 to 1975, between the Communists backed by China and Russia against the government of South Vietnam supported by USA, Philippines and their anti-communist allies. Estimates of the number of Vietnamese soldiers and civilians killed vary from 800,000 to 3.1 million. This was in addition to about 300,000 Cambodians, 200,000 Laotians and 58,220 US service members.⁴²⁷ Over all losses are estimated more than 4 million on both sides.

In March 2013, Mr. Perkins had a chance to visit the museum of the Hỏa Lò prison which had been formerly known as Hanoi Hilton. He narrates that:

I just stood there gawking in disbelief at what I now realized was a guillotine.

"My God!" Judy exclaimed. She pointed at an inscription on the wall.

In English, it explained that Hỏa Lò had originally been a French prison, built in the late 1800s' and that the French had used the guillotine to decapitate hundreds of Vietnamese. As I wandered around the room, I continued to read explanations posted on the walls. This entire section of the prison had once held Vietnamese women as prisoners of the French. Hundreds had been tortured and raped here. A cutaway in one of the walls exposed a solitary confinement cell, about the size of a doghouse. A life-size, shackled manikin sat hunched over on the cement floor, crammed into the small space like a doll in a box.

I froze to that spot, staring at the manikin and wondering what motivated human beings to do such horrible things to each other. How could the French, who prided themselves on their art, their literature – their humanity – have been so

⁴²⁷ *Wikipedia*, s.v. 'Vietnam War'.

cruel? What had driven them to erect a guillotine? To rape and torture Vietnamese women? I recalled that they'd justified it with religious ideals. Spreading Catholicism. But the real goal was a commercial one, like that of more modern EHMs. The wealthy French upper classes had sent the young men of the poor to the killing fields of Indochina so their corporations could profit off opium, tea, coffee, and indigo. Those young Frenchmen had fallen victim themselves to the depravations of war; in addition to becoming murderers, they'd turned into torturers and rapists. I looked around. Neither the attendant nor Judy was anywhere in sight. (...) A cave-like cell. Although it was totally empty, I had a vivid impression that it had been filled with frightened women, ones who had already been raped and tortured or were awaiting their turns. I shut off my light and looked down the corridor toward the courtyard.⁴²⁸

As we arrived at a dimly lit room, I was shocked to see that it was populated by two lines of people, sitting facing each other. Then I realized that these also were manikins — replicas of Vietnamese men whose legs were shackled to the floor. I walked between the two lines. Each manikin was different from its neighbors, and amazingly lifelike. Some, despite their shackled legs, were holding others in compassionate poses, obviously offering solace to despairing comrades. One was ministering to the wounded arm of another. All of them were emaciated; their protruding ribs told the story of famished men.⁴²⁹

Mr. Perkins also entered a gallery of photographs taken long after the French departed. He noted the contrast as stated in the following:

The Vietcong had treated American prisoners far more humanely than the French had treated the Vietnamese. I had no idea whether this was true. I did know that US soldiers had been tortured into confessing that what they and their country had done was criminal.

Looking at those photographs, my mind flashed to the famous photo of a naked Vietnamese child fleeing her napalmed village, and to more recent ones of hooded men at the Abu Ghraib prison in Iraq — handcuffed, bleeding, beaten, dragged across the floor on leashes, and attacked by vicious dogs, all at the hands of US soldiers and CIA agents. I hurried on to the next room.⁴³⁰

Avoiding over-burdening the book with further details about raping the women, atrocities with the citizens,

⁴²⁸ John Perkins, *The New Confessions of an Economic Hit Man*, p. 244.

⁴²⁹ Ibid, p. 245.

⁴³⁰ Ibid, p. 246.

humiliation and starvation during the war, we shall be ending the discussion with a report from the Wikipedia:

The defoliants, which were distributed in drums marked with color-coded bands, included the "Rainbow Herbicides"—Agent Pink, Agent Green, Agent Purple, Agent Blue, Agent White, and, most famously, Agent Orange, which included dioxin as a by-product of its manufacture. About 12 million gallons (45,000,000 L) of Agent Orange were sprayed over Southeast Asia during the American involvement. A prime area of Ranch Hand operations was in the Mekong Delta, where the U.S. Navy patrol boats were vulnerable to attack from the undergrowth at the water's edge. In 1961 and 1962, the Kennedy administration authorized the use of chemicals to destroy rice crops. Between 1961 and 1967, the U.S. Air Force sprayed 20 million U.S. gallons (75,700,000 L) of concentrated herbicides over 6 million acres (24,000 km²) of crops and trees, affecting an estimated 13% of South Vietnam's land. In 1965, 42% of all herbicide was sprayed over food crops. Another purpose of herbicide use was to drive civilian populations into RVN-controlled areas.

(...) As of 2006, the Vietnamese government estimates that there are over 4,000,000 victims of dioxin poisoning in Vietnam, although the United States government denies any conclusive scientific links between Agent Orange and the Vietnamese victims of dioxin poisoning. In some areas of southern Vietnam, dioxin levels remain at over 100 times the accepted international standard.

The U.S. Veterans Administration has listed prostate cancer, respiratory cancers, multiple myeloma, Diabetes mellitus type 2, B-cell lymphomas, soft-tissue sarcoma, chloracne, porphyria cutanea tarda, peripheral neuropathy, and spina bifida in children of veterans exposed to Agent Orange.⁴³¹

Such narratives are enough to prove that the US authorities had no fear from any other power on earth nor they acknowledged God or their accountability before Him.

The Korean War

Korea was ruled by Japan from 1910 until the closing days of World War II. In the 2nd half of 1945, the Soviet Union, in agreement with US occupied North Korea while US forces occupied the southern part. Both governments

⁴³¹ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Vietnam War'.

claimed to be the legitimate governments of Korea and neither side accepted the border as permanent. The conflicts, therefore, escalated into open war. North Korean forces were supported by the Soviet Union and China while the southern government had the support of 21 countries of the UNO. United States provided 80% of the UN military personnel. The fighting ended on July 27, 1953 when an armistice was signed.

There are varying reports about the death toll and the wounded people. The Chinese and North Koreans estimated that about 390,000 soldiers from the United States, 660,000 soldiers from South Korea and 29,000 other UN soldiers were "eliminated" from the battlefield. Recent scholarship has put the full battle death toll on all sides at just over 1.2 million.

Ch. 11 -

CONTROLLING THE WORLD POLITICS AND ECONOMY

Covert US Involvements in Regime Change

The 2nd half of the 20th century was the golden period for the dominance of USA throughout the world. From early fifties to the end of the 20th century, the US had achieved great success to dominate all newly freed colonies in different parts of the world. One of the extensively used weapons was US involvement in regime change of different countries where the people in power did not see eye to eye with USA or created any hindrance in their interests. Scholars, therefore, observe that the coup d'état in Syria (1949), Iran (1953), Guatemala (1956), Congo (1960), South Vietnam (1963), Bolivia (1964 and 1971), Brazil (1964), Ghana, Chile (1973), Turkey (1980) and some other acclaimed achievements of USA to eliminate the regimes that did not follow their commands. Besides this, the subversive operations of CIA and British SIS in Albania (1949-1953), The Covert Operations in Tibet (1951-1956), the Afghanistan Operation Cyclone (1979-1989), Libyan Civil War and the present Syrian Civil War continuing since 2011 are evident examples of US policy to dominate the Islamic countries and to exercise effective control over their resources. Since it is impossible for us to cover all such instances here, it may suffice to discuss the covert operations of USA affecting some of the conspicuous personalities in the world who tried to diverge from the directions of the supreme power in the world.

▪ **Che Guevara**

Che (1928-1967) was an Argentine Marxist revolutionary, physician, author, guerrilla leader,

diplomat and military theorist. He was a major figure of Cuban revolution. In 1950 he had a 4500 km expedition through the rural provinces of northern Argentina on a bicycle installed with a small engine. In another expedition of 9 months during 1951, he traversed another 8000 kilometers on Motorcycle through most of the South American countries. Guevara's craving to explore the world to observe the miseries, the poverty and the diseases suffered by human beings radicalized his senses to fight against all types of exploitation and economic subjugation of the helpless states and the people. He, therefore, started leading various groups of rebels or armed people and in January 1959, he took over final control of Havana the capital of Cuba. Fidel Castro took six more days to arrive there. Time Magazine named Che as one of the 100 most influential people of the 20th century.

On June 12, 1959, Castro sent Guevara out on a three-month tour of 14 mostly Bandung Pact countries (Morocco, Sudan, Egypt, Syria, Pakistan, India, Sri Lanka, Burma, Thailand, Indonesia, Japan, Yugoslavia, Greece) and the cities of Singapore and Hong Kong. Sending Guevara away from Havana allowed Castro to appear to be distancing himself from Guevara and his Marxist sympathies, which troubled both the United States and some of Castro's July 26 Movement members. While in Jakarta, Guevara visited Indonesian president Sukarno to discuss the recent revolution in Indonesia and to establish trade relations between their two nations. Both men quickly bonded, as Sukarno was attracted to Guevara's energy and his relaxed informal approach; moreover they shared revolutionary leftist aspirations against western imperialism. Guevara next spent 12 days in Japan (July 15–27), participating in negotiations aimed at expanding Cuba's trade relations with that nation. During the visit, he refused to visit and lay a wreath at Japan's Tomb of the Unknown Soldier commemorating soldiers lost during World War II, remarking that the Japanese "imperialists" had "killed millions of Asians". In its place, Guevara stated that he would instead visit Hiroshima, where the American military had detonated an atom-bomb 14 years earlier. Despite his denunciation of Imperial Japan, Guevara also considered President Truman a "macabre clown" for the bombings, and after visiting Hiroshima and its Peace Memorial Museum, he sent back a postcard to Cuba stating, "In order to

fight better for peace, one must look at Hiroshima.⁴³²

Che became an international guerrilla leader to fight against exploitation, economic aggression and subjugation of various nations by USA and other super powers of Europe. Meanwhile, Castro had increased his political power and in addition to Guevara's assignment as minister of industries, he also gave additional position of finance minister as well as president of National Bank to Guevara. It has been reported that:

In an effort to eliminate social inequalities, Guevara and Cuba's new leadership had moved to swiftly transform the political and economic base of the country through nationalizing factories, banks, and businesses, while attempting to ensure affordable housing, healthcare, and employment for all Cubans. However, in order for a genuine transformation of consciousness to take root, Guevara believed that such structural changes would have to be accompanied by a conversion in people's social relations and values. (...) Guevara urged all individuals to view each other as equals and take on the values of what he termed "el Hombre Nuevo" (the New Man). Guevara hoped his "new man" would ultimately be "selfless and cooperative, obedient and hard working, gender-blind, incorruptible, non-materialistic, and anti-imperialist". To accomplish this, Guevara emphasized the tenets of Marxism-Leninism, and wanted to use the state to emphasize qualities such as egalitarianism and self-sacrifice, at the same time as "unity, equality, and freedom"⁴³³ became the new maxims.⁴³⁴

The French Philosopher Jean-Paul Sartre (1905-1980) had a meeting with Guevara at his office in Havana in March 1960. Later on he observed that Che was "the most complete human being of our time".⁴³⁵

It was due to Guevara's mindset that developed close Soviet-Cuban relationships. Although his tenets of Marxism-Leninism and human welfare through moral incentives were extremely idealistic yet instead of achieving a success, his reforms caused a rapid drop in

⁴³² Wikipedia s.v. '*Che Guevara*'.

⁴³³ Che Guevara perhaps did not know that the Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) had attained all such goals during his short missionary period of about 23 years i.e. from 610 to 632.

⁴³⁴ Wikipedia s.v. '*Che Guevara*'.

⁴³⁵ Ibid.

productivity leading to rise in absenteeism. By December 1964, Che Guevara had emerged as revolutionary statesman of world stature. In his hour long address at UN on December 11, 1964, he severely criticized the United Nation's inability to confront the brutal policies of apartheid in South Africa and US policy towards their black population. He said:

Those who kill their own children and discriminate daily against them because of the color of their skin; those who let the murderers of blacks remain free, protecting them, and furthermore punishing the black population because they demand their legitimate rights as free men—how can those who do this consider themselves guardians of freedom?⁴³⁶

It has been further stated that:

On December 17, Guevara left New York for Paris, France, and from there embarked on a three-month world tour that included visits to the People's Republic of China, North Korea, the United Arab Republic, Algeria, Ghana, Guinea, Mali, Dahomey, Congo-Brazzaville and Tanzania, with stops in Ireland and Prague. While in Ireland, Guevara embraced his own Irish heritage, celebrating Saint Patrick's Day in Limerick city.⁴³⁷

Che Guevara, thereafter, visited Moscow, Algiers and Congo etc. to arouse consciousness in the people. He also visited countries like Bolivia under a disguise in late 1966. There he started to build up a guerrilla force operating under the name ELN (National Liberation Army of Bolivia) and attained certain successes against Bolivian Army during early months of 1967. Meanwhile, US government sent a team of CIA special activities division commandos and other operatives into Bolivia to aid the anti-insurrection effort.

On October 7, 1967, an informant apprised the Bolivian Special Forces of the location of Guevara's guerrilla encampment in the Yuro ravine. On the morning of October 8, they encircled the area with two battalions numbering 1,800 soldiers and advanced into the ravine triggering a battle where Guevara was wounded and taken prisoner while leading a detachment with Simeón Cuba Sarabia. The biographer Jon Lee Anderson reports Bolivian Sergeant Bernardino Huanca's account: that as the Bolivian Rangers approached, a twice-

⁴³⁶ Ibid.

⁴³⁷ Ibid.

wounded Guevara, his gun rendered useless, threw up his arms in surrender and shouted to the soldiers: "Do not shoot! I am Che Guevara and I am worth more to you alive than dead."⁴³⁸

Guevara was, thereafter, tied up and taken to a school house. On October 9, Bolivian president Rene Barrientos ordered that Guevara be killed.

A little later, Guevara was asked by one of the Bolivian soldiers guarding him if he was thinking about his own immortality. "No," he replied, "I'm thinking about the immortality of the revolution." A few minutes later, Sergeant Terán entered the hut to shoot him, whereupon Guevara reportedly said: "I know you've come to kill me. Shoot, coward, you are only going to kill a man." Terán hesitated, then pointed his self-loading M2 carbine at Guevara and opened fire, hitting him in the arms and legs. Then, as Guevara writhed on the ground, apparently biting one of his wrists to avoid crying out, Terán fired another burst, fatally wounding him in the chest. Guevara was pronounced dead at 1:10 pm local time according to Rodríguez. In all, Guevara was shot nine times by Terán. This included five times in his legs, once in the right shoulder and arm, and once in the chest and throat.⁴³⁹

His life and legacy remain contentious. Some observe complex character of duality, one who was "able to wield the pen and submachine gun with equal skill" while prophesying that "the most important revolutionary ambition was to see man liberated from his alienation. While various opinions about him differ widely, many notable individuals have lauded him as a great hero. Among them are people like Nelson Mandela, Jean Paul Sartre, Graham Greene and Susan Sontag. Frantz Fanon professed Guevara to be "the world symbol of the possibilities of one man". Stokely Carmichael eulogized him that "Che Guevara is not dead, his ideas are with us".⁴⁴⁰ There are many others who rank him with some of the greatest leaders in the world. Leaving it to our readers to decide about his true position, we conclude the life sketch of Che Guevara with the remarks that he

⁴³⁸ Ibid.

⁴³⁹ Ibid.

⁴⁴⁰ Ibid.

was killed as an insurrectionist with the combined efforts of the then Bolivian regime and the CIA.

▪ **Muhammad Musaddiq of Iran**

Muhammad Musaddiq (1882-1967) was an Iranian politician who served as a democratically elected prime minister of Iran from 1951 to 1953. His government had introduced progressive, social and political reforms including nationalization of the Iranian oil industry, which had been under British control since 1913. Musaddiq's government was overthrown in a coup d'état aided by CIA and the British Secret Intelligence Service. John Perkins states that:

Such conspiracies – secret actions to accomplish illegal goals – happened when I was just beginning school, such as the CIA coup that replaced the democratically elected Iranian prime minister, Mossadegh, with the shah, in 1953. They continued during my high school years' consider the CIA-supported Bay of Pigs invasion of Cuba, in 1963. But I became most aware of them when I was an EHM and the CIA arranged the assassinations of my two clients, Ecuador's Roldos and Panama's Torrijos, in 1981. Then, as I began writing the original of this book in 2002, there was the US-led conspiracy to overthrow Venezuela's president, Hugo Chavez. After that came the conspiratorial lie about weapons of mass destruction in Iraq. This was followed by a flurry of conspiracies against leaders and governments in the Middle East and Africa.⁴⁴¹

On 21 December 1953, Musaddiq was sentenced to 3 years solitary confinement in a military prison. Upon hearing of his sentence, he is reported to have said:

The verdict of this court has increased my historical glories. I am extremely grateful you convicted me. Truly tonight the Iranian nation understood the meaning of constitutionalism.⁴⁴²

Musaddiq was kept under house arrest at his Ahmad Abad residence until his death on 5th March 1967. He was buried in his own home so as to prevent a political furor. It has been observed that:

The secret U.S. overthrow of Mossadegh served as a rallying point in anti-US protests during the 1979 Iranian

⁴⁴¹ John Perkins, *The New Confessions of an Economic Hit Man*, p. 217.

⁴⁴² Welles Hangen, (22 December 1952) Mossadegh Gets 3-Year Jail Term, *The New York Times*.

Revolution and to this day he is one of the most popular figures in Iranian history.⁴⁴³

Mr. John Perkins writes that:

Looking back, I am struck by the innocence of those days. In many respects, we were still caught up in the old approaches to empire building. Kermit Roosevelt had shown us a better way when he overthrew an Iranian democrat and replaced him with a despotic king.⁴⁴⁴

Long after Musaddiq, we find the incidence of coup against Muhammad Nawaz Sharif the democratically elected prime minister of Pakistan on 12-9-1999 and takeover by Gen. Parvez Musharraf, a military dictator who was prepared to look after the interests of USA than to pursue policies of independent decision by Pakistan.

▪ **Muhammad Raza Shah Pahlavi**

During Mr. Perkins' discussion with President Torrijos of Panama, the latter observed:

The Shah had come to power in 1941, after the British and Soviets over-threw his father, whom they accused of collaborating with Hitler. "Can you imagine," Torrijos asked, "being part of a plot to dethrone your own father?"⁴⁴⁵

Mr. Perkins continues that:

We talked about how the tables were turned on the shah in 1951, and how his own premier, Mohammad Mossadegh, forced him into exile. Torrijos knew, as did most of the world, that it had been the CIA that labeled the premier a Communist and that stepped in to restore the shah to power. However, he did not know— or at least did not mention — the parts Claudine had shared with me, about Kermit Roosevelt's brilliant maneuvers and the fact that this had been the beginning of a new era in imperialism, the match that had ignited the global empire conflagration.⁴⁴⁶

Shah of Iran was just a puppet of the US government.

The power of OPEC grew during the 1970s, and the shah became an increasingly influential world leader. At the same time, Iran developed one of the most powerful military forces

⁴⁴³ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Mohammad Mossadegh'.

⁴⁴⁴ John Perkins, *The New Confessions of an Economic Hit Man*, p. 87.

⁴⁴⁵ Ibid, p. 77.

⁴⁴⁶ Ibid, p. 77-78.

in the Muslim Middle East.⁴⁴⁷

▪ **Omar Torrijo of Panama**

One of the instances, we find in Omar Torrijo (1929-1981) the hero and president of Panama. People took him as champion of human rights. The US had installed a puppet government in Panama in 1903 which was believed to have formalized the first canal treaty with USA. It has been recorded that:

Interestingly, the treaty was signed by U.S. Secretary of State Hay and a French engineer, Philippe Bunau-Varilla, who had been part of the original team, but it was not signed by a single Panamanian. In essence, Panama was forced to leave Colombia in order to serve the United States, in a deal struck by an American and a Frenchman — in retrospect, a prophetic beginning.⁴⁴⁸

The treaty was, therefore, a fake agreement not acceptable to Torrijo who claimed full independence for Panama with absolute controlling rights over the Canal. Hence, According to Perkins:

Torrijos did get it back. In that same year, 1977, he successfully negotiated new treaties with President Carter that transferred the Canal Zone and the Canal itself over to Panamanian control. Then the White House had to convince the U.S. Congress to ratify it. A long and arduous battle ensued. In the final tally, the Canal Treaty was ratified by a single vote. Conservatives swore revenge.⁴⁴⁹

Torrijos was committed to turning his nation into a haven for fugitives from persecution, a place that would offer asylum to refugees from both sides of the political fence, from leftist opponents of Chile's Pinochet to right-wing anti-Castro guerrillas. Many people saw him as an agent of peace, a perception that earned him praise throughout the hemisphere. He also developed a reputation as a leader who was dedicated to resolving differences among the various factions that were tearing apart so many Latin American countries: Honduras, Guatemala, El Salvador, Nicaragua, Cuba, Colombia, Peru, Argentina, Chile, and Paraguay. His small nation of two million people served as a model of social reform and an inspiration for world leaders as diverse as the labor organizers who plotted the dismemberment of the Soviet Union and Islamic

⁴⁴⁷ Ibid, p. 117-118.

⁴⁴⁸ Ibid, p. 66.

⁴⁴⁹ Ibid, p. 115-116.

militants like Muammar Gadhafi of Libya.⁴⁵⁰

As against Torrijos, the US stuck to the dogma of:

Manifest Destiny – the doctrine, popular with many Americans during the 1840s, that the conquest of North America was divinely ordained; that God, not men, had ordered the genocide of native North Americans, the destruction of forests, the near-extinction of buffalo, the draining of swamps, the re-channeling of rivers, and the development of an economy that depends on the continuing exploitation of labor and natural resources. (...) The Monroe Doctrine, originally enunciated by President James Monroe in 1823, was used to take Manifest Destiny a step further when, in the 1850s and 1860s, it was used to assert that the United States had special rights all over the hemisphere, including the right to invade any nation in Central or South America that refused to back US policies. (...) Finally during the latter half of the twentieth century, the United States used the Communist threat to justify expansion of this concept to countries around the globe, including Vietnam and Indonesia.⁴⁵¹

Torrijos also negotiated the Torrijos-Carter Treaties over the Panama Canal, signed on September 7, 1977. These treaties passed United States sovereignty over the Canal Zone to Panama, with a gradual increase in their control over it, leading to complete control on Dec 31, 1999.⁴⁵²

About 4 years after signing the treaty, Omar Torrijos died at the age of 52 on July 31, 1981. His aircraft had crashed at Cerro Marta in Panama during a fine weather. His death caused national mourning around the country, especially in the poor areas.

Torrijos died shortly after the inauguration of US President Ronald Reagan, just two months after Ecuadorian president Jaime Roldós died in strikingly similar circumstances. Like other Republicans when the canal treaty came before the U.S. Senate, Reagan alleged that Democratic U.S. president Jimmy Carter had "given away" a U.S. asset—the Panama Canal and the Canal Zone.⁴⁵³

Torrijos' suspicious death generated charges and speculation that he was the victim of an assassination plot. For instance, in pre-trial hearings in Miami in May 1991, Manuel Noriega's

⁴⁵⁰ Ibid, p. 67.

⁴⁵¹ Ibid, p. 67-68.

⁴⁵² *Wikipedia*, s.v. 'Omar Torrijos'.

⁴⁵³ Ibid.

attorney, Frank Rubino, was quoted as saying "General Noriega has in his possession documents showing attempts to assassinate General Noriega and Mr. Torrijos by agencies of the United States."⁴⁵⁴

▪ **Jacobo Árbenz of Guatemala**

Jacobo Arbenz was a Guatemalan military officer who was born in 1913 to a middle class family. Later on he was the 2nd democratically elected president of Guatemala serving from 1951 to 1954 and a major figure in the 10 year Guatemalan revolution. His landmark program of agrarian reforms was applauded across Latin America.

At the time, less than 3 percent of Guatemalans owned 70 percent of the land. Arbenz promised to help the poor dig their way out of starvation, and after his election he implemented a comprehensive land reform program.

"The poor and middle classes throughout Latin America applauded Arbenz," Torrijos said. "Personally, he was one of my heroes."⁴⁵⁵

Arbenz was a staunch opposer of the United Fruit Company of the USA and also opposed domination of US corporations throughout Guatemala. His government believed that the US companies were main obstacles to progress in their country.

American historians observed that "to the Guatemalans it appeared that their country was mercilessly exploited by foreign interests which took huge profits without making any contribution to the nation's welfare". In 1953, 200,000 acres (81,000 ha) of uncultivated land was expropriated under Arbenz' agrarian reform law, and the company was offered compensation at the rate of 2.99 US dollars to the acre, twice what it had paid when buying the property. This resulted in further lobbying in Washington, particularly through Secretary of State John Foster Dulles, who had close ties to the company. The company had begun a public relations campaign to discredit the Guatemalan government; overall, the company spent over a half-million dollars to influence both lawmakers and members of the public in the US that the Guatemalan government of Jacobo Árbenz needed to be overthrown."⁴⁵⁶

⁴⁵⁴ Ibid.

⁴⁵⁵ John Perkins, *The New Confessions of an Economic Hit Man*, p. 78.

⁴⁵⁶ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Jacobo Arbenz'.

Consequently, Arbenz was ousted in the 1954 Coup d'état sponsored by CIA. After his removal, Arbenz and his family was kept in the Mexican embassy at Guatemalan city while the CIA initiated a new set of operations against Arbenz intended to discredit and damage his reputation. The press also was made to play a negative role against Arbenz and he had to suffer humiliation at the airport while leaving the country. After living a miserable life in exile in various countries, Arbenz died in Mexico in 1970. It was about 41 years after his death that in October 2011 the Guatemalan government issued an official apology for Arbenz's overthrow. The Great hero, therefore, had to pay a huge price for his patriotism.

▪ ***Jaime Roldós Aguilera***

Jaime Roldós (1940-1981) was a university professor and attorney in his late 30s. He gained reputation as a populist and nationalist who campaigned for presidency of Ecuador on the plea of attaining independence from the influence of powerful outside forces and to utilize national resources for the benefit of the sons of the soil. Incidentally, with the indication of the high possibility of oil beneath the surface some members of the Summer Institute of the Linguistics (SIL) apparently an evangelical missionary group from the United States suspected of its sinister collusion with the oil companies started persuading indigenous people to remove from the land. They were induced to lease or sell their lands to the oil companies. Roldos stood for the rights of his people to determine their own destiny. He desired to formulate the hydrocarbon's policy in such manner that may bring the greatest benefit to the largest percentage of the population. During his augural address in August 1979, he said:

We must take effective measures to defend the energy resources of the nation. The State [must] maintain the diversification of its exports and not lose its economic independence . . . Our decisions will be inspired solely by national interests and in the unrestricted defense of our

sovereign rights.⁴⁵⁷

Roldós' stance of human rights and independence of the nation was apparently intolerable for the superpower's policies. On May 26, 1981, Roldós died with his wife and his defense minister during the plane crash on the slopes of Huairapungo Mountain. He was just 37 years and left no survivors. With this, we can also remember the plane crash of Gen. Zia-ul-Haq of Pakistan on 17-8-1988 which people believe was due to clash of some interests of Pakistan with those of USA.

▪ **Manuel Noriega**

General Manuel Antonio Noriega Moreno was born in 1934 and served as military officer and politician in Panama. Noriega had been rendering valuable services to US by his link with CIA, besides being a major cocaine trafficker and supplier of illicit weapons and military equipment to US backed counter insurgency forces throughout Central and South America during 1989 US invasion of Panama. He was removed from power, captured, detained as a prisoner of war and flown to the United States. John Perkins has, therefore, observed that:

Of all the thousands of rulers, potentates, strongmen, juntas, and warlords the Americans have dealt with in all corners of the world, General Manuel Antonio Noriega is the only one the Americans came after like this. Just once in its 225 years of formal national existence has the United States ever invaded another country and carried its ruler back to the United States to face trial and imprisonment for violations of American law committed on that ruler's own native foreign turf. (...) Noriega was arrested, flown to Miami, and sentenced to forty years' imprisonment; at that time, he was the only person in the United States officially classified as a prisoner of war.⁴⁵⁸

John Perkins, however, failed to mention thousands of others carried away as prisoners of war from Afghanistan and many suspects from Pakistan to US or elsewhere. In spite of the fact that the supreme court of Pakistan had been stressing hard on the government to recover the missing persons but the results had been far

⁴⁵⁷ John Perkins, *The New Confessions of an Economic Hit Man*, p. 153.

⁴⁵⁸ Ibid, p. 187.

from satisfactory. Such people can, therefore, be treated among the missing believed killed.

Noriega's prison sentence ended in December 2007. And after facing many other prosecutions at France, he returned to Panama in December 2011 to face further trials and sentence there.

▪ **France-Albert René**

France-Albert René has been president of Seychelles⁴⁵⁹ from 1977 to 2004. Since he was not inclined to follow the dictates of USA, therefore, a team of jackals was sent to assassinate René. A report about the incident explains that:

They were discovered when their chartered plane landed in Seychelles. A firefright broke out. The Jackals – surrounded, outnumbered, and outgunned – hijacked an Air India 707. Six of them who believed the plane would be shot down as soon as it took off, opted to remain behind and try to escape by blending in with the local people. The rest forced the 707 crew to fly them to South Africa.

The six who remained were caught and imprisoned. Four were sentenced to death; the other two drew long prison terms. As soon as the 707 landed, it was surrounded by South African security forces. The jackals were arrested and imprisoned.⁴⁶⁰

Being lucky to survive René had learnt the lesson to synchronize with US power machine since 1981 till his peaceful retirement in 2004.

▪ **Rafael Correa**

Rafael Correa an Ecuadorian politician was born in 1963. About him John Perkins observes that:

As soon as he took office, in 2007, Correa set about fulfilling his campaign promises. He refused to pay many of Ecuador's debts, proclaiming that they had been signed by CIA-supported military dictators who had been bribed by EHMs (a fact I knew only too well was true). He closed the United States' largest military base in Latin America, withdrew

⁴⁵⁹ an Archipelago in the Indian Ocean.

⁴⁶⁰ John Perkins, *The New Confessions of an Economic Hit Man*, p. 222.

support for the CIA's war on rebels in neighboring Colombia, ordered Ecuador's central bank to divert to domestic projects funds that had been invested in the United States, oversaw the rewriting of the constitution to make his country the first in the world to codify the inalienable rights of nature (a threat to the bottom lines of big business), and joined ALBA, an alternative to Washington's plan to increase US hegemony through its Free Trade Area of the Americas.

But the most courageous of Correa's actions was his renegotiation of oil revenues on "profits" – an all-too-common arrangement between big oil and economically developing countries, which historically has cheated these countries through creative accounting. Instead, the oil would belong to Ecuador, and the companies could only collect a fee for each barrel they produced.⁴⁶¹

Subsequently, a coup was attempted against Correa who succeeded to retain power:

Many observers believe that the failed coup was a warning, not a bona fide attempt to depose the president. Whatever the truth, Correa almost immediately reversed his policies toward big oil. He announced that he would auction off huge blocks of the rain forest to the oil companies.⁴⁶²

John Perkins has further recorded that:

Although the attempted coup against Correa had failed, on another level it had succeeded. I figured the jackals had learned from that other "failed" coup in Seychelles that sometimes it is better to let a president survive. Sufficiently scared, he or she then plays the game, joins the ranks of all those other heads of state who know that to resist is futile. In any case, Correa had reversed his previous position and had posted "for sale to oil companies" signs on more than six million acres in thirteen areas of the Amazon, known as "blocks."⁴⁶³

Although opposition to the oil auction had weakened Correa's resolve as quoted above yet the oil companies continued to receive various benefits due to the relaxations in the government policies.

⁴⁶¹ Ibid, p. 231-232.

⁴⁶² Ibid, p. 236-237.

⁴⁶³ Ibid, p. 255.

▪ **Manuel Zelaya**

Manuel Zelaya of Honduras was born in 1952 and served as president of Honduras from 2006 to 2009. He was overthrown during a coup. It has been said that:

The coup happened because Zelaya had advocated a 60 percent increase in the minimum wage, which had infuriated two US companies, Chiquita Brands International (formerly United Fruit) and Dole Food Company.⁴⁶⁴

▪ **Muammar Gaddafi**

Muammar Mohammed Abu Minyar Gaddafi (c. 1942-2011) was revolutionary chairman of the Libyan Arab Republic from 1969 to 1977. He was initially ideologically committed to Arab nationalism and Arab socialism but later on he rejected his earlier ideological commitments and encouraged economic privatisation from 1999, seeking rapprochement with Western nations. In 2011, an anti-Gaddafist uprising broke out in eastern Libya, led by the National Transitional Council (NTC) and resulting in the Libyan Civil War. NATO intervened militarily on the side of the NTC, bringing about the government's downfall. Retreating to Sirte, Gaddafi was captured and killed by NTC militants. While talking with Mr. Perkins, Mr. Uluç Özülker, the Turkish diplomat, scholar and former ambassador to Libya had observed that:

"Gadhafi encouraged other Arab countries to sell oil for Libya's gold dinar instead of dollars."

"Echoes of Saddam Hussein — and now Iran."

"Yes. As you know, Washington and Wall Street view attacks on the dollar and the Federal Reserve practically as acts of war. So, the US and Britain joined France and the other NATO countries in a 'civil war' that eventually overthrew and assassinated Gadhafi.

(...) "Turkey," Uluç said, "bought into the game of what you call the corporatocracy."

I pointed out that the globalizing corporate network had destabilized the world economy, building it on wars or the threat of war, debt, and abuse of the earth's resources — a death economy. "Less than 5 percent of the world's

⁴⁶⁴ Ibid, p. 233.

population,” I said, “lives in the US, and we consume more than 25 percent of the resources, while half the world suffers from desperate poverty.”⁴⁶⁵

Subsequently, Mr. Perkins observed that:

Our business and government leaders were taking the EHM system way beyond anything imaginable in my time – or in the era of the feudal emperors who, during the so-called Dark Ages, ruled the lands beneath my plane.

I couldn’t help suspecting that future historians would look back on the post-9/11 era as an even darker age.⁴⁶⁶

Joel a Panamanian businessman told John Perkins that memories may be short in the United States but not in Latin America.

We haven’t forgotten the role your corporations and Washington have played in politics all over this continent. Your government, your former secretary of state, Henry Kissinger, finally admitted to coups and assassinations they adamantly denied for years. We always knew what is now public record, that Guatemala’s democratically elected president, Jacobo Arbenz, was toppled in 1954 by the CIA because he opposed United Fruit, and that the coup that brought down Chile’s democratically elected president, Salvador Allende, in 1973 was initiated by ITT [International Telephone and Telegraph, one of the most powerful global corporations at that time] and was executed by the CIA.” He waved his arms toward the ships. “We haven’t forgotten Grenada, or Haiti, or the Argentine and Brazilian CIA-installed dictators, or Guatemala, Nicaragua, or El Salvador. We haven’t forgotten Torrijos or Roldós or the 2002 failed attempt to take out President Chávez.” He peered at me. “Need I go on?”⁴⁶⁷

Other Maneuvers to Promote Interests of USA

In the chapter titled ‘Pimping and Financing Usama bin Laden’, Mr. Perkins has recorded that:

Prince W. grew bolder as time went by. Eventually, he wanted me to arrange for Sally to come and live in his private cottage in Saudi Arabia. This was not an unheard-of request in those days; there was an active trade in young women between certain European countries and the Middle East. These women were given contracts for some specified period of time, and

⁴⁶⁵ Ibid, p. 252.

⁴⁶⁶ Ibid, p. 253.

⁴⁶⁷ Ibid, p. 234.

when the contracts expired, they went home to very substantial bank accounts.⁴⁶⁸

The plans we conceived in 1974 set a standard for future negotiations with oil-rich countries. In a way, SAMAJECOR was the next plateau after the one Kermit Roosevelt had established in Iran. It introduced an innovative level of sophistication to the arsenal of political-economic weapons used by a new breed of soldiers for global empire.⁴⁶⁹

More subtle and ultimately much more damaging was the role Saudi Arabia was allowed to play in financing international terrorism. The United States made no secret of its desire to have the House of Sa'ud bankroll Osama bin Laden's Afghan war against the Soviet Union during the 1980s, and Riyadh and Washington together contributed an estimated \$3.5 billion to the mujahideen. However, U.S. and Saudi participation went far beyond this.⁴⁷⁰

The evidence was indisputable: Saudi Arabia, America's longtime ally and the world's largest oil producer, had somehow become, as a senior Treasury Department official put it, "**the epicenter**" of terrorist financing... Starting in the late 1980s — after the dual shocks of the Iranian revolution and the Soviet war in Afghanistan — Saudi Arabia's quasi-official charities became the primary source of funds for the fast-growing jihad movement.

In some 20 countries the money was used to run paramilitary training camps, purchase weapons, and recruit new members...

Saudi largess encouraged U.S. officials to look the other way, some veteran intelligence officers say. Billions of dollars in contracts, grants, and salaries have gone to a broad range of former U.S. officials who had dealt with the Saudis: ambassadors, CIA station chiefs, even cabinet secretaries...

Electronic intercepts of conversations implicated members of the royal family in backing not only Al Qaeda but also other terrorist groups.⁴⁷¹

In Oct 2003, the *Vanity Fair Magazine* disclosed that:

The Bush family and the House of Sa'ud, the two most powerful dynasties in the world, have had close personal, business, and political ties for more than 20 years...

In the private sector, the Saudis supported Harken Energy, a struggling oil company in which George W. Bush was an

⁴⁶⁸ Ibid, p. 101-102.

⁴⁶⁹ Ibid, p. 104.

⁴⁷⁰ Ibid, p. 104-105.

⁴⁷¹ Ibid, p. 105.

investor. Most recently, former president George H. W. Bush and his longtime ally, **former Secretary of State James A. Baker III, have appeared before Saudis at fundraisers for the Carlyle Group, arguably the biggest private equity firm in the world.** Today, former president Bush continues to serve as a senior adviser to the firm, whose investors allegedly include a Saudi accused of ties to terrorist support groups...

Just days after 9/11, **wealthy Saudi Arabians, including members of the bin Laden family, were whisked out of the U.S. on private jets.** No one will admit to clearing the flights, and the passengers weren't questioned. Did the Bush family's long relationship with the Saudis help make it happen?⁴⁷²

New Forms of Slavery

Although the crude forms of slavery had ended throughout the world after 1993 yet the western powers had astutely invented many new alternatives through which the rich and powerful nations continued to keep the poor and oppressed people under constant slavery with them. Among such examples are the following:

Today, men and women are going into Thailand, the Philippines, Botswana, Bolivia, and every other country where they hope to find people desperate for work. They go to these places with the express purpose of exploiting wretched people — people whose children are severely malnourished, even starving, people who live in shanty-towns and have lost all hope of a better life, people who have ceased to even dream of another day.⁴⁷³

Today, we still have slave traders. They no longer find it necessary to march into the forests of Africa looking for prime specimens who will bring top dollar on the auction blocks in Charleston, Cartagena, and Havana. They simply recruit desperate people and build a factory to produce the jackets, blue jeans, tennis shoes, automobile parts, computer components, and thousands of other items they can sell in the markets of their choosing. Or they may elect not even to own the factory themselves; instead, they hire a local businessman to do all their dirty work for them.⁴⁷⁴

The old-fashioned slave trader told himself that he was dealing with a species that was not entirely human, and that

⁴⁷² Ibid, p. 106.

⁴⁷³ Ibid, p. 190.

⁴⁷⁴ Ibid, p. 191.

he was offering them the opportunity to become Christianized. He also understood that slaves were fundamental to the survival of his own society, that they were the foundation of his economy. The modern slave trader assures himself (or herself) that the desperate people are better off earning one dollar a day than no dollars at all, and that they are receiving the opportunity to become integrated into the larger world community. She also understands that these desperate people are fundamental to the survival of her company, that they are the foundation for her own lifestyle. She never stops to think about the larger implications of what she, her lifestyle, and the economic system behind them are doing to the world — or of how they may ultimately impact her children's future.⁴⁷⁵

▪ ***Peonage***

Peonage is a form of labor control that relied on debt to compel the worker.

Peonage results in a form of involuntary servitude that was outlawed by an 1867-United States Federal Statute. In spite of many laws passed against it, the peonage continues to persist even today.

▪ ***Application of Econometric Weapon***

Mr. Perkins States that:

It was exactly what we wanted: a tool that scientifically "proved" we were doing countries a favor by helping them incur debts they would never be able to pay off. In addition, only a highly skilled econometrician with lots of time and money could possibly comprehend the intricacies of Markov or question its conclusions. The papers were published by several prestigious organizations, and we formally presented them at conferences and universities in a number of countries. The papers — and we — became famous throughout the industry.⁴⁷⁶

Mr. Perkins writes that:

In the 1970s, economic hit men were executives and consultants at a few multinational corporations and consulting companies. Today's EHMs are executives and consultants at thousands of multinational corporations, consulting companies, investment funds, industry groups, and

⁴⁷⁵ Ibid, p. 191.

⁴⁷⁶ Ibid, p. 101-110.

associations – as well as an army of lobbyists that represents all of these.⁴⁷⁷

Economic Hit Men plan to bind various dictators or people at the helm of affairs through debts which cannot be repaid. Since people in power are corruptible, therefore, the economic hit men had been enticing long lines of dictators in the developing countries to accept servitude to debt.

Mr. Perkins records his observations about EHMs, especially, during his visit to Istanbul. He writes:

I thought about the core tools we EHMs used in my day: false economics that included distorted financial analyses, inflated projections, and rigged accounting books; secrecy, deception, threats, bribes, and extortion; false promises that we never intended to honor; and enslavement through debt and fear. These same tools are used today. Now, as then, many elements are present in each "hit," although that likely is evident only to someone willing to delve deeply into the story behind the story. Now, as then, the glue that holds all of this together is the belief that any means are justified to achieve the desired ends.⁴⁷⁸

▪ **Vulture Funds**

Vulture Fund is a fund which invests in companies or properties which are performing poorly and may therefore be undervalued. According to Perkins, these funds are:

one more example of how this EHM cancer has metastasized. After a country has defaulted and fallen into a state of economic chaos, these funds purchase that country's debt for a few cents on the dollar. Then, when the country's economy begins to recover, the funds demand payment of the debt, plus interest, often tacking on additional fees. Many take this a step further by suing businesses that try to work with the target country, thus compounding the damage by scaring off potential investors.

The twenty-six largest vultures have collected \$1 billion from the world's poorest countries, and still have another \$1.3 billion earmarked for collection. That \$1 billion is more than twice the budget of the International Committee of the Red Cross for all of Africa in 2011; it could finance the entire UN appeal for the famine in Somalia.

⁴⁷⁷ Ibid, p. 249.

⁴⁷⁸ Ibid, p. 249.

Vulture funds have gone after Argentina, Brazil, Congo-Brazzaville, Ecuador, Greece, Iceland, and Ireland, and they have their sights set on just about every other country with debt and economic problems, including Italy and other European countries. Although there are many examples, Peru's is a typical case.⁴⁷⁹

It has been further observed that:

Like so many activities promoted by EHMs, vulture funds not only devastate their target countries but also destabilize the global economy. According to Joseph Stiglitz, a Nobel laureate in economics and former senior vice president and chief economist at the World Bank:

In Argentina, the authorities' battles with a small number of "investors" (so-called vulture funds) jeopardised an entire debt restructuring agreed to — voluntarily — by an overwhelming majority of the country's creditors. In Greece . . . the country is forced into austerity policies that have contributed mightily to a 25 percent decline in GDP and have left its population worse off. In Ukraine, the potential political ramifications of sovereign-debt distress are enormous.⁴⁸⁰

The ultimate result of such robbery is vast disparity in the incomes of the people as stated in the following:

One percent of Americans received 95 percent of all the wealth created since the depression was officially pronounced as ended in 2009, while 90 percent of us became poorer. For every \$1 billion of wealth created, the average US citizen gets one dollar. Globally, eighty-five individuals own more resources than half of the world's population.⁴⁸¹

▪ ***Convict Leasing and Share Cropping***

The system of convict leasing began during Reconstruction and was fully implemented in the 1880s and officially ending in the last state, Alabama, in 1928. It persisted in various forms until it was abolished in 1942 by President Franklin D. Roosevelt during World War II, several months after the attack on Pearl Harbor involved the U.S. in the conflict. This system allowed private contractors to purchase the services of convicts from the state or local governments for a specific time period. African Americans, due to "vigorous and selective enforcement of laws and discriminatory sentencing," made up the vast majority of the convicts leased. Writer Douglas A.

⁴⁷⁹ Ibid, p. 272-273.

⁴⁸⁰ Ibid, p. 273-274.

⁴⁸¹ Ibid, p. 274.

Blackmon writes of the system:

It was a form of bondage distinctly different from that of the antebellum South in that for most men, and the relatively few women drawn in, this slavery did not last a lifetime and did not automatically extend from one generation to the next. But it was nonetheless slavery – a system in which armies of free men, guilty of no crimes and entitled by law to freedom, were compelled to labor without compensation, were repeatedly bought and sold, and were forced to do the bidding of white masters through the regular application of extraordinary physical coercion.⁴⁸²

Although the system of convict leasing had been adopted by many states of USA yet some were conspicuous for it. Alabama for example, began convict leasing in 1846 and the practice lasted until 1928. In 1898, some 73% of Alabama's entire annual state revenue came from convict leasing. (...) It persisted in various forms until it was abolished in 1942 by President Franklin D. Roosevelt during World War II.⁴⁸³ Frederick Douglass (1818 – 1895) the African-American social reformer, abolitionist, orator, writer, and statesman had, therefore, said that:

The Convict Lease System and Lynch Law are twin infamies which flourish hand in hand in many of the United States. They are the two great outgrowths and results of the class legislation under which our people suffer to-day.

▪ ***Everlasting Dependence on US Technology***

While serving with MAIN, Mr. Perkins' duty was:

[To] develop forecasts of what might happen in Saudi Arabia if vast amounts of money were invested in its infrastructure, and to map out scenarios for spending that money. In short, I was asked to apply as much creativity as I could to justifying the infusion of hundreds of millions of dollars into the Saudi Arabian economy, under conditions that would include US engineering and construction companies. (...) I understood, of course, that the primary objective here was not the usual –to burden this country with debts it could never repay– but rather to find ways that would assure that a large portion of petrodollars found their way back to the United States. In the process, Saudi Arabia would be drawn in, its economy would become increasingly intertwined with and dependent upon

⁴⁸² Wikipedia, s.v. 'Slavery in the United States'.

⁴⁸³ Ibid.

ours, and presumably it would grow more Westernized and therefore more sympathetic with and integrated into our system.⁴⁸⁴

Perkins, therefore, adds that:

I always kept in mind the true objectives: maximizing payouts to U.S. firms and making Saudi Arabia increasingly dependent on the United States. It did not take long to realize how closely the two went together; almost all the newly developed projects would require continual upgrading and servicing, and they were so highly technical as to assure that the companies that originally developed them would have to maintain and modernize them. In fact, as I moved forward with my work, I began to assemble two lists for each of the projects I envisioned: one for the types of design-and-construction contracts we could expect, and another for long-term service and management agreements. MAIN, Bechtel, Brown & Root, Halliburton, Stone & Webster, and many other U.S. engineers and contractors would profit handsomely for decades to come.⁴⁸⁵

⁴⁸⁴ John Perkins, *The New Confessions of an Economic Hit Man*, p. 91-92.

⁴⁸⁵ *Ibid.*, p. 94-95.

Ch. 12 -

NEW CRUSADES AGAINST THE ISLAMIC WORLD

Although there had been long term plans to support and promote Israel at the cost of the Islamic states in the Middle East, yet there had been a pause since 1967 war between Israel, Syria, Jordan and Egypt etc. The ultimate program was to subdue and overpower Islamic states in the Middle East i.e. around the Persian Gulf, Central Asian Muslim states and North African Muslim states like Libya. These, therefore, are new crusades against the Islamic world about which no predictions can be made at this moment. The ultimate purpose, however, is to usurp the lands and the natural resources of these under developed countries. The fresh start was taken from Operation OIL about which president George W. Bush has repeatedly said, Iraq is only the beginning.⁴⁸⁶

As regards the Muslim world, it is likely to be a target of crusades forever. David Icke has, therefore, pointed out that:

"... the plan is to engineer events, real and staged, that will create enormous fear in the countdown years to 2012. This includes a plan to start a Third World War either by stimulating the Muslim world into a 'holy war' against the West or by using the Chinese to cause global conflict. Maybe both."⁴⁸⁷

Under the circumstances, we will have to change the old supplication i.e. 'God Save the King' into 'God save humankind from the superpowers'.

⁴⁸⁶ *The Bush Agenda*, Title Flap.

⁴⁸⁷ David Icke, *The Biggest Secret*, (Valencia: Bertelsmann Industry Services Inc, California, USA 1999), p. 482.

Operation OIL

The First Iraq War (1990-1991) started under the name of Operation Desert Storm. Masses throughout the world were made to believe that Saddam Hussein had started terrorism by attacking Kuwait and threatening Saudi Arabia as well as other neighbors. USA and its allies were, therefore, compelled to intervene to restore peace and security in the region. The said justification concealed the fact that Iraq had been a target for military action of USA since a hundred years before the invasion of Kuwait. The plot to capture the oil resources of Iraq can be traced back to the first quarter of the 20th century. From the end of World War I in about 1918, the Western Europe was touching its lowest as regards their economic productive and defensive capabilities. USA during this period had emerged as a giant economic, military and political power in the World. European countries being vulnerable to Soviet power had virtually become America's protectorates.

Crusade for Oil

Referring to the aftermaths of World War I, Edwin Black provides us with the true background of the wars against Iraq:

True, the Senate had refused to ratify Wilson's League of Nations and therefore America was the only victor excluded from the spoils. But who supplied 80 percent of Britain's oil? America. Who fielded great armies on land, sea, and air, shoulder-shoulder with the Allies? America. Who was now being left out of the oil riches of Mesopotamia? Once again, America. President Woodrow Wilson demanded equality in the great new world order sketched by his Fourteen Points, specifically Point III: "The removal, so far as possible, of all economic barriers and the establishment of an equality of trade conditions among all the nations consenting to the peace."⁴⁸⁸

Britain at that occasion had secured international support to its mandate pledging "the natural resources of Mesopotamia are to be secured to the people of Mesopotamia and to the future Arab State to be

⁴⁸⁸ Edwin Black, *Banking on Baghdad*, p. 262-263.

established.”⁴⁸⁹ America’s response to the same was evident from the following:

Activism began in earnest at the September 27, 1919, meeting of the American Petroleum Institute in Colorado Springs, where the organization’s Committee on Foreign Relations launched its campaign for access to Iraqi oil. The committee, headed by standard Oil president Walter C. Teagle, resolved to use “diplomatic channels” to press the crusade.⁴⁹⁰ A formal approach was made to United States secretary of state Robert Lansing.⁴⁹¹

Most of the people in the world attribute the war between Kuwait and Iraq to the madness of Saddam Hussein. Their opinion seems to be guided by the one-sided propaganda under the control of USA and its allies. Scholars, finance policy experts and analysts of the wars, however, attribute the said war to globalization agenda of USA. Some of them even reveal the permanent support of USA for Israel and the Israeli attacks of 7 June, 1981 on Iraq as a prelude to the same. Following few lines may help us to have a glimpse of the corporate globalization agenda of USA as a step towards the imperial vision for the 21st century:

The corporations, the neoconservatives, and the George W. Bush administration are three interlocking groups with fluid demarcations. Iraq represents several things to these players: oil, wealth, regional power, and global power. Iraq presents them with the first opportunity for a truly imperial invasion [And] as president Bush has repeatedly said, Iraq is only the beginning.⁴⁹²

In this important book, renowned international trade and finance policy expert Antonia Juhasz exposes a radical corporate globalization agenda more befitting of a ruthless empire than a world leader of democracy. This agenda has been refined by leading members and allies of the Bush administration over decades and has reached its most aggressive implementation under George W. Bush. And Bush Agenda adherents hope it will outlast him.⁴⁹³

⁴⁸⁹ Ibid, p. 263.

⁴⁹⁰ It is evident from the above that Iraq war was, in fact, the crusade for oil.

⁴⁹¹ Edwin Black, *Banking on Baghdad*, (New Jersey: John Wiley & Sons, 2004), p. 263.

⁴⁹² *The Bush Agenda*, Title Flap.

⁴⁹³ Ibid.

The Americans, meanwhile had started to assert and to propagate about their belief in one all powerful God i.e. USA and one almighty Dollar. They acknowledged no God more powerful than USA. Their faith was further strengthened by the Second World War from which US emerged not only as the largest economy but also the supreme military power in the world. Referring to the events during the Second World War, Brzezinski writes that:

The Western imperial powers had emerged from the two world wars profoundly weakened, while the newly dominant America repudiated the imperial legacy of its European allies. President Roosevelt made no secret of his conviction that the US commitment to the liberation of Europe during World War II did not include the restoration of the colonial empires⁴⁹⁴ of Great Britain, France, the Netherlands, Belgium, or Portugal. However, Roosevelt's highly principled opposition to colonialism did not prevent him from pursuing an acquisitive US policy determined to gain a lucrative position for America in the key oil-producing Middle Eastern countries. In 1943, President Roosevelt not so subtly told Britain's ambassador to the United States, Lord Halifax, while pointing at a map of the Middle East, that "Persian oil is yours. We share the oil of Iraq and Kuwait. As for Saudi Arabian oil, it's ours."⁴⁹⁵

Although, all the nations in the world might have been taking USA as the champion of freedom and decolonization yet the policy had been prompted primarily by the interests of USA to have lion's share in the control and resources of the states attaining independence from the European powers.

▪ ***It's the Oil***

John Perkins reports that:

In addition to having abundant oil and water, Iraq is situated in a very strategic location. It borders Iran, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia, Jordan, Syria, and Turkey, and it has a coastline on the Persian Gulf. It is within easy missile-striking distance of both Israel and the former Soviet Union. Military strategists

⁴⁹⁴ Abolition of colonial rule and reduction in the prowess of the colonial powers had actually been necessary for establishment of future domination of USA as the only supreme political, economic and strategic power in the world. America, therefore, used its influence to liberate most of the colonies from the imperial powers.

⁴⁹⁵ Brzezinski, *Strategic Vision*, (New York: Basic Books, 2012), p. 13-14.

equate modern Iraq to the Hudson River valley during the French and Indian War and the American Revolution. In the eighteenth century, the French, British, and Americans knew that whoever controlled the Hudson River valley controlled the continent. Today, it is common knowledge that **whoever controls Iraq holds a trump card in the Middle East.**

Above all else, Iraq presented a vast market for American technology and engineering expertise. The fact that it sits atop one of the world's most extensive oil fields (by some estimates, even greater than Saudi Arabia's) ensured that it was in a position to finance huge infrastructure and industrialization programs. All the major players – engineering and construction companies; computer systems suppliers; aircraft, missile, and tank manufacturers; and pharmaceutical and chemical companies – were focused on Iraq.⁴⁹⁶

John Perkins also narrates outcome of his encounter with an Afghan near the Ground-Zero at New York. Seeing the world statistics, the Afghan observed that:

"The numbers tell us that **twenty-four thousand people die every day from hunger.**" I didn't bother to mention that slightly fewer than three thousand had died at Ground Zero on 9/11. (...) He nodded at the list I held. "Does it show beggars?" It did not, but I thought I remembered. "About eighty million in the world, I believe." "I was one." He shook his head, seemed lost in thought. We sat in silence for a few minutes before he spoke again. "I do not like begging. My child dies. So I raise poppies." "Opium?" He shrugged. "No trees, no water. The only way to feed our families." I felt a lump in my throat, a depressing sense of sadness combined with guilt. "We call raising opium poppies evil, yet many of our wealthiest people owe their fortunes to the drug trade."⁴⁹⁷

After listening to the old Afghan, John Perkins started wondering about the contribution of the present generation to the world they were passing on to their children. He says:

I wondered what they knew about Afghanistan — not the Afghanistan on television, the one littered with U.S. military tents and tanks, but the old man's Afghanistan. I wondered what those twenty-four thousand who die every day think. And then I saw myself again, sitting before a blank computer screen. I forced my attention back to Ground Zero. At the moment, one thing was certain: my country was thinking

⁴⁹⁶ John Perkins, *The New Confessions of an Economic Hit Man*, p. 194.

⁴⁹⁷ Ibid, p. 202-203.

about revenge, and it was focusing on countries like Afghanistan. But I was thinking about all the other places in the world where people hate our companies, our military, our policies, and our march toward global empire. I wondered, What about Panama, Ecuador, Indonesia, Iran, Guatemala, most of Africa?⁴⁹⁸

David Icke has reported from the book of Cathy O'Brien that:

Cathy O'Brien, a mind controlled slave to people like Father Bush and Dick Cheney for decades, saw at first hand what is really going on behind the smoke and mirrors. She writes in her book, *Trance-Formation Of America*:

"Saudi Arabia threaded in and out of most operations in which I was involved, primarily due to their purchase and routing of weapons, drugs, and blond-haired, blue-eyed programmed children. According to George Bush's claims, Saudi Arabia was in essence a controlled financial arm of the United States. Saudi Arabian King Fahd and his Ambassador to the US, Prince Bandar, provided a front for the unconstitutional and criminal covert operations of the US. This included the arming of Iraq and the Nicaraguan Contras; US involvement in the Bank of Credit and Commerce International (BCCI) scandal; and funding the Black Budget through purchase of our nation's children to be used as sex slaves and camel jockeys. "Since the US 'won' control of the drug industries through the so-called Drug Wars, Saudi Arabia played an integral part in their distribution. It was my experience that Bush's claim of having Saudi Arabia King Fahd as his puppet was, in fact, reality."⁴⁹⁹

Many other factors may help the readers and the analysts to probe into the causes of the war on Iraq. Although we cannot afford to provide a coherent account with chronological details yet certain hints can be helpful to the readers to interlink different factors from disjointed reports about prominent players in the game and their interest involved in the matter.

▪ ***Bush Family***

Here are certain observations about the Bush Family:

Al Martin, a retired Lieutenant Commander with the US Naval Reserves and Naval Intelligence, is the author of *The*

⁴⁹⁸ Ibid, p. 205.

⁴⁹⁹ David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World Trade Center Disaster*, p. 88-89. For further details the reader may peruse the relevant passages at pages 88-89.

Conspirators: Secrets of an Iran-Contra Insider." Martin claims to have seen at first hand the government drug trafficking, illegal weapons deals and an "epidemic of fraud" - corporate securities fraud, real estate fraud, insurance fraud and bank fraud. He writes of the Bush family:

"You have to look at the entire Bush Family in this context - as if the entire family ran a corporation called Frauds-R-Us. Each member of the family, George Sr., George Jr., Neil, Jeb, Prescott, Wally, etc., have their own specialty of fraud. George Jr's specialty was insurance and security fraud. Jeb's specialty was oil and gas fraud. Neil's specialty was real estate fraud. Prescott's specialty was banking fraud. Wally's specialty was securities fraud. And George Sr.'s specialty? All of the above."

This is the family of President Bush, who said after the WorldCom scandal that there must be "a new era of integrity" in American corporate life. **Anyone still think these guys are telling you the truth about September 11th?**⁵⁰⁰

The Bushes have always surrounded themselves with crooks, killers, and deeply disturbed friends and associates. It makes them feel at home, see. There are few better examples of this than their fellow Bohemian Grove⁵⁰¹ attendee, Dick Cheney, the White House Chief of Staff to President Ford; Father George's Defense Secretary at the time of the Gulf conflict; and Vice President to George W. Bush during the "war on terrorism".⁵⁰²

Cathy O'Brien in her book, *Trance-Formation Of America*, tells of her horrific experiences of Cheney when she was a victim of the Illuminati/CIA mind-control programmes and Cheney was Defense Secretary to Father George, who sexually and violently abused her and her little daughter, Kelly. Cathy details in her book how she was involved in drug running operations under instructions from Cheney, some of which involved Bandar bin Sultan (Cheney called him "the Sultan"). Bin Sultan was the deeply corrupt US ambassador to King Fahd of Saudi Arabia, the George Bush puppet and close associate of the bin Laden family and terrorist financiers like

⁵⁰⁰ Ibid, p. 97-98.

⁵⁰¹ Bohemian Grove is a 2,700 acre camp ground in Monte Rio, Calif, where some of the richest and most powerful men in the world gather for two weeks of heavy drinking, super-secret talks, druid worship. (...) Their purpose: to escape the "frontier culture," or uncivilized interests, of common men. The people that gather at Bohemian Grove who have included prominent business leaders, former U.S. presidents, musicians, and oil barons (...) a planning for the Manhattan Project took place at the grove, leading to the creation of the atom bomb. (Elizabeth Flock, *Washington Post*, 15, Jun, 2011)

⁵⁰² David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World Trade Center Disaster*, p. 102.

Khalid bin Mahfouz. Cathy also describes the constant and sickening brutality that she and her daughter suffered from Cheney and Bush.⁵⁰³

▪ ***The Policy***

Dick Cheney became best known during the Gulf Slaughter in 1991 when he worked to ensure the mass murder of hundreds of thousands of Iraqi civilians, now more than a million when you include the sanctions. Alongside him in that administration were President Father George (Carlyle Group), Secretary of State James Baker (Carlyle Group) and Colin Powell, Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff. Cheney stated that his "defence" policy was "Arms for America's friends and arms control for its potential foes." Which, of course, was baloney. The policy was "Sell second-rate arms to countries that we can then demonise for being armed and dangerous, thus giving us the excuse to use our state-of-the-art weapons to blow the shit out of their civilian population."⁵⁰⁴

▪ ***Bush Guarantee***

It is a pity that the top most politicians in the world like George W. Bush did not believe in universal brotherhood of man, equality of rights or peaceful co-existence in the world. For them peace, security, prosperity and freedom could only be guaranteed by war, imperialism and corporate globalization. The first para of chapter 9 of the book 'The Bush Agenda' contains the observation that:

Throughout his presidency, George W. Bush has guaranteed that we will live in a safer, more prosperous, freer, and more peaceful world if the United States remains at war and if countries throughout the world change their laws and adopt economic policies that benefit America's largest multinational corporations. The Bush Agenda has proven to have the opposite effect: increased deadly acts of terrorism, economic insecurity, reduced freedoms, and more war.⁵⁰⁵

▪ ***Frivolous Causes for Iraq War***

It is said that the result of Jeddah talks was an Iraqi demand for \$10 billion to cover the lost revenues for Rumelia. Kuwait agreed to pay \$9 billion.⁵⁰⁶ The Iraqi

⁵⁰³ Ibid, p. 102.

⁵⁰⁴ Ibid, p. 104.

⁵⁰⁵ Antonia Juhasz, *The Bush Agenda*, (New York: Regan Books, 2006), p. 309.

⁵⁰⁶ *Wikipedia*, s.v. 'Gulf War'.

response was to immediately order the invasion. Any conciliatory efforts could have easily convinced Iraq to forego \$.5 billion of their demand and Kuwait to pay another \$.5 billion to Iraq to avoid the war. Alas! there had been no efforts for a patch up. Consequently, on 2 August 1990 Iraq launched bombing on Kuwait city. Although there had been several warnings of USA to Iraq to stop the war yet they took no notice of the same. Their neglect of the warnings, therefore, led some people to believe that USA did not mean what they pretended to say. Actual response of USA, therefore, had been a surprise for Iraq and many other people thinking in that manner.

Preparations against Iraq had started since 2 August 1990 and the Operation Desert Storm covered the period from 17 January 1991 to 28 Feb 1991. Forces from 34 nations led by United States joined the operation against Iraq who besides threatening Saudi Arabia had invaded Kuwait. On 17 January 1991, the coalition military forces started aerial and naval bombardment on Iraq. They flew over 100,000 sorties dropping 88,500 tons of bombs on Iraq. These attacks were followed by a ground assault on 24 February 1991. Within a hundred hours after the ground campaign, the coalition forces had expelled Iraq from Kuwait and also advanced into Iraqi Territory. This brought an end to the war.

Although we find no reliable figures for the casualties or crimes against humanity, yet the **cost of war assessed by US sources was \$61.1 billion** out of which \$36 billion was contributed by Kuwait, Saudi Arabia and other Arab States of the Persian Gulf. **About \$16 billion was paid by Germany and Japan.** As such, the war which could have been averted just by negotiation causing loss of \$.5 billion to each side cost about 122 times more to the coalition. We find no estimates for the losses incurred by Iraq yet it possibly might have cost them about \$200 billion in money, equipments, property, destruction of the oil wells and

dumping of 400 million US gallons of crude oil into Persian Gulf by Iraq on 23 January 1991. Besides recovering almost entire expenses on war from their allies, the US also attained strategic victory in the Middle East by establishing about 28 airbases in Saudia, Jordan, Oman and other UAE states in addition to setting up many naval bases in the Persian Gulf. As such, it was first time after the World War II that US had a good beginning in the Gulf to support the program of Global domination envisioned by their think tanks. Further plans included utilization of Iraq as a launching pad for assaults on Afghanistan through Pakistan to pave way to the newly freed Muslim states in Central Asia. We shall discuss the same subsequently.

The events also need to be analyzed keeping in view the developments since two decades prior to the war. Iraq had originally been an ally of the Soviet Union and during the cold war period, there had been a history of friction between Iraq and the United States. Shah of Iran always had good relations with USA. Due to his growing unpopularity in the masses, the Shah stood ousted from Iran on 11 February 1979. The successors of Shah in Iran, therefore, had a good cause to develop apathy against USA leading to internment of many US personnel in Iran and expulsion of others. Consequent to the end of US presence in Iran, the USSR had an opportune moment to intrude into Afghanistan in December 1979. Similarly, the absence of any support from USA for Iran, had encouraged Iraq to settle their long standing dispute on the navigation rights in the Shatt-al-Arab area with Iran. This led to war between Iraq and Iran from 1980 to 1988. Although US did not interfere in the war directly yet due to their vested interests in Iraq, they continued under-hand supplies of arms to them. The useless war, however, caused utter depletion of finances and equipment worth about \$627 Billion to Iran besides about 600,000 killed. As regards Iraq the war cost them \$561 Billion with casualties up to

375,000. The civilian casualties of both Iraq and Iran were estimated about 200,000.⁵⁰⁷

The Soviet Union, too, had grown weaker economically as well as strategically due to prolonged war in Afghanistan (1979-1989). The outcome of the War became clear by February 1989 when the Soviets stood expelled from Afghanistan, and disintegration or fall of the Soviet Union was clearly in sight. The US authorities found it convenient towards fulfillment of their long cherished desire to control the oil resources of the Persian Gulf. **War in Iraq was, therefore, the beginning towards the global dominance program of USA as quoted earlier.**

Iraq War 2003

Apparently the Gulf War 1990-91 was fought for liberation of Kuwait while Iraqi war 2003-2011 was also named as **Operation Iraq Liberation (OIL) which in fact was liberation of oil resources from the control of Iraq**. The excuse for the later war was the disarmament of Iraq by capturing or destroying the supposed arms of mass destruction including the nuclear devices developed by them. Iraq had also been accused of manufacturing poisonous gases and biological weapons threatening the region and also USA.

Referring to Afghan and Iraqi wars Brzezinski records that:

The second of these long wars was the early 2003 US military invasion of Iraq, supported from abroad only by a politically pliant British Prime Minister and by Israel, but otherwise opposed or viewed with skepticism by most of America's other allies. It was publicly justified by the US President on the basis of dubious charges of Iraqi possession of WMDs, which evaporated altogether within a few months, with no supporting evidence ever found in US-OCCUPIED Iraq. Since this war commanded President Bush's enthusiasm, the war in Afghanistan was relegated to almost seven years of relative

⁵⁰⁷ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Iran-Iraq War'.

neglect.⁵⁰⁸

These two wars had one common trait: they were expeditionary military operations in hostile territories. In both cases, the Bush administration showed little regard for the complex cultural settings, deeply rooted ethnic rivalries generating conflicts within conflicts, dangerously unsettled regional neighborhoods (especially involving Pakistan and Iran), and the unresolved territorial disputes, all of which severely complicated US actions in Afghanistan and Iraq and ignited wider regional anti-American passions. Though America's interventions were reminiscent of nineteenth-century punitive imperial expeditions against primitive and usually disunited tribes, in the new age of mass political awakening, warfare against aroused populism has become, as the United States has painfully discovered, more protracted and taxing. Last but by no means least, in the age of global transparency, a total victory, achieved ruthlessly by any means necessary has ceased to be a viable option; even the Russians, who did not hesitate to kill hundreds of thousands of Afghans and who drove several million of them into exile, did not go all out in seeking to prevail.⁵⁰⁹

Due to absence of any reliable evidence for development of any WMD's in Iraq, almost 73% of the global population disapproved of US handling of the Iraq War. In spite of the protests by millions of people throughout the world, nothing could stop USA from pursuing its goals. Brzezinski further reports that:

Its pernicious effects can be seen in some of the more notorious cases of abuse of Iraqi prisoners, including of some senior Iraqi officers. They were the byproducts of an atmosphere in which the enemy came to be seen as the personification of evil, and thus justifiably the object of personal cruelty.⁵¹⁰

■ **Criticism and Cost**

Here is one of the reports criticizing the US action in Iraq.

The Bush Administration's rationale for the Iraq War has faced heavy criticism from an array of popular and official sources both inside and outside the United States, with many U.S. citizens finding many parallels with the Vietnam War. For example, a former CIA officer described the Office of Special

⁵⁰⁸ Zbigniew Brzezinski, *Strategic Vision*, p. 66-67.

⁵⁰⁹ Ibid, p. 67-68.

⁵¹⁰ Ibid, p. 69.

Plans as a group of ideologues who were dangerous to U.S. national security and a threat to world peace, and stated that the group lied and manipulated intelligence to further its agenda of removing Saddam. The Center for Public Integrity alleges that the Bush administration made a total of 935 false statements between 2001 and 2003 about Iraq's alleged threat to the United States.⁵¹¹

It is, however, evident that, in spite of entire reliance of US Government on lies and false propaganda, it will never be in a position to convince the world on legality of the invasion. Besides this, the ambiguous figures of casualties, the human rights violations, prison abuse scandals and utter humiliation of Iraqis are indicative of humanitarian crisis of the supreme power in the world. Under the heading Abu Ghuraib Prisoner Abuse, the Wikimedia has given many photographs from Abu Ghuraib Jail showing naked prisoners in extremely humiliating and inhuman postures. This, therefore, reflects the zenith of civilization and humaneness of USA to serve an example for others to follow.

As regards the cost of the war, the Wikipedia has recorded that:

The financial cost of the war has been more than £4.55 billion (\$9 billion) to the UK, and **over \$845 billion to the U.S. government**. According to Nobel Prize-winning economist Joseph E. Stiglitz and Harvard public finance professor Linda Bilmes, it costs the United States \$720 million a day to wage the Iraq war. This number takes into account the long-term health care for veterans, interest on debt and replacement of military hardware. In March 2013, the total cost of the Iraq War was estimated to have been \$1.7 trillion by the Watson Institute of International Studies at Brown University. Critics have argued that the total cost of the war to the U.S. economy is estimated to be from \$3 trillion to \$6 trillion, including interest rates, by 2053.⁵¹²

The same article continues to record that:

The child malnutrition rate rose to 28%. Some 60–70% of Iraqi children were reported to be suffering from psychological problems in 2007. Most Iraqis had no access to safe drinking

⁵¹¹ *Wikipedia*, s.v. 'Iraq War'.

⁵¹² *Ibid*.

water. A cholera outbreak in northern Iraq was thought to be the result of poor water quality. As many as half of Iraqi doctors left the country between 2003 and 2006. The use of depleted uranium and white phosphorus by the U.S. military has been blamed for birth defects and cancers in the Iraqi city of Fallujah. A study entitled "Birth defects in Iraq and the plausibility of environmental exposure: A review" was completed to review the impact of other war-related environmental factors on birth defects in Iraq.⁵¹³

▪ ***Iraq is Only the Beginning***

The benefits of the war to USA had been a firm control of the Middle East with its air bases, naval bases around the Persian Gulf and permanent stay of the 6th fleet there. Many corporate sectors of USA received huge contracts of rehabilitation work while Iraq had to become the largest importer of the US Arms as an aftermath of the Iraq War. The benefits ensuing from full control of the Persian Gulf cannot, however, be assessed in terms of money. In the words of president Bush 'Iraq was only the beginning' towards the world domination program of USA. Their effective control over the Persian Gulf has already established their supremacy in Asia, whereas the end is unseen as yet.

Israel and Egypt

From the Palestinian exodus 1948 to the present, the Muslim world had been painfully watching the atrocities as well as the unlawful expansion of Israel under active support of USA and its allies in the West. Besides development of large scale chemical bombs, Israel possesses hundreds of Atomic weapons. It, therefore, poses great threat to all its neighbors and especially the Muslims in the African and the Asian continents. While the USA had devastated Iraq merely on false allegation of the possession of weapons of mass destruction, it readily continues to provide all necessary assistance to Israel to augment their arsenal of massive destruction to keep other nations under their heel.

⁵¹³ *Ibid.*

Crusades for Greater Israel

After fighting a war of termination against the Jews for about 1700 years, the western Christendom realized the importance of destroying both of their enemies i.e. the Muslims as well as the Jews by igniting prolonging animosity between them. They could, therefore, take full advantage of the war in the guise of helping both sides of the belligerents. A scholar observes that:

During the French campaign in Palestine in 1788 Napoleon recruited Jews from Asian and African countries into his army. He advanced the idea of setting up a Jewish kingdom in Jerusalem under France's aegis.

In the period of the so-called Eastern Question (1840-1847) both Britain and France, each acting in its own interest, actively peddled the idea of creating a Jewish state in Palestine. A broad movement demanding the "rejuvenation of the Jews" was organized in Britain on the eve of **the London conference of five European Great Powers in 1840. ...**

In official British circles at the time it was suggested that "the restoration of the Jewish nation would not only hasten the millennium but also be a strength to British policy". According to bourgeois historians, in that period the British Christians were more zealous Zionists than the British Jews.⁵¹⁴

Although he was more flattering to both Jews and Muslims than the Crusaders, Napoleon shared the essential crusading attitude of seeking his own Western fulfillment in the Middle East and making the Jews and Muslims subordinate to that vision. His plan was to conquer Palestine from the Ottomans, establish himself in Jerusalem and hand the country over to the Jews, who, he was sure, would guard it for him against all comers. He would go on to establish his own capital in Damascus. But a month after this dramatic proclamation he was defeated by a combined army of British and Turks. Napoleon's army sailed back to Europe but not before it had sown the seeds of Western revolutionary ideas in the Middle East.⁵¹⁵

Nevertheless, there were shameful incidents in British Egypt, for example, just as there were in British India. Colonialism is a form of violation or even rape because it is usually carried out by a stronger power against the will of the weaker indigenous population. However benevolently it is presented,

⁵¹⁴ Galina Nikitina, *The State of Israel*, (Moscow: Progress Publishers, 1973), p. 15.

⁵¹⁵ Karen Armstrong, *Holy War*, p. 498.

colonialism shows itself in its true colors in such violent incidents and it is not surprising that the colonialists have left bitterness behind.⁵¹⁶

But the West managed to maintain the high-minded view of their mission civilisatrice, as we see in the writings of the French Christian apologist, Francois Rene de Chateaubriand. Chateaubriand had been enormously impressed by Napoleon's expedition. He saw him as a Crusader-pilgrim, "the last Frenchman who left his country to travel in the Holy Land with the ideas, the goals and the sentiments of a pilgrim of former times." Chateaubriand also bathed the Crusades in a glamorous light. The nineteenth century tended to look back at the Middle Ages in a most idealized way: in the poems of Tennyson or the novels of Walter Scott medieval stories become quite different from the grim reality.⁵¹⁷

Isn't it strange that the Greeks, the Romans and the Western Christendom after ardently struggling to eliminate Jews and their state from the world w.e.f. 4th century BC to the beginning of the 20th century took a sharp turn to reinstate the Jews and their state in the Holy Land? It is said that Germany had tortured and massacred about 6 million Jews during 1934-1945 on the pretext of being usurers, treacherous and antichrist. Hence, all Christian atrocities from the 4th century BC to the mid of 20th century were atoned by sacrificing millions of Muslim Arabs and depriving them of their homelands giving a help and free hand to the Jews in Palestine. Thus the western Christendom took active part in reinstating the government of 'the cursed race and killers of Jesus Christ under another pretext that the reinstatement of Jewish race was a precondition for Armageddon and the 2nd coming of Jesus Christ'.

For about a century and a half in the past they had been chalking out new plans to keep the weaker nations under their heels forever. At many times, western coalitions had mutual settlements by agreeing on areas of their influence. To avoid quarrels over distribution of the booties, they found it convenient to initiate joint action against their victims under the fresh titles ascribed to each of the new expeditions of the western Christendom including USA as continuation of the

⁵¹⁶ Ibid, p. 501.

⁵¹⁷ Ibid, p. 501.

crusades of medieval periods. As such, 'Operation Desert Storm', 'Operation Iraqi Liberation' or 'Enduring Freedom' are the latest versions to disguise the main purpose of the crusades. All these crusades aimed at subjugating Muslim weaker nations in the Middle East to obtain control over the vast resources of oil and gas there. They have already dominated the countries like Iraq and Kuwait while Masqat, Saudi Arabia, the UAE and Iran have become helpless before them.

The Twin Towers incident was just a well planned cover to obtain control over Pakistan and Afghanistan in order to have an access to the Islamic States of central Asia such as Uzbekistan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, Kyrgyzstan and Kazakhstan so that besides obtaining control of their natural resources including oil and gas, the USA could derive strategic advantages in the heart of Asia and also against Russia, China, Korea and Japan. American presence in the Central Asia also aimed at maintaining an effective deterrent against the Arab countries, Iran, Pakistan, India, Turkey and Iran etc. The air attack on the Twin Towers at New York was just a prelude to fulfill the said ambition. President Bush of USA had, therefore, hastened to name the attack on the towers as a crusade. He used this popular and effective slogan to form a coalition of the superpowers to dominate and control the people, lands and the natural resources in those regions. The ongoing troubles in Syria, Iraq and Libya also are the ramifications of the same strategic vision.

After the disintegration of USSR and formation of new states in Europe and Asia, Russia had become a secondary power as compared to USA. Since then, USA became the only superpower in the world. The policy planners in USA started to assert and highlight unipolar supremacy of USA against all other nations in the world. To befool other nations and to deprive the Muslim Arabs of their natural resources, the USA government had installed their puppet in Iraq to play the central role in the drama necessitating intervention of World Powers to

protect Israel and to establish permanent naval and air bases of USA in and around the Persian Gulf. Besides a coalition of the western nations, the US government had cleverly manipulated the cooperation of adjoining Arab countries and Japan. Hence, the USA achieved great success in Iraq and the Persian Gulf by destroying all the industries, infrastructure and military equipment in Iraq under the pretext of maintaining peace and restoration of liberation there. As an additional benefit to the USA, the people and lands of Iraq served as testing grounds for the latest explosive as well as electronic devices to detect and to destroy the enemy.

Afghanistan was the next best ground for the power play by USA. Osama Bin Laden had already been planted there to act as a freedom fighter for Afghanistan. Planning and destruction of the Twin Towers was ascribed to him. What happened next is known to all the people in the world. Since, there seems to be no end to the avaricious lust for land, power and wealth in the foreseeable future, we may expect many other operations under different excuses to deprive backward nations of their political independence, natural resources and wealth.

Libya and Syria

The 2011 military intervention in Libya by coalition of Belgium, Canada, Denmark, France, Italy, Norway, Qatar, Spain, UK and US, enforcing no fly zone and naval blockade with attacks from the coalition, continued until the death of Muammar Gadhafi in late October 2011. Similarly, the Syrian civil war starting from early spring 2011 can ostensibly be termed as fragments of the global dominance program of the coalition headed by USA. It is useless, therefore, to go into the details of the injustice, cruelties and humiliation of the Muslims to deprive them of their freedom and natural resources in their possession. Extreme selfishness with lust for power, wealth and dominance leaves no room for God-consciousness or any accountability before Him. The creation of (داعش) or ISIS/ISIL is the newest game started by the supreme powers to destroy and control

the Arab World. Perhaps hundreds of pages cannot describe the miseries and destruction in Iraq and Syria. No other cities in the world might have been ravaged or devastated like Mosul in Iraq and Aleppo in Syria since the nuclear attacks on Hiroshima and Nagasaki during the World War II.

Ch. 13 -

THE VICTIMS OF THE GREAT GAMES

The Afghan War

Afghanistan had been the venue of 'The Great Game'⁵¹⁸ also known as Tournament of Shadows since the 2nd quarter of the 19th century. In 1838, the British launched their first Anglo-Afghan War and imposed a puppet regime on Afghanistan under Shuja Shah. The regime was short-lived and proved unsustainable.

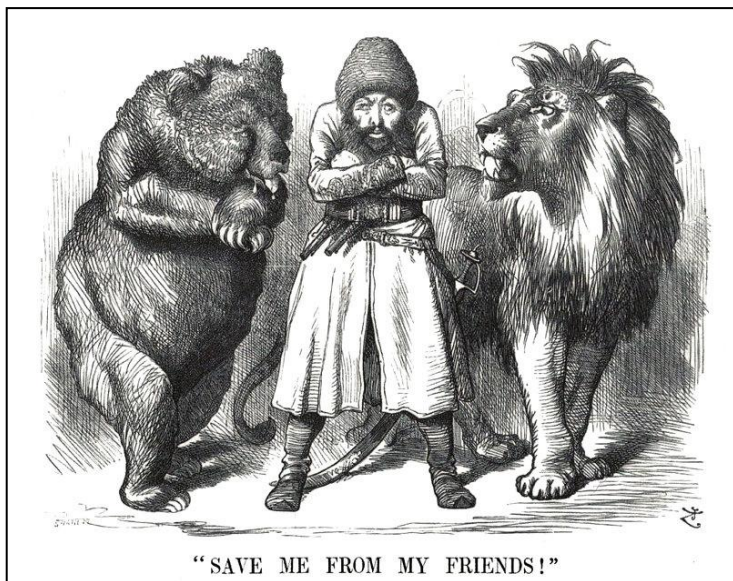
'Remnants of an Army' by Elizabeth Butler portraying William Brydon arriving at the gates of Jalalabad as the only survivor of a 16,500 strong evacuation from Kabul in January 1842.



Britain had been thrown out of Afghanistan by 1842 losing 4700 soldiers and 12000 civilians. Only one escaped. In spite of this humiliating retreat from Kabul, the British had never been neglectful of the Great Game started by them. Meanwhile the Russians as rivals of

⁵¹⁸ The belligerent position of world powers like Czarist Russia and the British Empire competing for supremacy and expansion in Central Asia was known as the great game.

Britain made further advances in the Middle East. They annexed Tashkent by 1865 and in 1868, they also captured Samarkand. Both the Russians and the British had, however, been competing with each other to win friendship of Afghanistan. The Russians sent an uninvited diplomatic mission to Kabul in 1878. At the same time, the British pressed hard on Sher Ali, the ruler of Afghanistan to accept a British Diplomatic Mission which was turned back. This led to the second Anglo-Afghan war launched in 1878. A cartoon by Sir John Tenniel published in the Punch Magazine 30 Nov 1878 shows the so called friends of Afghanistan as a lion on the left and a bear on the right of Amir Sher Ali the then-ruler of Afghanistan.



By 1890, the central Asian Khanates of Khiva, Bukhara and Khokand had fallen becoming Russian vassals. Subsequently, the Anglo-Russian convention of 1907 could be taken as a settled position between the 'lion' and the 'great bear'. Subsequent involvement of UK in the First World War and the Russian Bolshevik revolution of 1917 slowed down activities of the great powers in Afghanistan to pay more attention towards other burning issues. Anyhow, military cooperation with arms

supplies and soviet aid to Afghanistan had begun w.e.f 1919. In May 1921, Afghanistan and the Soviet Republic signed a treaty of friendship. There had been a status quo till 22nd June 1941 when during the World War II, the British as well as the Soviets reached a temporary alignment. The war ended in 1945 from which both the Soviet Union and USA emerged as the super powers in the world while its aftermaths left the UK shorn of its former prominence in the world.

▪ **Operation Cyclone**

The 1978 treaty of friendship, good neighborliness and cooperation was signed between Afghanistan and the Soviet Union which provided the legal basis for Nur Muhammad Taraki government to request and to receive further Soviet military support. Such requests, therefore, facilitated the Soviet Union to enter its 40th Army in Afghanistan in 1979. Operation Cyclone was the code name for the United States Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) program to arm and finance the Afghan Mujahideen prior to and during the Soviet war in Afghanistan, from 1979 to 1989.⁵¹⁹ By mid-1979, the United States had started a covert program to finance the mujahideen. President Carter's National Security Adviser, Zbigniew Brzezinski, was later quoted as saying that the goal of the program was to "induce a Soviet military intervention", but later clarified that this was "a very sensationalized and abbreviated" misquotation and that the Soviet invasion occurred largely because of previous U.S. failures to restrain Soviet influence.⁵²⁰

As regards USA, it has been actively pursuing their policy of dominance over the globe even prior to the start of the World War II. This included a direct control over the gas, oil and other natural resources in the Muslim countries such as Kuwait, Iraq, Lybia, Iran and Saudi Arabia in general and especially the countries in the Caspian region i.e. Uzbekistan, Azerbaijan,

⁵¹⁹ Wikipedia, 'Operation Cyclone'.

⁵²⁰ Ibid.

Turkmenistan and Kazakhstan etc. The changed position was, therefore, expressed as 'The New Great Game'. It described renewed Geo-Political interests of USA and the Soviet Union. While US had been busy chalking out the essential details to neutralize UK and USSR, to proceed towards Turkmenistan through Iran, the Iranian monarch Raza Shah Pehlavi an ally of USA stood ousted from power and forced to leave Iran in January 1979. This led to strained relations between the successors of the Shah of Iran and USA due to which no move could be made through Iran. Taking advantage of the situation, the Soviet Union Armies in Afghanistan took over control of that country in December 1979 with a desire to have an access to the warm waters of the Arabian Sea.

To encounter the Soviet move, US government had to seek assistance from Pakistan and also perhaps from Saudi Arabia to support Mujahideen from Afghanistan and other adjoining Muslim states to expel the soviets from there. As such, Pakistan and the Mujahideen remained the beloved ones of USA during the next 9 years i.e. till expulsion of the Soviets in February 1989. The soviets, thereafter, suffered from another set back by dissolution of USSR into 15 independent states on 26 December 1991. These were Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Estonia, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, Russia, Ukraine and Uzbekistan.

Pakistan usually had amicable relations with Afghanistan since 1947. It neither had any territorial ambitions nor some major issues to settle with Afghanistan. As such, the Soviet occupation of Afghanistan with its desire to reach the warm waters through Pakistan was a bolt from blue for it. Even so Pakistan had no option except to endure that could not be cured. The Soviet move into Afghanistan had, however, frustrated the New Great Game of USA in the Central Asia. The Zia regime in Pakistan extended their full cooperation by providing logistics, airbases for transportation of war equipments and other necessary supplies from USA to Afghan Mujahideen. Pakistan, therefore, had a substantial role

to help the Afghan Mujahideen to save independence of the neighboring country. In contrast to Pakistan, India was the only country in the region having their alignment with the soviets for occupation of Afghanistan.

As an aftermath of the Soviet withdrawal and subsequent skirmishes between various groups, the Taliban succeeded to form a new government led by Mulla Umar of Afghanistan. They had a peaceful rule extending over about 90% territory of Afghanistan. The Taliban government had been converging mostly on the friendship of Pakistan from 1996 to 2001 i.e. till the US intervention under the pretext of 9/11 incident. Although Pakistan had been enjoying peaceful and cordial relations with Islamic Emirate of Mullah Umar for about 5 years yet the independent position of Afghanistan was obstructing the plans of USA to develop air bases and other stations for effective control of Muslim Central Asian states possessing vast reserves of oil, gas, uranium and other resources. The increasing affiliation and alliance between Muslim Afghanistan and Pakistan was also a matter of serious concern for India. Prof. HARSH V. PANT writes that:

To a great extent, India's approach towards Afghanistan has been a function of its Pakistan policy. It is important for India that Pakistan does not get a foothold in Afghanistan, and so India has historically attempted to prevent Pakistan from dominating Afghanistan. India would like to ensure that a fundamentalist regime of the Taliban variety does not take root again.⁵²¹

He further writes that:

Afghanistan is also viewed as a gateway to the central Asian region, where India hopes to expand its influence. Central Asia is crucial for India not only because of its oil and gas reserves that India wishes to tap for its energy security but also because other major powers such as the US, Russia and China have already started competing for influence in the region.⁵²²

⁵²¹ Harsh V. Pant, *India's Afghan Muddle*, p. 29.

⁵²² Harsh V. Pant, *India's Afghan Muddle* (Noida UP: Harper Collins Publishers, India, 2014) p. 44.

Pakistan was quite at ease to maintain and promote cordial relations with Afghanistan. It had no axe to grind at Kabul. US Authorities, however, were quite in haste to proceed further. They, therefore, took no time to cow down the military dictatorship in Pakistan who readily handed over certain airbases required by USA and started providing all logistic support required by them. As such, the expeditions aimed at possession of Central Asian Muslim states continued to operate under the pretext of capturing the terrorists attacking the Twin Towers at New York. Al-Qaeda working under the leadership of Usama bin Laden had been pinpointed as the criminals being pursued by USA.

▪ ***India Changes its Strategic Alliance***

Although India had been an ally of USSR right from their invasion into Afghanistan yet soon after their eviction or after the dissolution of USSR they started showing cold shoulder to them. They, therefore, took a sharp turn and aligned with USA for participation in the New Great Game. Their active interest to have access and influence in the central Asian region is evident from the following:

India is cooperating with Iran in the development of a new port complex at Chabahar on the coast of Iran, which could **become India's gateway to Afghanistan and Central Asia**. There is also another project that involves linking the Chabahar port to the Iranian rail network that is also well connected to Central Asia and Europe. What is significant about these projects is that India's relations with central Asia will no longer be hostage to Islamabad's policies.

As the geopolitical importance of Central Asia has increased, all the major powers have been keen to expand their influence in the region, and India is no exception. It shares many of the interests of other major powers such as the US, Russia and China vis-à-vis Central Asia, including access to Central Asian energy resources, controlling the spread of radical Islam, ensuring political stability, and strengthening of regional economies. But unlike China and Russia, its interests converge with those of the US in Central Asia, and some have even suggested that it is in the US's interests to have a greater Indian presence in Central Asia to counter growing Chinese or Russian involvement. China and Russia are not only competing among themselves for influences in the region but are also trying to minimize US presence. (...) Some see India's attempt to build roads linking

Afghanistan and Central Asia and Iranian ports as a response to china's building deep water port in Gwadar as a gateway to global markets for Central Asian resources.⁵²³

As such, US too preferred to discard Pakistan to align with India to counterbalance the influence of Russia and China in the region. Hence, instead of paying any attention towards reconstruction, development and support to their former allies i.e. Pakistan, the USA authorities adopted the policy of flogging them more and more to extort desired results from them. From all such actions taken by USA, it was clear to Pakistan that USA had changed its policy towards it. US collaboration with India seemed to them to be more useful for effective control over the south as well as Central Asian regions of Asia and Muslim states around the Persian Gulf. Indian diplomats also seemed to be convincing USA about the supposed negative role of Pakistan. They went up to suggesting them that elimination of Pakistan from the world map would be more beneficial to the future interests of USA throughout Central Asia, the South Asia and Muslim states in the North African continent. Whatever the true intentions of USA, we find them carrying on sinister designs to achieve their goals in Libya, Syria, Iraq, Kuwait and Saudi Arabia etc. As such, the so called 9/11 incident in USA justifying direct invasion of Afghanistan might have been a news for the ill-informed and backward people in the world yet for USA policy makers it was only a new milestone on the track predetermined by them. Instead of being the only instance of its nature, the *modus-operandi* had been applied many times by USA to achieve their goals.

All the major powers in the world had keen interest in the potential oil, gas and other natural resources of the newly liberated Muslims states in Central Asia. USA and India were more anxious to reap more benefits from the New Great Game. India aspiring to be a major global power was actively pursuing its policy to create an India-led South Asia and a robust security partnership

⁵²³ Ibid, p. 47-48.

with USA for their greater influence and trade benefits in the South Asian region. They also have great ambitions to get a proper share from the oil, gas, uranium and other natural resources from Turkmenistan, Kazakhstan, Tajikistan and Uzbekistan. India, therefore, left no stones unturned to marginalize Pakistan from the world affairs and especially from the Persian Gulf and Afghanistan. Their media had been actively propagating Pakistan as 'The Warrior State'.⁵²⁴ The anti-Pakistan propaganda included the assertion that: 'The cancer is in Pakistan' and they try to prove Pakistan as ground zero for terrorism. Such anti-Pak propaganda of India had been of great help for certain US authorities to declare Pakistan as a dishonest partner in the game. Among their other efforts to push back Pakistan had been the establishment of first Indian military base abroad in Farkhur, Tajikistan close to the Afghan border. The said base used to provide assistance to the northern alliance fighters and later on to support the post-Taliban government in Kabul. India also used Tajikistan as a base for ferrying humanitarian and reconstruction aid to Afghanistan. India's air facility in Ayni in Tajikistan with 150 Indian pilots who went to Dushanbe to execute the project also aims at showing their strategic importance and effective presence in the region.⁵²⁵

To promote further ties with Afghanistan, the Indians also started providing humanitarian assistance and developmental projects including education and capacity development in Afghanistan. They also set up about 22 Indian consulates in Afghanistan primarily to guide and assist the terrorists for extensive surveillance of Pakistan borders with Afghanistan. Pakistan, therefore, had to take an extensive military action to eliminate the newly trained infiltrators operating under the cover of Taliban in Pakistan.

US had long been uneasy with the prevailing situation in Afghanistan. In 1997, the New York Times published an

⁵²⁴ T.V. Paul, *'The Warrior State'* (Gurgaon, Haryana: Random House India, 2014).

⁵²⁵ Harsh V. Pant, *India's Afghan Muddle*, p. 44-45.

opinion titled The New Great Game in Asia which reads that:

While few have noticed, Central Asia has again emerged as a murky battleground among big powers engaged in an old and rough geopolitical game. Western experts believe that the largely untapped oil and natural gas riches of the Caspian Sea countries could make that region the Persian Gulf of the next century. The object of the revived game is to befriend leaders of the former Soviet republics controlling the oil, while neutralizing Russian suspicions and devising secure alternative pipeline routes to world markets.⁵²⁶

It is evident from the above that the mass media propagated **'War on Terror' of USA was in fact the war on oil, gas and other resources of Central Asia.** The 9/11 incident was, therefore, a manufactured event to start the New Great Game devised by USA. The fight against terrorism and the 9/11 play were manufactured affairs to camouflage the real intents of USA. Numerous books on the incident have gone into elaborate details to disprove involvement of Bin Laden or Alqaeda in the 9/11 incident. Among many other reasons, they question the technical knowledge and prowess of Alqaeda to destroy the Twin Towers or to foil all US security arrangements for an open attack on the Pentagon. They point out numerous other loopholes to suggest incredibility of the official story of the incident. Some US nationals try to establish such close links between Usama Bin Laden and the top most figures at the helm of affairs in the USA that an ordinary reader finds Usama and USA on the same page.

The intermingling affairs of various international corporations as pointed out by the analysts suggest Usama's long standing role in the US corporations. Usama, therefore, seems to be working under a cover. We repeat John Perkins' report for ready reference here.

Just days after 9/11, wealthy Saudi Arabians, including members of the bin Laden family, were whisked out of the U.S. on private jets. No one will admit to clearing the flights, and the passengers weren't questioned. Did the Bush family's

⁵²⁶ Wikipedia, s.v. 'The Great Game'.

long relationship with the Saudis help make it happen?⁵²⁷

The lack of transparency about the death and the ultimate fate of the dead body of Usama remains a mystery for all the people in the world. No Al-Qaeda member had been reported having taken part in the Twin Tower incident nor anyone from the crew of the three attacking planes could be named by the US authorities. David Icke, therefore, has observed that:

When the Illuminati unleash their wars, Wacos, Oklahoma bombs and 9/11s, they are using trauma-based mind control on the population because they know that a traumatised mind is a suggestible one. This fits the goals of problem-reaction-solution perfectly because once you have created the event and gleaned the reaction of fear, the minds of the people are suggestible to the "solutions" the perpetrators offer. Proposing the slaughter of thousands of civilians and their children in Afghanistan would have caused outrage among many if it had been suggested without September 11th. But after those attacks in New York and Washington there was no problem. For this reason we are going to see more "terrorist attacks", not least involving chemicals and disease, to keep the people traumatised and open to future stages of the "war on terrorism". Once again we have the common theme here - the control and manipulation of reality.⁵²⁸

Albert Arnold Al Gore jr. (b. 1948) is an American politician and social activist. He was the 45th Vice-president of the United States of America and winner of the 2007 noble peace prize pertaining to climate changes. During his presidential elections against J. W. Bush, he said:

American troops and American taxpayers are shouldering a huge burden with no end in sight because Mr. Bush took us to war on false premises and with no plan to win the peace.⁵²⁹

We would not have invaded a country that did not attack us. We would not have taken money from the working families and given it to the most wealthy families. We would not be trying to control and intimidate the news media. We would not be routinely torturing people.⁵³⁰

Sir Winston Churchill had once said that:

⁵²⁷ John Perkins, *The New Confessions of an Economic Hit Man*, p. 106.

⁵²⁸ David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World Trade Center Disaster*, p. 465-466.

⁵²⁹ *Wikiquote*, Al Gore.

⁵³⁰ *Ibid.*

The American people generally do the right thing after first exhausting every available alternative.⁵³¹

The present writer, therefore, thinks that USA could have peacefully succeeded to attain most of its goals in the Central Asia on a shared benefits policy. By assuring all the necessary support and major share to Kazakhstan, Turkmenistan and Uzbekistan of their natural resources and relatively minor benefits to Afghanistan and Pakistan, they could have easily succeeded in the game. Anyhow, due to the over confidence of supreme power and slavish position of the Muslim states mentioned above, they chose to retain all benefits of their conquests themselves. Al Gore, therefore, seems to comment on the American strategy in the following words:

Dominance is not really a strategic policy or political philosophy at all. It is a seductive illusion that tempts the powerful to satiate their hunger for more power still by striking a Faustian bargain. And as always happens — sooner or later — to those who shake hands with the devil, they find out too late that what they have given up in the bargain is their soul.

One of the clearest indications of the impending loss of intimacy with one's soul is the failure to recognize the existence of a soul in those over whom power is exercised, especially if the helpless come to be treated as animals, and degraded.⁵³²

Referring to Bush, Al Gore said:

We are less safe because of his policies. He has created more anger and righteous indignation against us as Americans than any leader of our country in the 228 years of our existence as a nation — because of his attitude of contempt for any person, institution or nation who disagrees with him.⁵³³

While American television watchers were collectively devoting 100 million hours of their lives each week to these and other similar stories, our nation was in the process of more quietly making what future historians will certainly describe as a series of catastrophically mistaken decisions on issues of war and peace, the global climate and human survival, freedom

⁵³¹ *Ibid.*

⁵³² *Ibid.*

⁵³³ *Ibid.*

and barbarity, justice and fairness. For example, hardly anyone now disagrees that the choice to invade Iraq was a grievous mistake.⁵³⁴

▪ ***So Why Afghanistan?***

The fall of Soviet Union on 26-12-1991 left USA as the only supreme power in the world. By that time USA already had firmly established their air as well as ground bases in the Persian Gulf area. It was now a fit time for proceeding towards their long cherished desire of obtaining control over the Balochistan province of Pakistan and the war destroyed Afghanistan to build the highway and the pipelines from Kazakhstan, Turkmenistan, Afghanistan, and Balochistan in Pakistan to reach the Arabian Sea. Long term plans included creation of greater Balochistan as an independent state under the overall protection and control of USA. Ultimate plans also included creation of Greater Afghanistan by adding to it substantial parts of NWFP and other Agencies as well as Tribal Areas from Pakistan. US also had the designs to set up their air bases and cantonments for their armies at strategic points in Afghanistan and the unprotected Muslim states in Central Asia emerging from the fall of USSR.

The conditions in Afghanistan after expulsion of the Soviets in 1989 remained unsettled during next 10 years. No government was either stable, willing or in a position to enter into a lasting pact with USA allowing them construction of the roads, the pipelines or permanent establishment of their airbases and cantonments in Afghanistan. The Taliban were even averse to any deal with USA. Afghanistan being a land locked territory having no major issues with its adjoining states could not be impleaded as aggressors for direct intervention of UNO. US think-tanks had to work hard to contrive a convincing plan to establish serious provocation from Afghanistan justifying direct intervention of USA there as discussed earlier. The tragic incidence of attack on the World Trade Centre and Pentagon was, therefore, dramatized only to convince

⁵³⁴ *Ibid.*

the USA citizens and other people in the world that USA had no other way to defend itself.

▪ **Nine-Eleven Incidence**

David Icke provides us with the background of the manufactured attack on the World Trade Centre at New York. He says:

Before we can understand one (of many) reasons for September 11th and the "war on terrorism" we have to understand the plans of the Illuminati with regard to the fantastic oil and gas reserves of the Caspian Sea region. Cheney's Halliburton does major business in Kazakhstan, Azerbaijan, and Iran, which are all in the same crucial region as Afghanistan (Figure 8). Specialists suggest that the Caspian area might contain the world's third largest oil and natural gas reserves after the Gulf region and Siberia, and it has been the number one target of the oil cartel and its political representatives since the manufactured break-up of the former Soviet Union aided by Illuminati front man, Mikhail Gorbachev (see *And The Truth Shall Set You Free* and *The Biggest Secret*). The San Francisco Chronicle estimated the proven and projected reserves in the region to be more than 800 billion barrels of crude petroleum and its equivalent in natural gas." The combined oil reserves in the Americas and Europe are reckoned to be fewer than 160 billion barrels. The biggest Caspian fields are in Kazakhstan and Azerbaijan (both in Halliburton's portfolio, and Cheney sat on the state of Kazakhstan's Oil Advisory Board). Lesser reserves are located in Georgia, Uzbekistan, Turkmenistan and Armenia. The projected value of this, based on average prices in the 1990s, is \$5 trillion.⁵³⁵

David Icke's reports quoted above sufficiently reveals the necessity of the invasion of Afghanistan. The Nine-Eleven incident was, therefore, a well manufactured excuse for the same. The event was utilized not only for promotion of US economic interests but also to exercise control on the liberties of the masses even in the USA. Mr. Perkins, therefore, observed that:

September 11, 2001, had terrified the nation into giving up its freedoms, but continuing reports of torture at military bases

⁵³⁵ David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World Trade Center Disaster*, p. 110-111.

and CIA rendition sites, attacks on whistle-blowers, police brutality, and eavesdropping on personal phone calls was turning the tide of opinion. Increasingly, the media and blogs were pointing out that such activities were inconsistent with laws intended to protect our privacy. According to the Electronic Frontier Foundation:

News reports in December 2005 first revealed that the National Security Agency (NSA) has been intercepting Americans' phone calls and Internet communications. Those news reports, combined with a USA Today story in May 2006 and the statements of several members of Congress, revealed that the NSA is also receiving wholesale copies of Americans' telephone and other communications records. All of these surveillance activities are in violation of the privacy safeguards established by Congress and the US Constitution.

The draconian, jackal measures revealed in the thousands of pages released by WikiLeaks and Edward Snowden tell a shocking, disturbing, and sad story. Many Americans have come to understand that the democracy their government was supposed to protect has been betrayed by that government, that the very foundations of Lincoln's "government of the people, by the people, and for the people" were buried in the ashes of Ground Zero.

I was shocked to learn that the NSA monitors about two hundred million text messages each day and has surreptitiously planted spy software in some one hundred thousand computers, allowing it access to the information in those computers.⁵³⁶

All such instances substantiate the saying that democracy is a farce when voters are intentionally deceived. At another place Mr. Perkins observes that:

Whereas we in the United States are taught to fear China, Russia, and terrorists, a large part of the world fears us. They fear the Pentagon and the military presence that Washington has established in more than one hundred countries. They fear the CIA, the NSA, and all the other US spy agencies. They fear the drones, the missiles, and the bombs. They fear our dollarized, debt-based money system.⁵³⁷

▪ **Bin Laden**

As regards the alleged involvement of Bin Laden in the Afghan affair, Mr. David Icke has tried to provide us a detailed background of the drama as recorded in his book *Alice in the Wonderland and the World Trade*

⁵³⁶ John Perkins, *The New Confessions of an Economic Hit Man*, p. 280.

⁵³⁷ *Ibid*, p. 284.

Centre Disaster. There are certain subtitles like the 'Bush-Bin Laden Connection', 'Bush Blocks Bin Laden Investigation', 'Bush and Bin Laden business Partners', 'Boy Geroqe', 'The Bin Laden and the BCCI', and 'Bush Associate Finances Bin Laden' throwing ample light on the tangled web woven by President Bush and his associates to debar the people of USA and other nations from the true knowledge of the facts. The book contains details for the interested readers to discover that both Bush and Bin Laden were the opposite faces of the same coin. John Perkins, therefore, writes that:

In fact, the United States actively sought and received Saudi Arabian financial support for Osama bin Laden's Afghan war against the Soviet Union. The Reagan and Bush administrations not only encouraged the Saudis in this regard, but also they pressured many other countries to do the same — or at least to look the other way.⁵³⁸

From the very beginning, Pakistan had been an ally (most obedient servant) of USA. It had long been dependant on US aid in finance and defense. USA had been the sponsor of all military regimes in Pakistan. The US backed military dictatorship in Pakistan had no legs to stand. Just a threat that in case of its non-cooperation with USA, Pakistan would be pushed back to the Stone Age was enough to make them prostrate before their demands. Hence, without asking for the evidence about Bin Laden's involvement in the Twin Tower attacks, Pakistan not only surrendered the desired airbases to USA but also readily provided all strategic facilities from the seaports to Afghanistan. The former blue eyed birds of USA i.e. the Afghan Mujahideen now in the shape of Taliban were termed terrorists and the worst enemies of humankind on earth. The Al-qaeda formed by Usama Bin Ladin and Ayman al-Zawahiri was pin pointed as the most monstrous entity bent upon terrorism throughout the world. In 2001 US President George W. Bush demanded that the Taliban hand over Usama bin Laden and to expel Al-Qaeda. Since the Taliban declined to extradite Al-Qaeda without adequate proof of their

⁵³⁸ Ibid, p. 193.

involvement in the World Trade Centre incident the US, the UK and the coalition launched the operation 'Enduring Freedom' in Afghanistan.

The 'Enduring Freedom' was, however, the smoke screen to conceal the planned 'enduring enslavement' of Balochistan, Afghanistan and its people. The actual necessity of the invasion is evident from a report of David Icke quoted below. He says:

About 70 to 75% of our business is energy related, serving customers like Unocal, Exxon, Shell, Chevron and many other major oil companies around the world." Both Halliburton and Unocal have business and crony connections to the Bush family, as indeed do Chevron, Shell, and Exxon come to that. In October 1997, Unocal led an international consortium that beat off competition from the Argentine company, Bidas, to sign a \$2 billion contract with Turkmenistan for the CentGas project (Central Asia Gas), a massive pipeline that included 750 Kilometers across western Afghanistan. It would connect the vast natural gas reserves of Turkmenistan (possibly the world's biggest) to a plant and ports on the Arabian Sea coast of Pakistan - yet another military dictatorship controlled by the "West" (Illuminati). An oil version was also planned and extensions into India were being considered.⁵³⁹

▪ ***Terrorism Under the Cover of 'Enduring Peace'***

About a century before the US attack on Afghanistan, Mark Twain (1835-1910), the famous American author and humorist had envisioned that:

Next the statesmen will invent cheap lies, putting the blame upon the nation that is attacked, and every man will be glad of those conscience-soothing falsities, and will diligently study them, and refuse to examine any refutations of them; and thus he will by and by convince himself that the war is just, and will thank God for the better sleep he enjoys after this process of grotesque self-deception.⁵⁴⁰

Endorsing the opinion of Mark Twain, David Icke observes that:

When a problem-reaction-solution is being played out there is always prior planning of the "solution" to ensure that it is ready and waiting to be activated once the problem has

⁵³⁹ David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World Trade Center Disaster*, p. 115.

⁵⁴⁰ Ibid, p. 381.

primed the people. In the case of September 11th, we can expect to find evidence that the invasion of Afghanistan was planned long before those four planes were hijacked. And, of course, we can. On September 18th, before the plan to attack Afghanistan was made public, the former Pakistan Foreign Secretary Niaz Naik told the BBC's George Arney that he had been informed by American officials at a meeting in Germany two months before, in mid-July, that they planned to invade Afghanistan and remove the Taliban before the snows came in mid-October. Arney reported:

"Mr Naik said US officials told him of the plan at a UN-sponsored international contact group on Afghanistan which took place in Berlin. Mr Naik told the BBC that at the meeting the US representatives told him that unless Bin Laden was handed over swiftly America would take military action to kill or capture both Bin Laden and the Taleban leader, Mullah Omar.

The wider objective, according to Mr Naik, would be to topple the Taleban regime and install a transitional government of moderate Afghans in its place - possibly under the leadership of the former Afghan King Zahir Shah. Mr Naik was told that Washington would launch its operation from bases in Tajikistan, where American advisers were already in place."⁵⁴¹

Niaz A. Naik also disclosed that an American official had told him that an attack on Afghanistan was imminent.⁵⁴²

It is for this reason that throughout what we call history there has been an onslaught against the knowledge that reveals the nature of reality and those who communicate it. This is what the inquisitions were really all about, **taking the knowledge out of circulation**. Hundreds of thousands of "witches" were hung and burned because they carried knowledge of life beyond the five-sense prison, and how to communicate with it. As the Illuminati manipulated over thousands of years, especially through the Roman Empire and those that followed in Europe, they used the cover of Christianity to destroy the knowledge of who we are, where we come from and the nature of life. When these empires went into Asia, Africa, the Americas and elsewhere they sought to destroy the knowledge held in those ancient societies. They slaughtered the shamen and others who were the carriers and communicators of the knowledge across the generations. This is why the esoteric, the "occult", or "paranormal" is dismissed as either crazy or

⁵⁴¹ Ibid, p. 381.

⁵⁴² Ibid, p. 382.

evil.⁵⁴³

▪ ***Bush Associates Finance Bin Laden***

The American publication, Village Voice, was therefore, right to conclude:

"It is most curious that the son of former CIA Director George Bush does business with the Brother of Osama bin Laden in the setting up of businesses which seem very tied to CIA - while at the same time, a woman with CIA ties and who is married into the family of former CIA Director Richard Helms represents the Taliban, protector of Osama bin Laden. **This coziness among the CIA and bin Laden families all suggests to me that perhaps Osama bin Laden may still very much be a CIA protected operative, and makes me very nervous about who really orchestrated the 9/11 attacks.**"⁵⁴⁴

▪ ***The Level to which We Have Sunk***

Referring to the drama of the terrorists attack on Twin Towers i.e. the event referred to as 9/11, David Icke observes that:

It is quite a statement about the current mental, emotional and spiritual state of the human family when you consider the basis on which those thousands of Afghan men, women and children, were slaughtered by the mentally deranged terrorists and cowards running the United States and British governments and their military. No evidence worthy of a court of justice was produced to prove that Osama bin Laden and the Taliban were involved in the attacks of September 11th; not one of the alleged "hijackers" was an Afghan or has been connected to the Afghan people; and some seven of the "hijackers" named by the FBI were found to be still alive anyway. With the United States and British governments having no evidence to support their long-planned intention to bomb the shit out of Afghanistan, their front men, Bush and Blair, merely repeated over and over the pre-rehearsed mantra of lies and unsourced allegations. Their "target", bin Laden has been a CIA asset and stooge for 20 years and the Taliban were funded, armed and manipulated into power by the CIA, Pakistan intelligence and the Saudi royal family, all of which suddenly claimed to oppose them. Afghanistan was in the middle of a horrendous drought and famine with average life expectancy little more than 40. For a child to make it to adulthood was a serious achievement in itself and it was, and

⁵⁴³ Ibid, p. 461.

⁵⁴⁴ Ibid, p. 80.

is still more so today, a country of widows and orphans after the seemingly endless external and internal conflicts. Ladies and gentlemen of planet earth, those were the circumstances in which the brave boys and girls of the United States and British military flew over Afghanistan at heights well beyond the range of the pop-gun Afghan air defences and unleashed a state-of-art technology of mass destruction on a stone-age country in the middle of a famine. Yet most people just sat around and watched without protest, many even cheered. That is the level to which we have sunk, the cesspit in which we continue Britain were wiping out desperately poor and hungry Afghan families, and everyone who did that is responsible for what happened and continues to happen.⁵⁴⁵

Ignoring many details of human rights abuses by USA, the use of white phosphorus and killing of the Afghans defending their homeland, and non-combatant civilians by chocking to death thousands of them in the containers during transportation is perhaps the latest addition in the methods of inflicting torturous deaths on the prisoners of War. The US cared a fig for the War Crimes Act of 1996 which was helpless before the atrocities committed by the superpowers. Needless to mention the most horrific tortures committed on the Afghans in the Guantánamo Bay Detention Camp by USA. It had to be so because 'The New World Order' can operate only under the maxim 'might is right'. In spite of ruthless bombing of the Afghans with the latest lethal and explosive devices invented so far, the US failed to crush the resistance and temerity of the resolute Afghans who preferred death over surrendering themselves before any power in the world.

Professor Pant, therefore, observes that:

For the US, the ground realities in Afghanistan had been turning from bad to worse, and there seemed to be no easy resolution in sight. Developments in recent years—for instance, the emergence of an Internet video showing three marines urinating on the corpses of Taliban fighters and the Qur'ān burning in January 2012, and the American soldier killing Afghan civilians in March 2012—managed to inflame Afghans to an unprecedented degree. (...) Faced with growing public discontent with military expeditions abroad and steadily

⁵⁴⁵ Ibid, p. 424-425.

diminishing economic resources, the US was forced to re-evaluate its entire strategy towards Afghanistan.⁵⁴⁶

Pakistan's economy and resources had suffered a great deal during 10 years continuous war of the Afghan Mujahideen against the Soviets. The start of new war from 2001, therefore, caused wide-spread destruction, terrorism and instability throughout Pakistan. Its peaceful borders with Afghanistan turned out to be the most troubled areas the world had ever seen. Pakistan had, therefore, been the worst sufferer during the geo-political rivalry of world powers like USA, Russia and India from 2001 to the present. In spite of its meager sources and serious threats from its giant neighbor, Pakistan had been doing its best to render all possible assistance to USA in Afghanistan. Instead of taking true stock of the situation, however, USA transferred the blame of their failure in Afghanistan to Pakistan. They behaved as hard task masters with Pakistan as their slave. Real importance was given to US-India defense ties on the cost of Pakistan, the declared long-time ally of USA. Pakistan, therefore, had been the sufferer from most severe dictations from USA in the absence of adequate recompense and support to their front-man i.e. Pakistan.

Pakistan had been forced to play as a host to the War from 1979 to the present. The continued war with disfavor from USSR as well as USA along with ever increasing animosity of India has turned Pakistan from a host to a hostage of war. Terrorism was unknown to Pakistan before the start of war of rivalries between the great powers prior to 1979. Since then, it had been the most unlucky country in the world to serve as a battlefield and testing ground for the superpowers in the world. Besides thousands and thousands of casualties of the civilians and military personnel, the war has caused immense losses to Pakistan. According to Express Tribune:

The National Assembly was informed on Friday that Pakistan has suffered losses of \$80 billion dollars and 50,000 lives in

⁵⁴⁶ Harsh V. Pant, *India's Afghan Muddle*, p. 7-8.

the war on terror over the last 10 years.⁵⁴⁷

▪ ***The Worst Victim of the Game***

The fact is that during last 36 years i.e. right from the Russian invasion of Afghanistan 1979 to 2015, Pakistan had been suffering great losses due to instability caused by war, destruction threats, terrorist activities causing flight of capital, industrial breakdown, lack of development, energy crisis, stoppage of tourists and visitors including cricket and other teams etc. The combined effect of all such adversities, therefore, pushed back Pakistan Economy to the position of 1977 or below. Total loss to the economy as such, might have exceeded \$300 billion or so. In spite of all this, the powerful media of the West had been depicting Pakistan as an anti-American country in the world.

With the wake of the war Pakistan had to deploy 140000 of its troops merely in the tribal areas. It had to maintain 1000 checkpoints on the Afghan borders. Hundreds of thousands of policemen had to be on alert to avert terrorist attacks throughout the country. After one suicide attack in year 1995, there was another attack in 2002. It doubled in the year 2003, while we see five fold attacks during 2004. Similar position was maintained during 2005 and 2006. It was in 2007 that Pakistan was targeted by the suicide bombing to such an extent that there had been 55 successful attacks while many others were foiled by the collaboration of intelligence agencies and the police. Year 2008 also had 54 attacks and the number rose to 84 attacks during year 2009.⁵⁴⁸ We have no reliable figures since 2009 yet we believe that a similar trend was maintained during years 2010 to 2014. According to Wikipedia, however, there had been about 657 different types of terrorist attacks during year 2006 which increased to 1503 in 2007, 2148 in year 2008 and 2586 during 2009. According to them terrorist attacks staged in Pakistan

⁵⁴⁷ Zahid Gishkori, *The Express Tribune*, Islamabad, Published on December 5, 2014.

⁵⁴⁸ Gunartna and Iqbal, *Pakistan Terrorism Ground Zero*, p. 262-274.

killed over 35 thousand people, 5000 of which were law enforcement personnel and caused material damage to Pakistani economy totaling US\$67 billion as assessed by the IMF and the World Bank.

Meanwhile drone attacks on the terrorists in the KPK had been launched by USA to the tune of 37 during 2008, 35 during 2009 and 28 up to April 2010. We have no statistics thereafter to describe the true position up to 2014. The multidimensional destruction and set back to the country can be assessed only by keeping in view all types of losses incurred by Pakistan. The war on Afghanistan had, therefore, been viewed as a cancer affecting Pakistan economy with about \$300 billion during the 36 years of war games between the superpowers in the world. Scholars like Rohan Gunaratna and Khuram Iqbal, therefore, observe that:

The fact that Pakistan has itself been a victim of terrorism ever since the invasion of Afghanistan by the former Soviet Union in December 1979 is another factor shaping Pakistan's policy and anti-terror efforts in collaboration with the international community. Jihad in Afghanistan resulted in the rise of the Kalashnikov culture, the spread of narcotics and other social evils. The mushrooming growth of religious militant organizations with strong external linkages in Pakistan was a corollary byproduct. It needs to be understood, however, that the anti-terrorism measures did not result merely as a response to the 9/11 attacks. Even before then Pakistan had been taking steps to fight terrorism in the country. In 2000 Pakistan sealed the Pak-Afghan border and prevented madrasa (religious seminary) students from crossing into Afghanistan without relevant documents. In February 2001 Pakistan promulgated the Anti-Weaponization Ordinance and launched a de-weaponization campaign. Some of the militant sectarian organizations were outlawed in August 2001, including LEJ and Sipah-e-Muhammad Pakistan (SMP), and some, like SSP and Tehrik-e-Jafria Pakistan (TJP), were placed under observation. Reforms were already underway when the 9/11 terrorist attack took place, reinvigorating Pakistan's resolve to join the international community in a global effort aimed at the eradication of terrorism.⁵⁴⁹

⁵⁴⁹ Gunaratna and Iqbal, *Pakistan Terrorism Ground Zero*, (London: Reaktion Books Ltd. 2011) pp. 254-255.

With the start of the US attack on Afghanistan under the pretext of the 9/11 incident, Pakistan had to surrender itself before the will of its ally i.e. USA. They as such had to bear the brunt of war causing ruination of buildings, industry and trade, economic resources and infrastructure of the economy. All development projects had to be stopped or slowed down to the minimum level. In spite of the fact that Pakistan could afford no disturbance or destruction in or around the country, it had no option except to play as a host to the international game of superpowers. Following verse of an unknown poet ideally expresses the miserable and helpless condition of Pakistan:

آئی ایسی موج کہ ساحل چھوٹ گیا در نہ اپنی کشتی کون ڈ بوتا ہے

Had it been humanly possible for Pakistan to avert the war on or across its border, it would not have made itself vulnerable to long lasting terrorism and destruction ensuing from the 'Operation Enduring Freedom'. Presently, when both USA and India continue enjoying peace and prosperity in their countries, they have left an everlasting **legacy of 'Enduring Terror'** in Khyber Pakhtunkhwa and Balochistan Provinces of Pakistan. No one takes account of the fact that it was due to USA interests that Pakistan became the ground-zero for foreign supported terrorists in the state. The prime attention of Pakistan armed forces is presently focused on elimination of the terrorists in various parts of the country. In spite of all this, there is a vast propaganda against Pakistan for being a warrior state although Pakistan had no territorial disputes with any country except for Kashmir with India. Firstly, it was the Russian occupation and subsequently, the US invasion of Afghanistan that introduced terrorism in the region. In spite of the fact that Pakistan had been the worst sufferer from the war, yet even US authorities have been viewing Pakistan as a dishonest partner. As regards Indians, they started propagation to black paint Pakistan. T. V. Paul, an Indian professor at McGill University, Montreal has authored his book 'The Warrior

State i.e. Pakistan in the Contemporary World' (Random House, India, 2014). The book has no other purpose except maligning Pakistan without any justification. According to Prof. Pant:

Pakistan's weak democracy and powerful military and intelligence apparatus has failed to get a grip on terrorism, a problem that now threatens to overwhelm the Pakistani state itself. The Pakistani Army's inflexible, India-centric security strategy makes rapprochement with India a nonstarter. (...) Washington and New Delhi will have to work together to contain Pakistan's regional ambitions.⁵⁵⁰

Although the US invasion of Afghanistan had caused a great set back to the Pakistan Economy yet US authorities neither gave adequate support to Pakistan nor had any sympathies with it. They never thought of compensating Pakistan for the losses in the interest of USA. They always dealt them like their slaves and coercing Pakistan to fulfill their ever expanding "do more" list. Their media, too, continued to deride Pakistan with an utter humiliation. There had been a political cartoon depicting the head of the state in the shape of a dog in chain held by a US military officer with the explanatory remarks "well done, do more". The drone attacks deep into Pakistan and intentional US bombing of Pakistani check posts killing dozens of soldiers without any excuse, therefore, developed an unprecedented hatred for USA. Hence, in addition to the financial deficit suffered by Pakistan, there also had been increasing trust deficit between it and USA.

The ever increasing involvement of India in Afghanistan caused sudden increase in the subversive activities of the terrorist from across Pakistan borders. India had established 22 consulates in Afghanistan to support the terrorists and various liberation fronts formed in Balochistan. The newly created terrorists were disguised as Taliban or the Islamists whose loyalties seemed to be with India or America but not with Islam or Pakistan. Some maps were in the air showing no state named as Pakistan after 2015. Such vague suggestions could be

⁵⁵⁰ Harsh V. Pant, *India's Afghan Muddle*, p. 152.

taken as a hint from the aspirants or some fore-warning from the stake holders.

A two page article from Mr. Kashif Aziz dated August 28, 2006 had reproduced a map from the June 2006 Issue of American Forces Journal titled The New Middle East Plan and Disintegration of Arab States. Besides many other suggestions, the map shows a free and larger Balochistan with a much larger Afghanistan. The size of surviving Pakistan from Karachi to Islamabad, is almost equal to the proposed Balochistan and less than half of the proposed Afghanistan. The thin strip of land comprising some parts of present Punjab and Sindh was likely to be Pakistan in future. It was just 35-40 percent of its present size. The proposed reward to Pakistan was evident from the same.

Although the US, too, seems to have derived no benefits from the much expensive war against the Afghans yet the war caused great devastation in the security and the economy of Pakistan. They are doomed to be haunted with foreign sponsored terrorists armed with latest weapons and crude bombs. Besides wide-spread destruction of buildings and industries, they have been instrumental to flight of capital and disinvestment in Pakistan. Pakistan economy has, therefore, suffered a loss of about \$300 billion since 1979 to the present. As such, the long term effects of victimizing friends like Pakistan also tell upon the trust worthiness of USA.

▪ ***The Costs of the War***

An assessment of the costs of war in Afghanistan up to fiscal year 2011 is given in the following:

The cost of the war reportedly was a major factor as U.S. officials considered drawing down troops in 2011. A March 2011 Congressional Research Service report noted, 1) following the Afghanistan surge announcement in 2009, Defense Department spending on Afghanistan increased by 50%, going from \$4.4 billion to \$6.7 billion a month. During that time, troop strength increased from 44,000 to 84,000, and was expected to be at 102,000 for fiscal year 2011; 2) The total cost from inception to the fiscal year 2011 was

expected to be \$468 billion. The estimate for the cost of deploying one U.S. soldier in Afghanistan is over US\$1 million a year.⁵⁵¹

It is, therefore, possible that from 2011 to the present, the US might have incurred about \$800-900 billion on the war and reconstruction programs in Afghanistan. The reward to Pakistan had been further admonition to do more. All the help and support to Pakistan during this period had been less than 2% of the amount mentioned above. Instead of any consolation for the terror-ridden and war-ruined Pakistan, the US think tank and the congress are united to choke the Pakistan economy by imposing further sanctions on the previously agreed provisions for Pakistan.

There had been the people who believed that the unbridled ambitions of USA to establish corporate empires under the world empire program brought them to Afghanistan known as the Grave Yard of the Empires. Others are of the view that USA must succeed in their geopolitical aims. There are yet those who apprehend that the continued expeditions towards the central states of Asia may turn both Afghanistan and Pakistan into the grave yard of the indigenous people in the region. USA economy and power may also suffer from its own trust deficit, while clash of interests among the world powers may not allow USA to attain monopoly over the natural resources of the Muslim states of Central Asia. With Donald John Trump's anti-Muslim and more aggressive policies against US neighbors and friends, USA may rapidly lose its primacy in finance, politics and international trade.

⁵⁵¹ Wikipedia, s.v. 'War in Afghanistan (2001-2014) '.

Ch. 14 -

HUMAN RIGHTS IN HISTORY-I

The most precise and exquisite definition of human rights can be found in the Encyclopedia Britannica as quoted below:

One of the main purposes of every legal system is to protect the individual against oppression.⁵⁵²

It, however, had been the misfortune of humankind that except for the Islamic Law, no other legal system could save the individuals from oppression by the richer and stronger persons in the society. The same is evident from the history of mankind.

The world history has no record of civilizations prior to the one arising in the Fertile Crescent in the present day Iraq. They describe existence of ancient Ur in about 3500 BC.

By 3000 B.C., the Sumerians had built at least a dozen fair-sized cities. For example, Uruk may have had a population of 10,000, and it continued to grow to around 20,000 over the next 200 years. In Lagash, there were about 19,000 people and in Umma, about 16,000. People elsewhere in Asia, Europe, and Africa lived in farming villages, but none of those tiny communities could rightly be called a city.⁵⁵³

During its heydays, Babylonia was a centre of learning, architecture, manufacturing and hub of the international trade. The Sumerians were also skilled in working metal. They had been the famous builders of the Ziggurats⁵⁵⁴ which used to be the tallest and the most important buildings in their cities. Besides this, the Hanging

⁵⁵² *Enc. Britannica*, Vol. 11, s.v. 'human rights'.

⁵⁵³ Larry S. Krieger & others, *World History, Perspectives on the Past*, p. 31.

⁵⁵⁴ Ziggurats were massive structures built in the ancient Mesopotamian valley and western Iranian plateau, having the form of a terraced step pyramid of successively receding stories or levels. Notable ziggurats include the Great Ziggurat of Ur near Nasiriyah, Iraq; the Ziggurat of Aqar Quf near Baghdad, Iraq; the now destroyed Etemenanki in Babylon; Chogha Zanbil in Khūzestān, Iran; and Sialk near Kashan, Iran.

Gardens of Babylon had been one of the Seven Wonders of the ancient world.

The Hanging Gardens were a distinctive feature of ancient Babylon. They were a great source of pride to the people. Possibly built by King Nebuchadnezzar II in 600 BC, the gardens are believed to have been a remarkable feat of engineering: an ascending series of tiered gardens containing all manner of trees, shrubs, and vines. The gardens were said to have looked like a large green mountain constructed of mud bricks.⁵⁵⁵

During the time of Abraham, Ur was a great centre of trade between the East and the West and it had many magnificent temples and metal industries in the city. There is, however, no recorded reference pertaining to human rights in the Babylonian civilization before Hammurabi⁵⁵⁶ as shall be discussed subsequently. It is also said that the first code of conduct was established by the Egyptians. Menes the first Pharaoh of the first Egyptian dynasty (3100-2850 BCE) introduced the said law.

The Ancient Egypt and Mesopotamia

In spite of the gloomy lives of the slaves in Egypt, the Egyptians believed in judgment by Osiris⁵⁵⁷ highlighting the humane aspects for the judgment:

Each soul was required to come before the great judge, Osiris, and say something like this:

Hail to Thee, Great God, Lord of Truth and Justice ... I have not committed inequity against men. I have not oppressed the poor ... I have not laid labor upon any free man beyond that which he wrought for himself ... I have not defaulted, I have not committed that which is an abomination to the gods. I have not caused the slave to be ill-treated of his master.⁵⁵⁸

This, therefore, shows that even four or five thousand years before the present times, the Egyptians were conscious of the fact that no inequity or oppression was permissible against human beings. Injustice or ill-treatment of slaves was among the crimes punishable by

⁵⁵⁵ Wikipedia, s.v. '*Hanging Gardens of Babylon*'.

⁵⁵⁶ (c. 1810 BC - 1750 BC) was the sixth king of the First Babylonian Dynasty, reigning from 1792 BC to 1750 BC (according to the Middle Chronology).

⁵⁵⁷ Egyptian god of the afterlife, the underworld, death, life, and resurrection.

⁵⁵⁸ Larry S. Krieger & others, *World History, Perspectives on the Past*, p. 66.

the deity. In actual practice, however, we rarely find the Egyptians observing these ethical ideals. For further details please refer to the topic 'Slavery in Egypt' in the chapter titled 'Human Sufferings in the Ancient Times' in the 1st volume of the book.

As regards the Babylonian civilization, it has been stated that:

In about 2000 B.C., a group of nomadic warriors known as Amorites invaded Mesopotamia. Within a short time, the Amorites overwhelmed the Sumerians and established Babylon as their capital. Amorite power reached its peak during the reign of a strong king named Hammurabi (1792-1750 B.C.). Hammurabi proved to be a highly successful general who conquered all of Mesopotamia. As a result, he created one of the world's first empires, a state in which the ruler also controls other lands.

As the capital of a great empire, Babylon became a thriving commercial center. Soon its rapid growth caused problems. Babylon's merchants, farmers, and workers needed written laws to help them resolve disputes. Although individual Sumerian cities had developed codes of laws, Hammurabi recognized that a single, uniform code would help to unify the diverse groups within his empire. He therefore, made a collection of laws known as Hammurabi's Code. Scribes carved these laws on a stone column, or stele. The eight foot stele contained more than 3,500 lines of cuneiform characters.⁵⁵⁹

As such, the only written record that contains some aspects of human rights is found in the code of the Babylonian king Hammurabi who had the privilege to create world's first empire to be ruled under well-coded law. In his codes, Hammurabi described the punishments to the criminals and also to the slaves. He prepared a uniform code of laws to resolve the disputes. In the prologue, he explained the purpose of the code:

To cause justice to prevail in the land, to destroy the wicked and the evil and to prevent the strong from oppressing the weak (...) to enlighten the land and to further the welfare of the people.⁵⁶⁰

⁵⁵⁹ Ibid. Ed. p. 38.

⁵⁶⁰ Ibid. p. 38.

The preface based on ideal justice and welfare of people was admirable. Some of the laws, however, conflicted with the ideals in the preface. The law was highly discriminatory against the poor, the weak, the women and the slaves etc. It has been observed that:

Although the code applied to every one, it set different punishments for rich and poor and for men and women. A common man who killed a member of the upper class would be executed. If the same man killed a poor farmer, however, he would only be required to pay a modest sum of money to the victim's family.⁵⁶¹

The code covered rules for dealing with everyday issues such as contracts, inheritances, leases, perjury, debts, thefts and other crimes. It also dealt with marriage, family and property. Remarkable among the code was the principle of retaliation "an eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth" to punish the crimes. The code contained the admirable principal that the government had the responsibility to recompense any losses to the citizens at the hands of the thieves or the dacoits. For example if a man was robbed and the thief could not be apprehended by the civil authorities, the government was obliged to compensate the victim for his loss.

Sumerian community, however, was not a classless society around 3000 BC. It could be divided into four prominent classes; 1. Priests and Kings, 2. Wealthy merchants, 3. Working class in the workshops, peasants and shopkeepers, 4. At the lowest level of the Sumerian society were slaves. Some slaves were foreigners who had been captured in war. Others were Sumerians who had been sold into slavery as children to pay the debts of their impoverished parents. By working obediently day and night, slaves could hope to earn freedom.⁵⁶² Slavery also pre-existed Hammurabi (r. 1792-1750 BC). After seeing various ups and downs, the ancient Babylonian civilization ended in about 331 BC.

⁵⁶¹ Ibid. p. 38.

⁵⁶² Ibid. p. 36.

The Old Testament

Before proceeding further, the readers may find it useful to refresh themselves with the contents of Ch. 3 of volume 1, s.v. 'Slavery'. The conditions of slaves in Egypt and especially the slavery of the Israelites during about 1800 BC to 1500 BC needs special attention of the readers. It was around 1500 BC that Moses and Aaron were deputed by the Lord to relieve Israelites from slavery in Egypt. After delivery from Egypt, the Jews had entered the Sinai desert when the Lord started making covenant with them as detailed in the Pentateuch.

From 1500 to 1280 BC, five books of Moses were compiled and given the name of Torah i.e. the law. The Ten Commandments formed the core of the faith and Law preached by Moses. The code of conduct given to the Israelites, however, was extremely discriminatory. It favored more and more the Israelites and did not acknowledge any rights of other nations in the world. Our chapter 7 of Volume 1, s.v. '*Bible Authenticates and Perpetuates Slavery*' throws much light on the Law of Moses about enslavement, conditions of the slaves as well as conditions of women during the times of the Old Testament. The Torah, therefore, shows God's partiality towards the Israelites granting privileges and superiority to them while other nations had no rights against them.

The New Testament

Muslims believe that Jesus Christ was one of the greatest and the last one among the prophets of Israel. Being a strict follower of the Law of Moses, he introduced no change in the Jewish laws about slavery. Although he revived and rehearsed the teachings and Law of Moses yet personally, he was more inclined toward passivity, forgiveness and austere living.⁵⁶³ He disapproved amassing of treasures of wealth. In order to follow his example, he advised his disciples to sell everything they had, to help the poor. Of great

⁵⁶³ For details please see Matt, Ch. 5, 6 and 7.

importance among his teachings was hatred for hypocrisy. He severely criticized the Pharisees and Sadducees for their apparent observance of the rituals and law without earnest repentance from sinfulness. He stressed deep involvement of heart and soul in the service of the Almighty for their salvation. Jesus, therefore, preached devotion, forgiveness, charity and purity of worship with utmost sincerity and humility before the Lord.

In spite of being very kind and generous towards the people, Jesus Christ neither advised abolition of slavery nor did he preach kind and humane treatment with the slaves. He rather preached the slaves to serve their human masters in the manner they were obliged to serve Christ or the Lord. We have, therefore, recorded preachings of St. Peter, St. Paul, St. James and many other Christian fathers about their teachings on slavery in our chapter on 'Slavery and Christianity' in volume I of the book.

As regards women, Jesus Christ and his followers tried to be ascetic to such an extent that they neither encouraged marriage nor conjugal relationships between the spouses. According to the New Testament, Jesus prohibited divorce and also to marry any divorced woman. Those who married divorced women were declared adulterers by Jesus.⁵⁶⁴ There is not a single word in his teachings about kind and better treatment with women, rearing the children or to create a law-abiding peaceful and productive society. Jesus also did not teach kind and respectful treatment with the parents nor to observe the family values by his followers. He also seems to allow usury which had always been one of the greatest causes of human miseries from the time immemorial to the present days. (Matt 25:14-30, Luke 19:11-27.)

Other Experiments with Human Rights

The Hindu Upanishads were written during 800 to 500 BCE. These were the writings stressing ultimate truth

⁵⁶⁴ Math 19:3-12, Mar 10:1-12.

and individual actions leading to moral consequences. Cyrus the Great (c. 600/576-530 BC) was perhaps the first king whose charter of freedom of mankind can be taken as the first, though incomplete, charter of human rights. In 539 BC, He liberated the Jews from the Babylonian captivity with permission to resettle and rebuild Jerusalem, enjoying full liberty to live in accordance with their own culture and faith. K'ung Fu Tzu ("Confucius" 551-479 BCE) introduced dominant moral and political philosophy in China stressing "to love all men".

Class or Jati Discrimination

A system of social stratification⁵⁶⁵ dividing people into four social classes such as Brahmins, Kshatriyas, Vaishyas and Shudras has existed in India from about 2200 BC. Overlapping the same, there had been another classification known as Jati system which may be translated as the caste system of India reflecting different occupations of the people. Brahmins were supposed to be born from the head of Brahma the Creator God. They, therefore, enjoyed sanctity and privileges that no other class could share with them. Shudra had been the fourth Varna i.e. the lowest and the most oppressed class of the Hindu society supposed to serve other three Varnas. They were assigned different menial jobs in the houses or elsewhere as per requirements of the superior castes. Each region in India had its own notion of what constitutes a Shudra. Below the Shudras in the informal caste hierarchy are the Dalits, untouchables who are sometimes referred to as the "fifth" and the "unclean" stratum of the society.⁵⁶⁶ Such people were given the essential social tasks such as sweeping, collecting of refuse, the removal of carrion animals and the production of leather etc.

⁵⁶⁵ For details please consult *the Caste System in India*, Wikipedia.

⁵⁶⁶ *Encyclopedia of Hinduism*, ed. by Constance A. Jones and James D. Ryan, (New York: Facts on File Inc., 2007) 'Shudra', p. 409-410.

The concept of untouchability and defilement had always been attached to Dalits or Harijans as lower strata among the Shudras. They were forbidden to touch other persons, enter into the Holy places or to touch the household utensils of the superior classes. They had been such despised and unclean classes that in certain regions of South India, they were also unseeable by the Brahmins. A Shudra or a Dalit could neither touch nor read or hear any of the sacred scriptures of the Hindus. Any Shudra haplessly overhearing some mantra of the Hindu scriptures had to be punished by pouring molten lead into his ears to deprive him of any hearing thereafter. In short, the lowest class among the Hindus was even lower than the unclean animals enjoying no rights at all.

Besides many other notions of purity and pollution among the Hindu society, they also discriminated people on the basis of kin, tribe and lineage etc. Mahatma Gandhi (1869-1948) of India had coined the term "Harijan", translated roughly as "Children of God", for Dalits i.e. the ostracized or the untouchables but the term was considered derogatory by the Dalits themselves. Although all these classes have been ascribed different new names in the present times yet there had been no change in their social status till today. In spite of various steps taken by the Indian government to end such distinctions, we find no perceptible change in the Hindu mentality of class discrimination.

The Romans too had different classes among them i.e. the citizens, the serving slaves, the husband men and the tenants and the serfs as the product of feudalism especially relating to manorialism. Like the Hindu Dalits, even the serfs had their inferiors in the cottagers and the bordars. The serfs usually owned nothing except their belly. Even his clothes were the property in law of his lord. For details please refer to our chapter on 'Conditions of Slaves' in the first volume of the book.

Romans had formed a republic during 509-46 BCE emphasizing selfless service to community, individual honor, the necessity of law, shared power and decision

making. The said Roman form of government and law became the basis of many later European and American governments and bears its influence on them till today.

Earliest experiments with democracy in Athens were made under the leadership of Pericles during 479-431 BCE. This was perhaps the first code in the world to establish the principle of the majority rule which prevails in the modern republics. In about 262-232 BCE King Ashoka of India issued his edicts emphasizing goodness, kindness and generosity. About two centuries, thereafter, Cicero wrote his philosophical works on humanities which emphasized goodwill towards humanity (45-46 BCE). Jesus of Nazareth the central figure of Christian faith preached virtues of **"love thy neighbor as thyself"**. He also was extremely concerned about the poor as described in the first chapter of the book.

It is evident from the above that almost during all times there had been certain philosophers, humanists or the prophets to show concern about human welfare. As regards the people of Book, they had been more conscious of their accountability before the sole Master of the Day of Judgment. Most of them also believed that human beings will be judged individually and strictly in accordance with their fidelity towards the Lord and good works as per His commandments. It had also been a common belief that the supreme judge will show no partiality towards any people and every one will be judged strictly in accordance with his own doings.

History tells us that the human beings had been suffering from injustice, cruelty, massacre, slavery and miseries throughout the ages. Even the Greek and Roman Republics in the ancient past only cared for the rights of their citizens or the rights of the masters against the slaves. Divine rights of kings was a universally accepted truth. The western people also believed that the king can do no wrong. Some of the Roman emperors were deified during their lives and people also worshiped them while most of the others

were accorded divinity after their death. Julius Caesar was deified in 44 BC, Augustus in 14 AD, Claudius, 54 AD, Vespasian 79 AD, Titus 81 AD, Nervah 98 AD, Trajan 117 AD, Hadrian 138 AD, Antonius, 181 AD, Lusius Verus 169 AD, Marcus Aurelius 180 AD, Pertinex 193 AD, Septimius Severus 211 AD, Severus Alexander 235 AD. It is, therefore, obvious that all the emperors of Rome were above law. Even after professing Christianity with a minority believing in Judaism, the European nations never had any clear concept of human rights. They also did not pay heed to the moral teachings of the prophets, the sages and saints etc. and continued to live under the principle of might is right. Most of the people used to follow their own lusts and desires to inflict miseries and tortures on poor and weaker people in the world. The Christianity too had no law to protect the poor, the miserable and the helpless classes including the slaves. The New Testament frequently quotes Jesus, St. Paul and St. Peter etc. preaching passivity and endurance to the slaves without even murmuring against the oppression by their masters. Instead of teaching universal brotherhood of man or equality of rights, the New Testament stressed on making slaves more and more docile towards their masters and especially the Roman authorities.

Islam

Islam being the last one among the Abrahamic religions is based entirely on the revelations from the Almighty. It's the only religion which has gone into great details to describe duties of man towards the Lord and also human duties towards other members of their own species. Although it is impossible to cover all aspects of human rights preached by Islam here, yet in the present context we shall be discussing general rights summarily while dealing in some detail with the reforms of Islam to mitigate slavery in the world. Besides this, the readers may go through our chapter s.v. 'Moral Revolution of Islam' in the first volume of the book to know more about the rights of slaves granted by Islam. Certain additional observations are also given here:

According to Islam human duties towards the Almighty are of prime importance. Next in importance to the same are human duties towards each other as enjoined by the Lord. It is believed that all prophets of the Lord had been preaching their people to fulfill their duties towards the Lord and also towards other human beings yet no complete or accurate record of earlier teachings was available by the time of Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh). Similarly, the ethical teachings of the saints, the sages, the philosopher and the wise men could be found piecemeal without any authenticity attached to them. To rehearse the commandments of the Lord and to complete His law, therefore, the Almighty deputed Muhammad (pbAh) as His last and final messenger towards mankind to restore, to revive and to establish the complete code of Law and the faith in the Almighty. Similarly, Islam maintains a complete record of moral ethics for mankind in general and human responsibilities towards each other in detail as discussed in the text.

▪ ***No Forgiveness for Infringement of Human Rights***

The importance of human rights in Islam is evident from the fact that while the Lord may graciously forgive all violations of human beings infringing the rights of the Almighty yet he will not be forgiving the sins committed by human beings against each other. The Holy Prophet (pbAh) said:

It has been reported on the authority of 'Amr b. al-'As that the Messenger of Allah said: All the sins of a Shaheed (martyr) are forgiven except debt.⁵⁶⁷

Abu Huraira reported Allah's Messenger as saying: Do you know who is poor? They (the Companions of the Holy Prophet) said: A poor man amongst us is one who has neither dirham with him nor wealth. He (the Holy Prophet) said: The poor of my Umma would be he who would come on the Day of Resurrection with prayers and fasts and Zakat but (he would find himself bankrupt on that day as he would have exhausted

⁵⁶⁷ *Sahih Muslim*, Chapter 32, Book 20, Hadith No. 4649 See also Hadith No. 4650: See also *Sahih Bukhari*, Volume 3, Book 43, Hadith Number 629:

his funds of virtues) since he hurled abuses upon others, brought calumny against others and unlawfully consumed the wealth of others and shed the blood of others and beat others, and his virtues would be credited to the account of one (who suffered at his hand). And if his good deeds fall short to clear the account, then his sins would be entered in (his account) and he would be thrown in the Hell-Fire.⁵⁶⁸

Ibn 'Umar reported Allah's Messenger as saying: Oppression is the darkness on the Day of Resurrection.⁵⁶⁹

This, therefore, shows that there will be no forgiveness of usurpation of rights of human beings or cruelty perpetrated on them. As regards other sins, the Almighty may forgive the same to anyone He may please except those who ascribe partners with the Lord.⁵⁷⁰

The Almighty had sent the Holy Prophet (pbAh) declaring him as *رحمة للعالمين* (mercy for all the worlds). In his capacity as the last messenger of the Lord towards the human beings, he spent the entire time of his holy mission to guide the human beings towards worshiping one and the only Lord God of the Universe and to obey all His commandments diligently. Being a prophet of peace, he also had been extremely concerned to prevent wars and other disputes leading to mutual fights and killings among the human beings. As such, even before his assignment as the prophet of the Lord, he played active role to reconcile different belligerent groups for the sake of overall peace in the land. One of such attempts was *Hilf-al-Fudool* (حلف الفضول) as described in the following:

▪ ***Hilf-al-Fudool* (حلف الفضول)**

It was several years before the start of his prophetic mission that the Holy Prophet (pbAh) took active part in the battle of Fijaar in which Quraysh defeated the Tribe of Qayes. Such fights had been a routine tradition of the time but Zubayr son of Abd-al-Mutlib who was also uncle of the Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) collected the

⁵⁶⁸ *Sahih Muslim*, Book 32, Chapter 13, Hadith Number 6251:

⁵⁶⁹ *Ibid*, Hadith Number 6249:

⁵⁷⁰ Al Qur'an 4:48 Yusuf Ali.

family of Hashim in the house of Abdullah bin Jada'an and entered into an agreement that:

1. Each one of us would be helping the oppressed persons in future.
2. That no oppressors or cruel persons will be allowed to live in Makkah.⁵⁷¹

Great credit goes to the Holy Prophet (pbAh) for taking an active part in the finalization of this agreement. *Hilf-al-Fudool*, therefore, was the first step to avoid violence, war and injustice among the human beings. Since the alliance aimed at peace and justice, therefore, it was often translated as the 'League of the virtuous'. It was a pact to avoid intermittent conflicts, injustice and peaceful settlement of unsettled murders. The members of tribes pledged to:

- Respect the principles of justice, and collectively intervene in conflicts to establish justice.⁵⁷²

The pact was written and placed inside the Ka'aba, the place where the participants believed it would be under the protection of God. It, therefore, represents Prophet Muhammad's interest in human rights and protection of such rights even before the start of his mission as a prophet.

▪ **Constitution of Medina (ميثاق مدینه)**

Perhaps the earliest written constitution in the world was 'Misaq-e-Medina' known as the treaty of Medina which established multi-religious Islamic state at Medina aiming at peace, cooperation and ending of internal violence among the citizens. The document ensured the freedom of religious belief for all the people at Medina. This constitution, therefore, ended the recurring slaughter at Medina and also specified the rights and duties of all citizens and the relationships of different communities in the city. Even the non-Muslims were given equal human rights with the believers:

⁵⁷¹ Shibli Noman, *Sirat-al-Nabi, Vol. I*, (Karachi: Muhammad Saeed & Sons, 1339 a.h. i.e. 1920 a.d.), p. 182-183.

⁵⁷² Wikipedia, s.v. '*Hilf-al-Fudool*'.

- 1) The security of God is equal for all groups,
- 2) Non-Muslim members will have the same political and cultural rights as Muslims. They will have autonomy and freedom of religion.
- 3) Non-Muslims will take up arms against the enemy of the nation and share the cost of war. There is to be no treachery between the two.
- 4) Non-Muslims will not be obliged to take part in religious wars of the Muslims

Misaq-e-Medina was, therefore, a great achievement ensuring human rights of all people living in Medina.

▪ ***Treaty of Hdaybiyyah***

In 628 AD (6 AH), the Muslims under the leadership of the Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) had tried to perform Umrah at Makkah but the Quraysh did not allow them to do so that year. A treaty was, therefore, signed between the parties, the opening para of which is quoted below:

“In your name, O God!

This is the treaty of peace between Muhammad Ibn Abdullah and Suhayl ibn Amr. They have agreed to allow their arms to rest for ten years. During this time each party shall be secure, and neither shall injure the other; no secret damage shall be inflicted, but honesty and honour shall prevail between them. Whoever in Arabia wishes to enter into a treaty or covenant with Muhammad can do so, and whoever wishes to enter into a treaty or covenant with the Quraysh can do so.⁵⁷³

Treaty of Hdaybiyyah, therefore, acknowledged rights of the belligerent groups agreeing not to infringe the human rights as per the terms of the agreement.

Subsequently, the treaty stood violated, by an attack by the Quraysh-allied tribe of Banu Bakr upon the Muslim tribe of Banu Khuza'a in Sha'ban 8 AH. Realizing the consequences, Abu Sufyan went to Medina with the request for renewal of the treaty but the Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) refused his request. Consequently, the Muslims attacked and conquered Makkah in Ramadan 8 AH.

⁵⁷³ Wikipedia, s.v. '*Treaty of Hdaybiyyah*'.

▪ **Conquest of Makkah**

The Holy Prophet's proclamation at the time of the conquest of Makkah also specified certain important human rights and security of life and honor to the people of the vanquished city. For further details the readers may go through our chapter 17 titled 'War Codes and Ethics of Islam' volume I.

▪ **Sermon at Farewell Hajj**

Although the Holy Prophet (pbAh) had always been stressing on exclusive and devoted worship of the Lord and utmost care to observe the human rights ordained by the Almighty, yet further importance of human rights is evident from the Farewell Sermon of the Holy Prophet (pbAh) in 632 AD. Various reporters have narrated the words of the Holy Prophet (pbAh) during the sermon out of which we reproduce the following:

Verily your blood, your property are as sacred and inviolable as the sacredness of this day of yours, in this month of yours, in this town of yours. Behold! Everything pertaining to the Days of Ignorance is under my feet completely abolished. Abolished are also the blood-revenges of the Days of Ignorance. The first claim of ours on blood-revenge which I abolish is that of the son of Rabi'a b. al-Harith, who was nursed among the tribe of Sa'd and killed by Hudhail. And the usury of the pre-Islamic period is abolished, and the first of our usury I abolish is that of 'Abbas b. 'Abd al-Muttalib, for it is all abolished. **Fear Allah concerning women! Verily you have taken them on the security of Allah**, and intercourse with them has been made lawful unto you by words of Allah. You too have right over them, and that they should not allow anyone to sit on your bed whom you do not like. **But if they do that, you can chastise them but not severely.** Their rights upon you are that you should provide them with food and clothing in a fitting manner. I have left among you the Book of Allah, and if you hold fast to it, you would never go astray. (...) ⁵⁷⁴

Perhaps the most important injunction about the human rights was in the following:

⁵⁷⁴ Sahih Bukhari Ch. 17, Book 7, Hadith 2803, Sahih Muslim, Ch. 8 Book 16, Hadith No. 4160, 4161.

O people! Indeed, your Lord is one and your father is one. Indeed, there is no superiority of an Arab over a non-Arab, nor of a non-Arab over an Arab, nor of a white over a black, nor a black over a white, except by taqwa.⁵⁷⁵

The Hadith of the Holy Prophet (pbAh) quoted above perhaps interpreted the word of the Almighty in this respect as quoted below:

O mankind! We created you from a single (pair) of a male and a female, and made you into nations and tribes, that ye may know each other (not that ye may despise (each other)). Verily the most honoured of you in the sight of Allah is (he who is) the most righteous of you. And Allah has full knowledge and is well acquainted (with all things).⁵⁷⁶

We also repeat here two other Ahadith of the Holy Prophet (pbAh) to elucidate the point:

Narrated Abu Hurayrah: The Prophet (peace be upon him) said: Allah, Most High, has removed from you the pride of the pre-Islamic period and its boasting in ancestors. One is only a pious believer or a miserable sinner. You are sons of Adam, and Adam came from dust. Let the people cease to boast about their ancestors. They are merely fuel in Jahannam; or they will certainly be of less account with Allah than the beetle which rolls dung with its nose.⁵⁷⁷

Narrated 'Abdullah bin Umar: Allah's Apostle said, "A Muslim is a brother of another Muslim, so he should not oppress him, nor should he hand him over to an oppressor. Whoever fulfilled the needs of his brother, Allah will fulfill his needs; whoever brought his (Muslim) brother out of a discomfort, Allah will bring him out of the discomforts of the Day of Resurrection, and whoever screened a Muslim, Allah will screen him on the Day of Resurrection."⁵⁷⁸

One will, therefore, observe that the crux of all matters pertaining to human rights fall within the verdict of the Lord and the words of the Holy Prophet (pbAh) quoted above. There can be no justice, equality of rights, dignity of man, protection of women, good treatment with the slaves or any other matter pertaining to moral excellence outside the injunctions of the Almighty put

⁵⁷⁵ Musnad Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal, Hadith No. 22391.

⁵⁷⁶ Al-Qur'ān 49:13 Yusuf Ali.

⁵⁷⁷ Abu Dawud, Chapter 41, Hadith Number 5097.

⁵⁷⁸ Sahih Al-Bukhari, tr. by Dr. Muhammad Muhsin Khan, Islamic University Al-Medina Al-Munawwara, (Dar Al Arabia, Beirut, Lebanon, 1980) Volume 3, Book 43, Number 622:

into practice by the Holy Prophet (pbAh). The Holy Prophet (pbAh) attached extreme importance to the treatment with the slaves. It is said that the last words spoken by the Holy Prophet (pbAh) at the time of death were:

عَنْ أَنَسِ بْنِ مَالِكٍ؛ قَالَ: كَانَتْ عَامَّةُ وَصِيَّةِ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ حِينَ حَضَرْتُهُ الْوَفَاةَ، وَهُوَ يُعْرِغُ بِنَفْسِهِ ((الصَّلَاةَ. وَمَا مَلَكَتْ أَيْمَانُكُمْ)).

It was narrated that Anas bin Malik said: "What the Messenger of Allah (pbAh) most enjoined when he was dying and breathing his last was: The prayer; and those whom your right hands possess."⁵⁷⁹

Narrated Ali ibn Abu Talib: The last words which the Apostle of Allah (pbAh) spoke were: Prayer, prayer; fear Allah about those whom your right hands possess.⁵⁸⁰

Since, the rights and duties of human beings had been enjoined by the Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) as per guidance from the Almighty all descendants of Adam had to be treated alike in their dignity, their rights and the privileges available to them. Islamic rulers (caliphs, kings or sultans etc.) enjoyed no privileges or immunity against any wrong done by them. They were ordinary human beings and brethren of all other members of the society. No concept such as "The king can do no wrong" existed in Islam. The readers may find some of the examples of equality of rights between an ordinary person and the ruler in Ch. 9 of the first Volume of the book s.v. "Moral Revolution through Islam". In this respect, the inaugural speech of Abu Bakr needs to be repeated here so that the readers may understand the difference between the rights of a ruler as per Islamic law and ordinary kings in the world:

The Inaugural Speech of Caliph Abu Bakr:

O people, I have been appointed over you, though I am not the best among you. **If I do well, then help me; and if I act wrongly, then correct me.** Truthfulness is synonymous with fulfilling the trust, and lying is equivalent to treachery.

⁵⁷⁹ *Sunan Ibn Majah*, (Riyadh: Maktaba Darussalam, 2007), Vol. 3, Ch. 22, Hadith No. 2697, 2698, p. 549.

⁵⁸⁰ *Sahih Abu Dawud*, Book 41, Kitab al-Adab, Hadith No. 5137.

The weak among you is deemed strong by me, until I return to them that which is rightfully theirs, inshaAllah. And the strong among you is deemed weak by me, until I take from them what is rightfully (someone else's), inshaAllah. (...) Obey me so long as I obey Allah and His Messenger. And if I disobey Allah and His Messenger, then I have no right to your obedience. Stand up now to pray, may Allah have mercy on you.⁵⁸¹

All the rulers in the world must, therefore, learn the lesson from the above.

▪ ***The True Magna Carta***

After going through the teachings of Islam about treatment of the servants, the neighbors, the women, the parents, the kith and kin, the captives of wars, the enemies, people under debt, the poor and the helpless people including the slaves, one can find no match with the moral ethics of Islam in any religion or society in the world. It was a great declaration to affirm that all people; rich or poor, black or white, powerful or weaker etc. and especially the slaves were human beings. The treatment to the slaves and the servants must, therefore, contain humaneness in it. The declaration of universal brotherhood based on common descent from Adam and Eve and equality of rights among them was a great improvement in human rights. As such, only the injunctions of the Almighty and teachings of the Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) cover all aspects of human rights which need no amendment at any time in future. The sermon of the Holy Prophet (pbAh) during the Farewell Hajj and his last words about slaves show utmost concern of the Holy Prophet (pbAh) about the human rights. Human rights enumerated by Islam, therefore, contain the true and complete contents of the divinely ordained and eternal Magna Carta in the world.

⁵⁸¹ Ibn Katheer, *Al-Bidaya wal-Nihayah*, (urdu), (Karachi: Nafees Academy, Urdu Bazar, 1989), Vol. 6, p. 1136.

Ch. 15 -

HUMAN RIGHTS IN HISTORY II

Human Rights in the West

Although the western countries are boastfully propagating their excellence in human rights yet the fact is that they lag behind Islam by about 1400 years in respect of the human rights. Historically, there had been no mention of human rights before the start of the 13th century AD in the West. They only believed in the divine rights of kings and also had detailed codes about the rights of masters against the slaves.⁵⁸² The Romans or other western countries had no law to give any relief to the slaves, the poor, the debt servitude, the oppressed and the vanquished people in the world. The feudal period (9th to 15th Century AD) was one of the worst periods for landless and poor human beings in Europe. From England to Russia, the description of the inhuman treatment with the serfs individually as well as collectively may require scores of books. Even during the colonial period i.e. 1600 to about 1945, the criminal convicts had been forming a regular source of white slaves dumped in different colonies in the world. It has been said that:

Convicts provided another steady source of white labor. The harsh feudal laws of England recognized three hundred capital crimes. Typical hanging offences included: picking a pocket for more than a shilling; shoplifting to the value of five shillings; stealing a horse or a sheep; poaching rabbits on a gentleman's estate. Offences for which the punishment prescribed by law was transportation comprised the stealing of cloth, burning stacks of corn, the maiming and killing of cattle, hindering customs officers in the execution of their duty, and corrupt legal practices. Proposals made in 1664 would have banished to the colonies all vagrants, rogues and idlers, petty thieves, gipsies, and loose persons frequenting unlicensed brothels. A piteous petition in 1667 prayed for transportation

⁵⁸² For details please refer to our chapter 6 s.v. 'Conditions of Slaves' in the first Volume.

instead of the death sentence for a wife convicted of stealing goods valued at three shillings and four pence. In 1745 transportation was the penalty for the theft of a silver spoon and a gold watch. One year after the emancipation of the Negro slaves, transportation was the penalty for trade union activity.⁵⁸³

In spite of all this, the Western nations pretend to be the leaders as regards the human rights and take pride in propagating their superiority in this respect. Factually, the Western nations have never been concerned with human rights or compassionate treatment with the human beings. In stead of human rights, there had been hundreds of divisions of the rights such as the rights of the citizens of Rome, of Greece, and Spain in the ancient times. The slaves and aliens were neither counted as human beings nor had they any rights whatsoever. There were numerous codes of law expressing rights and duties of particular groups than ordinary human beings. No rights of subdued nations were mentioned among the rights of human beings. Most of the Western states enjoy vast resources and provide multiple facilities to their citizens but a foreigner is refused shelter, food and the right to treatment in any of their hospitals. If by chance anyone obtains some facility from a hospital, he is charged at unbelievably higher rates. This actually means denial of humanity of the foreigners throughout Europe and America. In contrast to the same, Islam had been preaching humanity and equality of rights of all the descendants of Adam throughout the world. They did not differentiate between the white and the black, the rich or the poor, the ancestry or racial pride of any of the people in the world. Humanity in the wider sense is unknown to Europe till today.

Magna Carta in fact was the first agreement between a king and the barons and the church. Mention of human rights for free people was just one of the clauses of the so-called Magna Carta which in fact was a minor improvement in the rights of free people.

⁵⁸³ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 11-12.

▪ **Magna Carta**

Magna Carta means the great charter which the western nations propagate as the charter of human rights and liberties. Factually, the charter had hardly anything to do with the human rights. In this respect, it was a charter defining rights of the King, the barons, and the church. **It was by chance that clause No. 3 of the charter referred to the liberties for the free people who had been a negligible minority among the total population of England of those days.**

Actually, Magna Carta was a peace treaty between the King John of England and the rebel barons who had renounced their oaths of allegiance to him after the king's defeat by the French at the Battle of Bouvines in Northern France. The first draft of the charter was prepared by the Archbishop of Canterbury and it was agreed upon at Runnymede near Windsor in 1215 A.D.

The charter promised the protection of the church rights, protection for the barons from illegal imprisonment, access to swift justice and limitations on feudal payments to the crown, to be implemented through a council of 25 barons. King John had issued the charter only to resolve the political crisis in 1215. Magna Carta was, therefore, the document that established for the first time the principle **that every body including the king, the barons or the powerful lords could be sued in the Islamic court and punished under the law like any other member of the Muslims society.** It contained sixty three clauses most of which dealt with specific grievances related to the time. Presently, only three of the sixty three clauses remain part of the English Law. One of the surviving clauses defends the liberties and rights of the English Church while another confirms the liberties and customs of London and other towns. The third one was the only clause referring to human liberties for the free people. It neither provided rights to the oppressed classes nor any relief to the slaves. In spite of this, the European nations take great

pride in their achievement based on clause 3 included in the charter:

No free man shall be seized or imprisoned, or stripped of his rights or possessions, or outlawed or exiled, or deprived of his standing in any other way, nor will we proceed with force against him, or send others to do so, except by the lawful judgment of his equals or by the law of the land. To no one will we sell, to no one deny or delay right or justice.⁵⁸⁴

The readers will appreciate that the clause quoted above pertains only to the 'free men' who for the first time in England or Europe were given the right to justice and fair trial. Very few people are, however, aware of the fact that 'free men' comprised only a small proportion of the population in medieval England. The majority of the people were un-free peasants known as 'villeins'.⁵⁸⁵ The villeins could seek justice only through the courts of their own lords. The decisions of these courts were, therefore, subject to the will and approval of their Lord. This means that even the free people were unable to obtain free or impartial justice against the oppressors. The charter had been absolutely silent about any law to rescue the slaves and the miserable people in the society. In spite of all this, English people take Magna Carta as a corner stone of the British constitution. Some of its core principles are echoed in the United State's Bills of Rights (1791) as well as in the Universal Declaration of Human Rights (1948) and the European Convention on Human Rights (1950).

After a respite of about 400 years since the Magna Carta, we find Hugo Grotius (1583-1645) a Dutch jurist dealing with international law. He was the first European to speak of the brotherhood of humankind and the need to treat all the people fairly. As such, it was about 1000 years later than the Islamic reforms that some European Christian came forward to reiterate the equality of rights based on the principle of universal brotherhood preached by the Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) during 610-632 AD. Similarly, it was in 1688-1689 CE that the

⁵⁸⁴ Clair Breay, Julian Harrison, *Magna Carta, an Introduction*, by British Library.

⁵⁸⁵ (In medieval England) a feudal tenant entirely subject to a lord or manor to whom he paid dues and services in return for land. (*Concise Oxford English Dictionary*)

British parliament offered the crown to prince William of Orange with certain restraints on the 'Divine-right Monarchy'. The 18th century was the enlightenment period when John Locke came up with his notion of natural rights of human beings. Rousseau's Social Contract (1762 CE) was one of the causes of the French Revolution 1789 which led to the declaration of rights of man and the citizen. The 'World History, Perspective on the Past' reports that:

On August 27, 1789, the National Assembly adopted a set of revolutionary ideas called a Declaration of the Rights of Man and of the Citizen. The first article of the document declared, "Men are born and remain free and equal in rights." The second article stated:

"The aim of all political association is the preservation of the natural ... rights of man. These rights are liberty, property, security, and resistance to oppression".

Other articles of the famous document guaranteed citizens equal justice freedom of speech, and freedom of religion.⁵⁸⁶

This was the only article to refer to the rights of "men" (rather the subjects) about liberty, property, security and resistance to oppression. It also declared that men are born and remain free and equal in rights. Even so, **the article did not accept slaves and the downtrodden classes as the citizens or the human beings.** They continued to be exploited as slaves, indentured labors, criminal convicts or under debt servitude for more than a hundred years thereafter. This declaration was, therefore, the first step towards freedom and equality of rights in Europe. It, however, lagged behind the prohibition of enslavement of free people and establishment of the equality of human rights in Islam by about 1160 years.

It was during the colonization period that the West had to encounter certain freedom fighters at different places in the world. The term 'terrorist' had been unknown to the West and even to the subjugated countries until the end of 19th century. The French, however, had accused

⁵⁸⁶ Larry S. Krieger & others, *World History, Perspectives on the Past*, p. 487.

one, Robespierre as an introducer of terror as detailed in the following:

Robespierre began the Terror.

Larry S. Krieger records that:

Foreign armies were not the only enemies of the French republic. The Jacobins had thousands of enemies within France itself—peasants who were horrified by the beheading of the king, priests who would not accept control by the government, and rival leaders who were stirring up rebellion in the provinces.

As dozens of leaders struggled for power, one man slowly gathered control into his own hands. His name was Maximilien Robespierre (Rohbz-pihr). Robespierre was one of the few members of the Jacobin Club who did not dress like a revolutionary. He wore a powdered wig in the old style., knee breeches, and stockings. Nicknamed “the Incorruptible,” Robespierre never enriched himself at the public expense, unlike many of the men around him. In his fanaticism, however Robespierre was merciless. His period in power is fittingly known as the Reign of Terror.⁵⁸⁷

“Terror”, said Robespierre, “is nothing but justice – swift, severe, and inflexible.”⁵⁸⁸

During the Terror, at least 3,000 people were executed in Paris. Some historians believe as many as 40,000 were killed all together. Fully 80 percent were peasants, sans-culottes, or bourgeoisie—common people for whom the revolution had supposedly been fought.⁵⁸⁹

▪ ***The Colonial Period***

We have already gone into detailed discussion about treatment with slaves during the colonization period in the following chapters of the present volume:

Chapter 2: Colonization and Slavery,

Chapter 3: Slavery the Backbone of the New World Economy

Chapter 4: Horrors of Slavery

Chapter 5: Dehumanization of Slaves

Chapter 6: Genocide of the Indigenous People.

Some of the information may be added here:

⁵⁸⁷ Ibid.

⁵⁸⁸ Ibid.

⁵⁸⁹ Ibid.

The colonial period had perhaps been the worst time in the history of mankind when there had been world-wide discrimination of races, status, colors and origins on extremely large scale. Being unable to go into details, short references to some of the people may help us understand the overall conditions of mankind during these periods. Mulattos, Creols, Anglo-Indians, Mestizos and many other mixed races had been mentioned by the historians. Ignoring for the moment the Dalits and Shudras in India, the most conspicuous people had been the Mulattos in the Western Hemisphere.

Mulattos:

The term was unknown to the world prior to the 15th century AD. Mulatto refers to persons born of one white and one black parent and subsequently descendants of such parents. Actually the term has been derived from the Spanish and Portuguese word '**Mula**' meaning **mule, the hybrid offspring of a male donkey and a female horse**. The very coinage of the term 'mulatto', therefore, denigrates the people born from white males and African or black females. As against this, the offspring from a male horse and a female donkey (which is very rare) are called '**hinny**'. The western world now takes Mulattos as archaic and prefers to use 'multiracial' or 'biracial' for such people.

Mulattos had been representing a significant part of the populations of Latin American and Caribbean countries. Dominican Republic had 73% of all mixed race people, Brazil 49.1%, Belize 25%, Columbia 25% and Cuba 24.6% of such people. In Brazil these people are now known as Pardo and according to Brazilian institute of geography and statistics census 2006, some 42.6 % of Brazilians are identified as Pardos. The Wikipedia has shown total population of mulattos in some of the countries as detailed below:

Brazil:	42 million
Cuba:	2.8 million
Dominican Republic:	6.8 million
South Africa:	4.6 million (2011)

United Kingdom:	600,000 (2011)
United States:	1.8 million (2010)

▪ ***United States Antebellum Era***

The following quotation from Wikipedia explains the **exploitation of slave women in the American continents**:

Historians have documented sexual abuse of slave women during the colonial and post-revolutionary slavery times by white men in power: planters, their sons before marriage, overseers, etc., producing multiracial children born into slavery. But, Paul Heinegg has documented that most of the free people of color in the 1790–1810 censuses in the Upper South were descended from unions and marriages during the colonial period in Virginia between white women, who were free or indentured servants, and African or African-American men, servant, slave or free. In the early colonial years, working-class people lived and worked closely together, and slavery was not as much of a racial caste. Slave law had established that children in the colony took the status of their mothers. This meant that multi-racial children born to white women were born free. The colony required them to serve lengthy indentures if the woman was not married, but nonetheless, numerous individuals with African ancestry were born free, and formed more free families. Many of these free people of color became leaders in the African-American community; others continued to marry into the white community. His findings have been supported by DNA studies as well.

According to historian F. James Davis,

“Rapes occurred, and many slave women were forced to submit regularly to white males or suffer harsh consequences. However, slave girls often courted a sexual relationship with the master, or another male in the family, as a way of gaining distinction among the slaves, avoiding field work, and obtaining special jobs and other favored treatment for their mixed children (Reuter, 1970:129). Sexual contacts between the races also included prostitution, adventure, Concubineage, and sometimes love. In rare instances, where free blacks were concerned, there was marriage (Bennett, 1962:243–68).”

Some wealthy planters, especially widowers or young men before they married, took women slaves as concubines, as did Virginia planter John Wayles, after being widowed three times. His daughter Martha Wayles, born to his **first wife, married Thomas Jefferson, the future president**. Wayles took Elizabeth Hemings, a mixed-race slave, as his concubine. The youngest of their six children, who were all three-quarters

white and born into slavery, was Sally Hemings. **These children were the half-siblings of Jefferson's wife Martha.** Sally Hemings became the concubine of Jefferson several years after he was widowed. **They had six children, who were seven-eighths white and born into slavery.** Four survived to adulthood, and Jefferson arranged for their freedom, allowing two to "walk away" from Monticello when they became of age and freeing the youngest two sons in his will. Three of these Hemings children passed into white society as adults, and their children were accepted as white. Eston Hemings moved his family to Wisconsin to reduce risk of being kidnapped, and took the surname Jefferson to reflect his ancestry. His son John Wayles Jefferson ran a hotel in the 1850s. Accepted as white, he served as a colonel in the Union Army in the Civil War, later becoming a successful cotton broker in Memphis, Tennessee.⁵⁹⁰

Although the word mulatto had been widely used up to the census in United States 1930, yet it is now almost non-existent there and people are divided into whites and blacks.

The readers can themselves search for slavery and mixed breed conditions in many other countries in South America and the African countries which had been colonized by the Spanish, the Dutch, the Portuguese, the British, the Danish and the German people. Anyhow, the large number of the mixed-breed people prevailing in those countries is everlasting evidence to the moral behavior of the colonizers during the past centuries.

The Era of Reforms

While Europe had become a battle field for human rights, a wave of independence had also started in South America. The Creoles⁵⁹¹ had been perhaps the first people to start fight for independence. Many other colonies followed them.⁵⁹² The historians, therefore, report that:

⁵⁹⁰ *Wikipedia*, s.v. 'Mulatto'.

⁵⁹¹ Creole means: a person of mixed European and black descent or a descendant of European settlers in the Caribbean or Central or South America - a white descendant of French settlers in Louisiana.

⁵⁹² To know the true position, the readers may kindly go through Chapter 9, s.v. 'Slave Revolts and the Abolitionists' of Volume II.

The early 1800's saw a series of wars for independence throughout Latin America. In Haiti, slaves revolted against France and set up an independent country. Bolivar and San Martin led independence movements in South America. In Mexico, Native Americans and Mestizos played a large part in the war for independence. Brazil won independence peacefully. Although free, Latin American countries were still dominated by a small wealthy class. Many countries fell under military rule. ... In Britain, reforms expanded voting rights. Elsewhere in Europe, however, nationalism and the desire for reform led to revolt. France overthrew one king in 1830 but remained a monarchy. In 1848, a wave of revolts swept Europe but were soon put down. Radical demands for reforms in France led to the establishment of a republic, but violence soon turned people against new government.⁵⁹³

▪ **UK Abolition of Slave Trade**

It has been reported that:

In 1807, the UK Parliament passed the Bill that abolished the trading of slaves. The King of Bonny (now in Nigeria) was horrified at the conclusion of the practice:

"We think this trade must go on. That is the verdict of our oracle and the priests. They say that your country, however great, can never stop a trade ordained by God himself."⁵⁹⁴

Thomas Jefferson (1743-1826), the author of Declaration of Independence 1776 was elected as the third president of USA (1801-1809). He is considered to be a prominent thinker of the enlightenment period frequently associated with the struggle for liberation from slavery. In actual practice, however, he was much different from his pretensions. About him, it has been recorded that:

In a letter to Edward Coles in August 1814, Jefferson professes himself against slavery and argues that the degenerate condition of 'negroes' is (partly?) due to slavery – he hopes that it will be abolished. In the meantime masters should treat slaves as well as possible (Notes on the State of Virginia, 284-7). However, he only formally freed two of his many slaves in his lifetime – both of them believed to be his sons by his slave Sally Hemings. His daughters by Hemings ran away (or were allowed to leave) and were not pursued. In spite of DNA and other evidence some Jefferson scholars continue to assert that it is implausible that the great man

⁵⁹³ Larry S. Krieger & others, *World History, Perspectives on the Past*, p. 544.

⁵⁹⁴ Wikipedia the Online Encyclopedia.

fathered children on one of his slaves.⁵⁹⁵

In spite of this, Jefferson had strong apprehensions about abolition of the slaves. Judith Still reports that:

Clearly Jefferson did not believe that African Americans could live in American society as free people together with whites, either before or after abolition. Before abolition free slaves might well encourage revolts. Jefferson expressed his fear of the effects of slave emancipation a number of times, often using a phrase along the lines of: "We have the wolf by the ear; and we can neither hold him, nor safely let him go. Justice is in one scale, and self-preservation in the other."⁵⁹⁶

▪ **Condemnation of Slavery**

Eric Williams⁵⁹⁷ and many others strongly condemned the slavery e.g.

Defoe in his "Reformation of Manners," condemned the slave trade. The poet Thomson, in his "Summer," drew a lurid picture of the shark following in the wake of the slave ship. Cowper, after some hesitation, wrote his memorable lines in "The Task." Blake wrote his beautiful poem on the "Little Black Boy." Southey composed some poignant verses on the "Sailor who had served in the Slave Trade."⁵⁹⁸

The aboriginal Australians also known as indigenous Australians' children's status was determined by that of their mothers.

As in the British slave colonies of North America and the Caribbean, where the principle of *partus sequitur ventrem* was adopted from 1662, children's status was determined by that of their mothers; if born to Aboriginal mothers, children were considered Aboriginal, regardless of their paternity.⁵⁹⁹

In the era of colonial and post-colonial government, access to basic human rights depended upon your race. If you were a "full blooded Aboriginal native ... [or] any person apparently having an admixture of Aboriginal blood", a half-caste being the "offspring of an Aboriginal mother and other than Aboriginal father" (but not of an Aboriginal father and other

⁵⁹⁵ Judith Still, *Derrida and Other Animals*, p. 299-300.

⁵⁹⁶ *Ibid*, p. 278.

⁵⁹⁷ Eric Eustace Williams (1911-1981) served as the first prime minister of Trinidad and Tobago from 1962 till his death. Besides being the Caribbean historian, he was regarded as the father of the nation.

⁵⁹⁸ Eric Williams, *Capitalism and Slavery*, p. 48-49.

⁵⁹⁹ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Aboriginal Australians'.

than Aboriginal mother), a "quadroon"⁶⁰⁰, or had a "strain" of Aboriginal blood **you were forced to live on Reserves or Missions**, work for rations, given minimal education, and needed governmental approval to marry, visit relatives or use electrical appliances.⁶⁰¹

Compare these stances with the Islamic reforms of the first half of the 7th century AD when Islam declared that children of masters from slave women were free-born citizens like their other descendants. As such, children from slave women enjoyed equal share in the inheritance of their fathers. They also enjoyed equal status and privileges with their brothers born of free women. The master copulating with a female captive of war possessed by him had to take all care for her as he was bound to do for his regular wife. Children from such women were free born children enjoying parity of inheritance and even accession to the throne with other children of the master. No woman could be prostituted or humiliated by the masters.

Brazil won its independence from Portugal peacefully in 1823. In the same year, President James Monroe of United States announced 'the American continents are henceforth not to be considered as subjects of future colonization by any European powers'. This statement is known as 'the Monroe doctrine'. Meanwhile most of the South America and all of Central America and Mexico also became independent. By 1830, Latin America was home to 16 independent countries. As such, most of the Latin America was made up of independent countries though bearing the influence of their former colonial status.

1848 was a year of revolutions affecting Europe as well as American continents. All these events could be taken as the harbingers of the US Emancipation Proclamation during 1863-65.

We had already pointed out that Europe had no concept of human rights up to the end of the 12th century AD.

⁶⁰⁰ The ancestry of people of mixed-race, generally of African and European ancestry in the slave societies of the Americas, but also, within Australia, to those of Aboriginal and European ancestry.

⁶⁰¹ Wikipedia, s.v., Aboriginal Australians.

Prior to that, only the kings had the absolute rights over their citizens. Slaves had no rights at all while even during the Roman times there had been elaborate law to oppress the slaves as described in Chapter titled 'Condition of Slaves' in Volume I of the Book. Islam had, therefore, been the first religion to introduce revolutionary reforms in the human rights including the slaves as ordained by the Almighty.

The most distinctive feature of the Islamic reforms about human rights was that each and every descendant of Adam and Eve was accepted as full and complete human being enjoying parity of rights with all other members of the species. No superiority or privileges could be claimed on the basis of caste, color, region or race of the people. All these rights were divinely ordained laws to be observed by all the believers in the world. Human rights in Islam, therefore, were not the product of time, pressure, insurrection, revolts or agitation either from the slaves or the poor or from women. Such laws were binding not only on the common people but the Caliphs, the Sultans, the Rulers the kings or the emirs (by whatever title they were addressed). They all were subject to the same law on earth and also accountable accordingly before the Almighty on the day of the Judgment. Besides earnest devotion to the Almighty, the Islamic society, therefore, was based on law of equity, justice, freedom, peace, generosity, equality of rights among all human beings leading to mutual help and cooperation with other members of the society.

▪ ***US Emancipation Proclamation***

About the US Emancipation Proclamation, it has been reported that:

The Emancipation Proclamation was an executive order issued by President Lincoln on January 1, 1863. In a single stroke it changed the legal status, as recognized by the U.S. government, of 3 million slaves in designated areas of the Confederacy from "slave" to "free." It had the practical effect that as soon as a slave escaped the control of the Confederate government, by running away or through advances of federal

troops, the slave became legally and actually free. The owners were never compensated. Plantation owners, realizing that emancipation would destroy their economic system, sometimes moved their slaves as far as possible out of reach of the Union army. By June 1865, the Union Army controlled all of the Confederacy and had liberated all of the designated slaves.

The proclamation made the abolition of slavery an official war goal that was implemented as the Union took territory from the Confederacy. According to the Census of 1860, this policy would free nearly four million slaves, or over 12% of the total population of the United States.⁶⁰²

▪ ***Post-Emancipation Proclamation Slavery***

The US Emancipation Proclamation had great impact on the institution of slavery throughout the world. It was the first broad-spread moral recognition of the human rights as regards slaves. Various other forces had also been working on humanitarian grounds to eliminate slavery and to recommend universal brotherhood of mankind in the world. Although, there had been many important figures who made valuable contribution to improve human conditions in the world yet two instances can be taken up as exemplary among them. First one is the instance of Mr. Fanon⁶⁰³ about whom it has been recorded that:

In a narrative both inspiring and distressing, Fanon looked at the cost to the individual who lives in a world where due to the colour of his or her skin, he or she is rendered peculiar, an object of derision, an aberration. In the chapter 'The Fact of Blackness' he remembers who he felt when in France white strangers pointed out his blackness, his difference with derogatory phrases such as 'dirty nigger!' or 'look, a Negro!':

On that day, completely dislocated, unable to be abroad with the other, the white man, who unmercifully imprisoned me, I took myself far off from my own presence, far indeed, and made myself an object. What else could it be for me but an amputation, an excision, a haemorrhage that spattered my

⁶⁰² Wikipedia, s.v. Slavery in the United States.

⁶⁰³ Frantz Omer Fanon (1925-1961) was a Martinique-born Afro-Caribbean psychiatrist, philosopher, revolutionary, and writer whose works are influential in the fields of post-colonial studies, critical theory, and Marxism. His father was a descendant of enslaved Africans and indentured Indians.

whole body with black blood? But I did not want this revision, this thematisation. All I wanted was to be a man among other men. I wanted to come lithe and young into a world that was ours and to help to built it together.⁶⁰⁴

Like many other great people in the world, Mr. Fanon died relatively at an early age in 1961 when he was just 36 years. Alas! His dream may perhaps take many centuries before the Western nations start acknowledging the black races and people from the underdeveloped countries as human beings like them. Similar was the case of Mr. Martin Luther King Jr. reference to whom will be made in the following.

The condition of the slaves had started showing improvement in the USA after the Civil War and the proclamation of emancipation on January 1, 1863 by Abraham Lincoln, the 16th President of the USA and the 13th amendment (1865), yet the process of attaining equal human rights had been extremely slow and discouraging for the former slaves, colonial people or people of the black race. Subsequently, a good deal of improvement occurred due to the incessant efforts of Black people especially the clergyman Martin Luther King Jr. (1929-1968) who was also awarded a Noble prize in 1964. On August 28, 1963, the King delivered a stirring address to an audience of more than 200,000 civil rights supporters in the USA as quoted earlier. He said:

I have a dream that one day this nation will rise up and live out the true meaning of its creed: We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal [stress added]. (...) I have a dream that my four little children will one day live in a nation where they will not be judged by the color of their skin but by the content of their character⁶⁰⁵.

Although King's efforts won many supporters even from the white Americans who upheld his civil rights

⁶⁰⁴ John McLeod, *Beginning Postcolonialism*, (New York: Manchester University Press, 2000), p. 20.

⁶⁰⁵ As such Martin Luther King Jr. and Fanon demanding "Universal Brotherhood of Mankind and Equality of Rights" during 1950-1963 died without fulfillment of their dreams. They perhaps were unaware of the fact that the Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) had proclaimed and promulgated the same rights in the Islamic realm in about 630 AD. Equality of human rights, therefore, is universally accepted principle throughout the Islamic World.

movement, yet no major improvement in the racial discrimination could be discerned during his lifetime in the USA. Eventually Martin Luther King was assassinated⁶⁰⁶ in 1968 while his dream was yet to be materialized. Black people's struggle for equality of rights with the white Americans had been continuing since then to the present times. In spite of the fact that the followers of Martin Luther attained substantial success on legal, theological and theoretical grounds yet the black Americans fail to enjoy any perceptible parity in different walks of life with the white Americans till today.

The most important and revolutionary ambition of Frantz Omer Fanon was to see man liberated from his alienation. His aspiration was that '**All I wanted was to be a man among other men**' and the dream of Martin Luther King Jr. i.e. 'that all men are created equal, (...) that my four little children will one day live in a nation where they will not be judged by the color of their skin but by the content of their character' aimed at imposition of the law of the Lord on earth as per verdict of the Almighty for the believers to fear the Lord and to mend their behavior in the following manner. God said:

10. The Believers are but a single Brotherhood: So make peace and reconciliation between your two (contending) brothers; and fear Allah, that ye may receive Mercy.

11. O ye who believe! Let not some men among you laugh at others: It may be that the (latter) are better than the (former): Nor let some women laugh at others: It may be that the (latter) are better than the (former): Nor defame nor be sarcastic to each other, nor call each other by (offensive) nicknames: Ill-seeming is a name connoting wickedness, (to be used of one) after he has believed: And those who do not desist are (indeed) doing wrong.

12. O ye who believe! Avoid suspicion as much (as possible): for suspicion in some cases is a sin: And spy not on each other behind their backs. Would any of you like to eat the flesh of his dead brother? Nay, ye would abhor it...But fear Allah: For Allah is Oft-Returning, Most Merciful.

13. O mankind! We created you from a single (pair) of a male and a female, and made you into nations and tribes, that

⁶⁰⁶ For racial segregation, see also Montgomery Bus Boycott 1955 during which the house of Martin Luther King Jr. was bombed.

ye may know each other (not that ye may despise (each other). Verily the most honoured of you in the sight of Allah is (he who is) the most righteous of you. And Allah has full knowledge and is well acquainted (with all things).⁶⁰⁷

The verses quoted above enjoin not only universal brotherhood of mankind but also make it mandatory for the believers to adopt excellent moral behavior with other members of their society. The Qur'ān, therefore, goes far beyond the aspirations of Che Guevara, Frantz Fanon and Martin Luther King Jr. as regards equality of rights, social status, cordiality and mutual respect among different members of the society. The verse 49:13 quoted above exceedingly fulfills the desired judgment on the basis of character than the color of the skin. The verse also establishes equality of rights among the human beings. The Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) had further elaborated the verdict of the Lord in the following words:

All mankind is from Adam and Eve, an Arab has no superiority over a non-Arab nor a non-Arab has any superiority over an Arab; also a white has no superiority over a black nor a black has any superiority over a white - except by piety and good action.⁶⁰⁸

The Prophet Muhammad (peace be upon him) said to an (Arab) companion: "You are not better than people (of other races) unless you excel them in piety."⁶⁰⁹

No wonder the worst exploitation of the slaves occurred in the new world where the White colonizers of the West continued showing brutality, firstly, towards the original inhabitants of America and subsequently with the Negroes enslaved and deported to America from their colonies in the African Continent. Eventually, after fierce and prolonged struggle in Europe, slave-trade was formally condemned at the Congress of Vienna in 1814-15 but it had no effect on perpetuation of slavery in the Australian and the American continents. The enslaved Black Africans were refused human rights for centuries together and their slavery as well as exploitation

⁶⁰⁷ Al-Qur'ān 49:10-13 Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁰⁸ Hadith, *Sahih Bukhari*, Vol. 7, Ch. 3

⁶⁰⁹ *Jame Al-Tirmidhi*, Hadith No. 1361.

continued to be justified on the basis of the teachings of the Bible until about the year 1963.

Keeping in view the past experience and present mental aptitude of various nations in the world, we cannot foresee any positive change towards recognition of universal brotherhood and parity of rights among the Hindus, the Western Christendom and many other non-Muslim nations in the world for several hundred years in the future. The oppressed people, therefore, have two options before them. One; that they may give up the desire to attain equality of rights and status with the so called superior races. Alternately they have no recourse except to seek asylum within the fold of Islam. This factor alone may continue promoting fast spread of Islam in Africa, India, America, Australia and many parts of Europe.

▪ ***The Reconstruction Period (1865-1877)***

The thirteenth amendment, abolishing slavery except as punishment for a crime, was passed by the Senate in April 1864, and by the House of Representatives in January 1865. The amendment did not take effect until it was ratified by three fourths of the states, which occurred on December 6, 1865, when Georgia ratified it. On that date, all remaining slaves became officially free.⁶¹⁰

The enactment of the Thirteenth Amendment simply made slavery and all forms of involuntary servitude, except as punishment for crime,⁶¹¹ unconstitutional. The actual abolition of slavery – that is the full enforcement of the 13th Amendment took many decades beyond 1865 to be realized. Enforcement of the 13th amendment began during the Reconstruction period, but there were many setbacks between that time and full enforcement.⁶¹²

From 1865 to 1875, federal troops were stationed in the south specifically to keep blacks from being re-enslaved. However, after ten years of protection the federal troops were withdrawn, leaving blacks at the mercy of their former captors. When African Americans in the south no

⁶¹⁰ Wikipedia, s.v. '*Slavery in the United States*'.

⁶¹¹ Note that Islam had banned all sources of slavery from debt, punishment for crimes or slave hunts etc. No new enslavement could be made even temporarily except for the captives of war.

⁶¹² Wikipedia, s.v. '*Slavery in the United States*'.

longer had the protection of the federal troops, whites found other ways to practice involuntary servitude.

This lasted well into the 20th century, until President Lyndon B. Johnson abolished Peonage in 1966, which rapidly decreased sharecropping in every plantation nationwide. Although slavery is commonly understood to have ended with the Emancipation Proclamation, or the Thirteenth Amendment, exhaustive research conducted by journalist Douglas A. Blackmon and reported in his Pulitzer Prize winning book ***Slavery By Another Name* shows that thousands of African Americans were re-enslaved** with shocking force and brutality after the period of Reconstruction was over.⁶¹³

The continued involuntary servitude took various forms but the primary forms included convict leasing, peonage, and sharecropping, with the latter eventually encompassing poor whites as well and by the 1930s, they made up the vast majority. Using convict leasing programs, African American men, often guilty of no crime at all, were **arrested, compelled to work without pay, repeatedly bought and sold, and coerced to do the bidding of masters.** Sharecropping as it was practiced during this period often involved severe restrictions on the freedom of movement of sharecroppers who could be whipped for leaving the plantation. Both sharecropping and convict leasing were legal and tolerated by both the north and south. However, peonage was an illicit form of forced labor. Its existence was ignored by authorities while thousands of African Americans and poor Anglo Americans were subjugated and held in bondage until the mid 1960s to the late 1970s.⁶¹⁴

▪ **UN Charter of Human Rights**

On December 10, 1948 the UN General Assembly adopted the universal declaration of Human Rights. It had 30 Articles. The first eight of the articles being most important are reproduced in the following:

Article 1

All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights. They are endowed with reason and conscience and should act towards one another in a spirit of brotherhood.

Article 2

⁶¹³ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Slavery in the United States'.

⁶¹⁴ Wikipedia, s.v. 'Slavery in the United States'.

Everyone is entitled to all the rights and freedom set forth in this Declaration, without distinction of any kind, such as race, colour, sex, language, religion, political or other opinion, national or social origin, property, birth or other status.

Furthermore, no distinction shall be made on the basis of the political, jurisdictional or international status of the country or territory to which a person belongs, whether it be independent, trust, non-self-governing or under any other limitation of sovereignty.

Article 3

Everyone has the right to life, liberty and the security of person.

Article 4

No one shall be held in slavery or servitude; slavery and the slave trade shall be prohibited in all their forms.

Article 5

No one shall be subjected to torture or to cruel, inhuman or degrading treatment or punishment.

Article 6

Everyone has the right to recognition every where as a person before the law.

Article 7

All are equal before the law and are entitled without any discrimination to equal protection of the law. All are entitled to protection against any discrimination in violation of this declaration and against any incitement to such discrimination.

Article 8

Everyone has the right to an effective remedy by the competent national tribunals for acts violating the fundamental rights granted to him by the constitution or by law.

It was a great achievement of the UN General Assembly to declare universal rights of human beings which determine some value of the individual, the groups and the societies. By imposing legal embargo on slavery and by pronouncing equality of rights among the human beings including women, it has surpassed all other social laws ratified by the human organizations.

In spite of its elaboration under 30 different articles the universal declaration of human rights fell short of the specific details to protect women against numerous types of exploitation by the male dominated society. It had no reference to improve the lot of women living

under stress and strain. Nothing has been suggested to improve the fate of the widows and divorced women. There was no provision for the orphans. The declaration had no remedy for marrying the women where they exceed the number of men in the country. The surplus women, too, were human beings having the rights and desire to marry and to produce children of their own. Why cannot they be given relief by permitting them to marry the men having sick women, those who have no children or where occurs severe shortage of men due to war or other natural factors? The UN Assembly has, therefore, intentionally ignored such women only to uphold the Christian preachings of monogamy which instead of a divine writ was the preaching and tradition of the celibates, ascetics, hermits or fanatic Christian fathers. Such orders had never been enjoined by the Lord. Monogamy or the practice of abstinence from food or lawful sex also differs from the practice of many prophets of the LORD as recorded in the Old Testament. According to the Bible, Lamech was the first person to have two wives⁶¹⁵. Thereafter, we find about 41 other persons having two or more wives as recorded in the Old Testament. Since the Lord did not prohibit marriage or polygamy, therefore, we find no grounds for Christians to impose their man-made concepts of celibacy, monogamy, chastity through virginity or abstaining from food or sex even through the lawful means.

As regards the moral aspects such as chastity, the sanctity of married life, purity of blood and preservation of the pedigree, the UN declaration has nothing to say. It does not include the rights of human beings to be looked after during their destitution and oppression by others. Usury had always been the mother of numerous vices in the world which had ruinous effects on the liberty and independence of individuals as well as the nations. Wealthy people or the nations in the world have always been drenching the blood out of the veins of the poor people or the societies. The UN Declaration of

⁶¹⁵ Gen 4:23.

Human rights is also not concerned with the economic and political slavery or the backward societies at the hands of the rich, powerful and advanced nations in the world. Like other man-made laws, **the UNO too had to observe the principle of might is right or the majority is the authority.** As such, it helps only the powerful and more numerous members than the weaker and the minority among the organization. Since the Islamic law is based entirely on the commandments of the Lord, it accords full protection to the weaker and the poor people from the exploitation of the majority and the strong one.

In the absence of God-consciousness and fear of accountability before Him, there could be no possibility that mere declaration of rights may transform the hearts and souls of the elite classes in the West to treat the Negroes from Kenya or Ethiopia like the Englishmen, French or Germans etc. in Europe or USA. The modern slavery act 2015 passed by parliament of United Kingdom is also an evidence that the evils of slavery continue to prevail and the nations of the world will have to pursue the full implementation of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights in words and spirit.

Only the moral suasion of the prophets like Jesus and Muhammad (pbAh) could bring intrinsic change in the heart and soul of men. Beautiful words of morality and ideology, as we find in the UNO declaration, cannot bring any real change in the human outlook towards their brethren suffering from diversity and helplessness. Mere words without an inner change cannot eradicate discrimination between the white and the black, poor and the rich or the powerful against the helpless members of the community. To remove the disparities among them, therefore, we need to live consciously under fear of our accountability before the Almighty.

US Emancipation Proclamation 1963/5, UNO Declaration of Human Rights 1948 and Vienna Declaration adopted by World Conference on Human Rights 1993 were all directed towards the elimination of crude forms of slavery. No one thereafter could be called as a slave in

terms of law. The ultimate impact had been only the legal elimination of slavery yet in practice, it continued in many areas openly or in various disguised forms. Since 1993, there seemed to be no legal slaves on record yet the institution survives in such forms that neither fall under the crude form of slavery nor such people enjoy liberty, dignity and equality of rights to enjoy peaceful co-existence with the powerful and rich people and nations in the world. Serfs under Feudalism were no different than the slaves. Heavily indebted nations and those unable to defend their borders and the polity are free only in name. Backward nations can neither enter into any agreement annoying their powerful protectors/ allies nor do they enjoy absolute control over their natural resources or the revenues received for the same. **They enjoy no liberty to choose the friends or foes at their own free will.** Nothing is concealed from the scientifically and militarily developed nations nor can such nations take any decisions conflicting with the interests of the super powers. Instead of any reduction or elimination, therefore, slavery has expanded to all the parts of the world. The supreme powers today intrude into the privacy of all citizens no matter they are counted among the angels or the devils.

Ch. 16 -

THE LEVEL TO WHICH WE HAVE SUNK

Power Corrupts Everybody

The Bible as well as the Qur'ān had narrated many examples which reveal that normally the poor people had been receiving the prophets properly and abiding by the commandments of the Almighty. As for the mighty kings, the rich and powerful people, they always behaved in an arrogant manner and continued to oppress and exploit the people in their domain. The Lord had, therefore, been destroying the arrogant nations and replacing them with new people many of whom behaved in a better manner than their predecessors. The human history contains examples of Nimrod, the Pharaohs, the Assyrian Kings, the Romans, the Tartars and other tyrants who stood wiped off the face of the earth. During the five centuries in the past we came across Western nations boasting for their superiority over all other nations in the world. Each of such nations took pride of their superior culture, knowledge, power and traditions. Among them had been the Spanish people, the people of Portugal, the Russians, the Germans, the Belgians, the British, the Japanese and last of all the people of the United States. We shall, therefore, be picking up the USA people as one of the examples of the stiff-necked violators of the commandments of the Lord and especially transgressing the human rights throughout the world.

USA holds a vast territory consisting of most fertile lands in the world. It also controls a substantial part of the world resources of power and energy besides possessing the strategically important places and ports in the world. USA, therefore, boasts of her excellence in all these fields. From the end of the 2nd World War, it attained

commanding position among the nations i.e. a supreme power in the world. After the disintegration of USSR, the USA started propagating themselves as the only supreme power over the globe. Their arrogance was apparent from their pretensions of creating a New World Order and a unipolar system to have a lion's share in the possessions and all the natural resources in the world. We have devoted substantial part of our discussions to cover some important parts of the history of the American continents and especially of USA from the mid of the 16th century to the present. Our study has revealed that with the passage of time, the US authorities are becoming more and more aggressive against other nations in the world to deprive all their competitors from sharing the bounties of the Lord with them. Instead of behaving as a leader of the nations to promote peace, justice and welfare of human beings on earth, they are concentrating entirely to become dictators of the world to promote the interests of USA.

▪ ***The Perished Nations***

Our present book is primarily concerned with the violation of the human rights. The human history reveals that most of the people had been behaving wickedly in pursuit of their own interests and lusts violating the commandments of the Almighty. Turning away from the guidance of the Lord had been the cause of human sufferings in the world, retribution for which is sure to be received in the hereafter. It is, therefore, expedient to recount some of the instances of the nations who were eliminated due to their disobedience and arrogance against the Lord. Alas! The Human beings never learnt any lesson from the events of the past.

The Almighty had usually been deputing His prophets from among ordinary people known for their rectitude and moral excellence in the society. Prominent among the disbelievers and the opposers had always been the kings, rich or the powerful among the people who besides maltreating the messengers and their followers, arrogantly disobeyed the commandments of the Lord. Due to their earthly power and wealth, the non-believers

did not fear the Almighty and became extremely vicious. Many such nations were, therefore, chastised by the Lord. To elucidate the point, we quote some of the instances from the Qur'ān:

Perhaps first of the nations to be destroyed were the people of Noah about whom the Qur'ān reveals that:

59. INDEED, We sent forth Noah unto his people, and he said: "O my people! Worship God alone: you have no deity other than Him. Verily, I fear lest suffering befall you on an awesome Day!" 60. The great ones among his people replied: "Verily, we see that thou art obviously lost in error!" (...) 64. But they rejected him, and We delivered him, and those with him, in the Ark: but We overwhelmed in the flood those who rejected Our signs. They were indeed a blind people!⁶¹⁶

Similarly, it is recorded about the people of 'Ad that:

Now the 'Ad behaved arrogantly through the land, against (all) truth and reason, and said: "Who is superior to us in strength?" What! Did they not see that Allah, Who created them, was superior to them in strength? But they continued to reject Our Signs! So We sent against them a furious Wind through days of disaster, that We might give them a taste of a Penalty of humiliation in this life; but the Penalty of a Hereafter will be more humiliating still: and they will find no help.⁶¹⁷

After destruction of the 'Ad, the Almighty had sent prophet Saleh towards the Thamud:

The leaders of the arrogant party among his people said to those who were reckoned powerless. (...) The Arrogant party said: "For our part, we reject what ye believe in. "So the earthquake took them unawares, and they lay prostrate in their homes in the morning!⁶¹⁸

About Nimrod, the Almighty revealed that:

Hast thou not Turned thy vision to one who disputed with Abraham About his Lord, because Allah had granted him power? Abraham said: "My Lord is He Who Giveth life and death." He said: "I give life and death". Said Abraham: "But it is Allah that causeth the sun to rise from the east: Do thou then cause him to rise from the West." Thus was he

⁶¹⁶ Al-Qur'ān 7:59-60, 64 Muhammad Asad.

⁶¹⁷ Al-Qur'ān 41:15-16 Yusuf Ali.

⁶¹⁸ Al-Qur'ān 7:75-76, 78 Yusuf Ali.

confounded who (in arrogance) rejected faith. Nor doth Allah Give guidance to a people unjust.⁶¹⁹

Both the Bible and the Qur'ān have reminded us about the misconduct of the people of Lut.

160. the people of Lut rejected the apostles. 161. Behold, their brother Lut said to them: "Will ye not fear ((Allah))? (...) 165. "Of all the creatures In the world, will ye approach males, 166. "And leave those whom Allah has created for you to be your mates? Nay, ye are a people transgressing (All limits)!" 167. They said: "If Thou desist not, O Lut! Thou wilt Assuredly be cast out!" (...) 173. We rained down on them a shower (of brimstone): and evil was the shower on those who were admonished (but heeded not)!⁶²⁰

About the companions of the wood (اصحاب الايكة), it has been revealed that:

They said: "O Shu'aib! much of what thou sayest we do not understand! In fact among us we see that thou hast no strength! Were it not for thy family, we should certainly have stoned thee! for thou hast among us no great position!" 94. When Our decree issued, We saved Shu'aib and those who believed with him, by (special) mercy from Ourselves: But the (mighty) blast did seize the wrong-doers, and they lay prostrate in their homes by the morning.⁶²¹

Moses had been a great prophet of the Lord and the most important lawgiver before the Advent of the Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh). The Almighty had commanded Moses that:

17. "Go Thou to Pharaoh for He has indeed transgressed all bounds: (...) 21. but (Pharaoh) rejected it and disobeyed (guidance); 22. further, He turned His back, striving hard (against Allah.. 23. then He collected (his men) and made a proclamation, 24. saying, "I am your Lord, Most High".⁶²²

Truly Pharaoh elated himself in the land and broke up its people into sections, depressing a small group among them: their sons he slew, but he kept alive their females: for he was indeed a maker of mischief. (...) Pharaoh said: "O Chiefs! no god do I know for you but myself: therefore, O Haman! light me a (kiln to bake bricks) out of clay, and build me a lofty palace, that I may mount up to the god of Moses: but as far

⁶¹⁹ Al-Qur'ān 2:258 and 38 Yusuf Ali.

⁶²⁰ Al-Qur'ān 26:160-167, 173 Yusuf Ali, See also Gen. ch. 19.

⁶²¹ Al-Qur'ān 11:91 Yusuf Ali.

⁶²² Al-Qur'ān 79:21-24 Yusuf Ali.

as I am concerned, I think (Moses) is a liar!⁶²³

90. we took the Children of Israel across the sea: Pharaoh and His hosts followed them In insolence and spite. at length, when overwhelmed with the flood, He said: "I believe that there is no god except Him whom the Children of Israel believe in: I am of those who submit (to Allah In Islam)."⁶²⁴

Since pharaoh and his people had been granted respite by the Lord many times earlier and they had been recanting their promise to believe and serve the Lord faithfully, therefore, pharaoh's entreaty at the last moment was rejected by the Almighty foretelling him that his body will be preserved as a sign of chastisement of those who rejected the word of God scornfully. God said:

92. "This Day shall we save Thee In the body, that Thou mayest be a Sign to those who come after Thee! but Verily, many among Mankind are heedless of Our signs!"⁶²⁵

▪ ***Pride of the Israelites***

Strange enough that in spite of the fact that the Almighty had done great favors for the Israelites as we find recorded in the Bible as well as in the Qur'ān, they did not turn to the Lord wholeheartedly. After their delivery from their slavery in Egypt, they were led to the Promised Land and the Lord had been showering different types of His blessings on them yet they being stiff necked people flouted the commandments of the Lord at various occasions and especially at the Mt. Sinai by worshiping the Gold Bull and turning the camp into an orgy of drinking and sex (Ex. 32:3-6). On intervention of Moses, they were forgiven their grievous sins but the Israelites did not learn any lesson from the same. Subsequently, the Israelites refused to enter and invade Canaan, the land promised to them by the Lord. Besides this, they also started complaining against Moses and the Lord. Eventually, they were chastised as recorded in the following:

⁶²³ Al-Qur'ān 28:4 and 38 Yusuf Ali.

⁶²⁴ Al-Qur'ān 10:90 Yusuf Ali.

⁶²⁵ Al-Qur'ān 10:92 Yusuf Ali.

26. And the LORD spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying, 27. How long shall I bear with this evil congregation, which murmur against me? (...) 28. Say unto them, As truly as I live, saith the LORD, as ye have spoken in mine ears, so will I do to you: 29. Your carcases shall fall in this wilderness; and all that were numbered of you, according to your whole number, from twenty years old and upward, which have murmured against me,⁶²⁶

The end result was that all people of the chosen race, 20 years and above died in the wilderness and the only exceptions were the true believers i.e. Caleb and Joshua besides Aaron and Moses.

Similarly, the Romans assassinated many of the prophets and their followers finding them weaker among them. According to the Gospels, Jesus too had been crucified by the Romans as an insurrectionist against the Roman Empire. Due to their refusal to receive Jesus Christ in a proper manner, the then-Jewish race in the Holy Land was chastised by the Lord when almost all the Jews were destroyed by the Romans during 66-70 AD and again in 130-135 AD. The People of Makkah also inflicted extreme miseries and coercion on the holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) and his poor and weaker followers. Muhammad (pbAh) being a mercy for all the worlds, however, forgave most of them and granted general amnesty to the city and its inhabitants. For details, please refer to the history of Islam.

▪ ***The Elimination of Privacy and Freedom***

Freedom in all respects is the motto of all civilized nations in the world. USA claims to be the champion of freedom of thinking, action and trade. Unluckily the ruling class of the same country has usurped all types of privacy and freedom from their own people. Newly developed devices to produce mind controlled slaves, mechanically guided people, brainwashing, reading the minds of the people and abolition of privacy of their own voters are gross violations of human rights. Each and every inch of the rest of the world is directly under the observation of the earth satellites of NASA or other

⁶²⁶ Num 14:26-29 KJV.

space agencies of USA. Many of the scientifically advanced countries have made it lawful to check all types of phone or internet calls, email messages, google searches and other correspondence in the world. Question of secrecy or personal freedom, therefore, does not arise. In this respect, Muslims have a guidance from the following:

Abdur Rahman ibn Awf reported: He would patrol the city at night with Umar ibn Al-Khattab, may Allah be pleased with him, and on one occasion they were walking when the lamp of a household caught their attention. They approached it until they heard loud voices inside the door. Umar grabbed the hand of Abdur Rahman and he said, "Do you know whose house this is?" He said no. Umar said, "This is the house of Rabia ibn Umayyah ibn Khalaf and they are inside drinking wine right now! So what do you think?" Abdur Rahman said, "Indeed, I think we have done what Allah has prohibited for us. Allah the Exalted said: Do not spy (49:12) and we have spied on them." So Umar turned away and he left them alone.⁶²⁷

Since the Lord had prohibited to spy against your own people, therefore, various secret agencies in the most modern countries of the World are disobeying the commandment of the Lord.

There are numerous programmes and plans against other nations covered under beautiful or deceitful names to hide the truth from the people. **Modern diplomacy is entirely based on deception and falsehood.** We have already reported about president Bush that that:

The Center for Public Integrity alleges that the Bush administration made a total of 935 false statements between 2001 and 2003 about Iraq's alleged threat to the United States.⁶²⁸

Although the American and other western nations might be taking the untruths of Bush and other national leaders very lightly, yet we may inform them that the Qur'ān has suggested to the Muslims to invoke the curse

⁶²⁷ Al-Mustadrak 'ala as-Saheehain, Hadith No. 8198 Grade: **Sahih** (authentic) according to Adh-Dhahabi

⁶²⁸ *Wikipedia*, s.v. 'Iraq War'.

of the Lord on those who tell lies (3:61). The Holy Prophet (pbAh) also said:

Truthfulness leads to righteousness, and righteousness leads to Paradise. And a man keeps on telling the truth until he becomes a truthful person. Falsehood leads to Al-Fajur (i.e. wickedness, evil-doing), and Al-Fajur (wickedness) leads to the (Hell) Fire, and a man may keep on telling lies till he is written before Allah, a liar.

Here is another Hadith of the Prophet (pbAh):

Truthfulness is synonymous with fulfilling the trust, and lying is equivalent to treachery.⁶²⁹

We, however, observe that the western secular states go on telling lies regularly without fearing about their accountability before the Lord. David Icke reports about recent examples of lies invented by USA and British governments to invade Afghanistan:

With the United States and British governments having no evidence to support their long-planned intention to bomb the shit out of Afghanistan, their front men, Bush and Blair, merely repeated over and over the pre-rehearsed mantra of lies and unsourced allegations. Their "target", bin Laden has been a CIA asset and stooge for 20 years and the Taliban were funded, armed and manipulated into power by the CIA, Pakistan intelligence and the Saudi royal family, all of which suddenly claimed to oppose them.⁶³⁰

Much advancement has been made to conceal truth from the people. There are programmes to control the entire world economy through corporatocracy shared by business magnates of USA and their allies. The present writer has neither means nor the time to have an elaborate discussion on such programmes of the world powers. The readers may, however, have a glimpse of the concealed agencies and their sinister programs against rest of the World in the following:

▪ ***The Level to which We Have Sunk***

The present day diplomacy concentrates entirely on exceeding lies, treachery and fraudulent treaties to

⁶²⁹ Ibn Katheer, *Al-Bidaya wal-Nihayah*, (urdu), (Karachi: Nafees Academy, Urdu Bazar, 1989), Vol. 6, p. 1136.

⁶³⁰ David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World trade center Disaster*, p. 424-425.

deprive the weaker nations from their wealth, natural resources and territories under their possession. As such, propagation of improvement in culture and advancement of civilization in fact conceals or misrepresents the fast erosion of the moral foundations of humankind on earth. 19th and the 20th centuries had been considered as prime part of the enlightenment period. Unluckily, the same period presents the darkest aspects of human nature. Worldwide wars had been the hideous periods of human history exposing extreme immoralities, cruelties, insatiable greed, violations of justice and lawlessness throughout the world. Feminine gender had been the worst sufferers during the wars.

Raping of Japanese and Vietnamese women and mass rapes in East Prussia, Pomerania and Silesia exceeds millions of the victims. During occupation of Germany, there had been hundreds of thousands of women from 8 to 80 years who were raped by the conquering armies. A large percentage of such victims died during the rapes. To add to it, the 21st century is likely to be more gruesome taking in view the sinister designs and acts of the advanced nations to dehumanize or to eliminate others from the face of the earth. The inhumanity committed in the Abu Ghuraib Jail and Guantánamo Bay has left a permanent slur of immorality on the face of the USA. Sanity and humaneness could nowhere be traced. Instead of promoting truth, justice and compassionate coexistence in the world, the nations are competing to invent such arms that could destroy the entire globe within a few minutes. Although human advancement in knowledge, technology, wealth and science has brought us to the highest points of civilization and learning yet instead of making the world secure for our future generations all such advancements in science and technology are hurling us headlong towards obliteration of man from the planet earth.

The Almighty Allah had showered so much of His blessings on earth and unprecedented progress in knowledge and civilization that should have reflected

itself in ethical evolution of the present world. Unluckily, there had been an adverse effect of knowledge and development on moral aspects of human beings. It's a pity that even the darkest ages in history were no match to the numerous types of exploitation, coercion and constraints on freedom as we find today. In the ancient past, we could count the Egyptians, the Romans, the Tartars or some other people committing mass massacre, enslaving the free people and committing all sorts of atrocities on the down-trodden people. There had been heartrending accounts of their crimes against humanity yet we are astonished to see that in the modern times humankind had invented such new methods to destroy humankind which were unknown to the people of the world up to the first half of the 15th century AD. For details, the readers may kindly go through the chapters 'Horrors of Slavery', 'Dehumanization Slaves' and 'Genocide of Indigenous People', of this volume. Besides this, the topics such as 'Congo Free State (1886-1908)', 'Human Miseries During the World War I and II', 'the Vietnam War', 'The Korean War', 'The Iraq and Afghan Wars' and the present war of Syria and Libya need special attention of the readers. Crimes committed during the colonization period in USA and other events mentioned above are enough to prove that humaneness has become extinct from the world.

Among the modern hazards for mankind, we can count the following:

The Illuminati Organization

The Illuminati Organization has been defined as an elite collective of political leaders, business owners, entertainment celebrities and other influential members of this planet. Apparently, the organization aims at promotion of peace, prosperity and freedom of trade as well as persons throughout the world. Actually, it has much different meanings and designs than those revealed to the masses. The following passage throws some light on one of its aspects:

We are genius incarnate, infinity incarnate, if we choose to be.
But when our isolated, disconnected, droplet of consciousness

is programmed to believe that negative version of ourselves, we reflect that state of being into the five-sense mirror and "live" that imagination of ourselves, that reality. We are what we believe ourselves to be and the Illuminati's most important goal is to tell us what to believe ourselves to be.⁶³¹

Discussing about the five sense prison, David Icke elucidates the conception of five sense illusion which means destroying and suppressing the knowledge of reality. He says **control the sense of reality and you control the person completely**. He also comments that:

Only a few in these circumstances have the wisdom and determination to seek their own truth and not the one dictated to them by those that control the flow of what is bravely called "information". It is to hold our focus in the five senses that we are subjected to a minute-by-minute onslaught of five-sense stimulation through advertising, the media, movies, food, drink and sex.⁶³²

We need vast studies to know and understand the Illuminati and their aims and objects in the world. The books titled *Alice in the Wonderland* and *the World Trade Center Disaster*, *The Truth Shall Set You Free* and *The Biggest Secret* etc. by David Icke throw light on the Illuminati. Similarly many websites and articles such as 'Who are the Illuminati' by David J. Stewart also help us to know more about the said secret society. Presently, we quote the contents of page 9 from the *Alice in the Wonderland* and *the World Trade Center Disaster*, to expose certain aspects of the Illuminati as a sample performance of the society.

It was 11 years to the day before 9/11 - September 11th 1990 - that Father George Bush made a speech to Congress calling for a New World Order. This is the ancient code name for the Illuminati agenda for global control that the terrorist attacks were designed to advance. The Pentagon was also targetted on September 11th. The symbol of the pentagon is the centre of the pentagram, the most obvious symbol of Satanic and Illuminati ritual and 911 is the phone number that Americans call to report emergencies. This is not a coincidence, as anyone who has studied the Illuminati's

⁶³¹ David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World Trade Center Disaster*, p. 463.

⁶³² David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World Trade Center Disaster*, p. 462.

astonishing obsession with symbolism will know. In the final chapter I'll explain where this obsession comes from. The name Capitol Hill is also Illuminati symbolism and named after Capitoline Hill, a sacred place for the Illuminati outside Rome during the Roman Empire. (See The Biggest Secret and the symbolism archives on my website for extensive information about the Illuminati secret language that can be seen all around us.) The symbolism can, also be found in their language and statements. To crack their code, you have to reverse what they appear to say. When they announce that they believe something, it means they don't. When they say they will do something, it means they won't. When they say they won't, it means they will and so on. It is a real life Alice in Wonderland.. They operate with this coded symbolism in which everything is reversed. Thus killing thousands of Afghan civilians becomes "fighting for freedom, peace and justice". Reverse "theirs" to "ours" in this statement by George W. Bush after September 11th, for example, and he is actually talking about himself and those who control him:

"Theirs is the worst kind of cruelty, the cruelty that is fed, not weakened, by tears. Theirs is the worst kind of violence, pure malice while daring to claim the authority of God. We cannot fully understand the designs and power of evil, it is enough to know that evil, like goodness, exists. And in the terrorists' evil has found a willing servant." The Illuminati

The world's "elite" families, no more than 13 at the peak of the pyramid, manipulate their control of humanity through a network of secret societies. This network and the interbreeding bloodlines it serves have become known as the Illuminati, the 'Illuminated Ones'. The Illuminati is an organisation within all significant organisations. It's like a cancer. All the major secret societies feed carefully chosen recruits into the Illuminati and these are the ones you find in positions of power throughout the world. They infest all colours, races, creeds and countries, and yet, so effective is the compartmentalised secrecy that even the vast majority of people within these secret societies have no idea what they are really part of. Most Freemasons never progress higher than the bottom three levels of degree, the so-called Blue Degrees.⁶³³

The present world is entangled into extremely secret plans supported by certain organizations bearing different names to conceal their originality, purpose and the secret assignments undertaken by them. Most of the secret organizations emanate from the Freemasonry

⁶³³ David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World Trade Center Disaster*, p. 9.

Lodges and organizations. The Skull-and-Bones is one of such societies having many branches in different countries of the world. Hardly any outsider may have correct information about their involvements. For the benefit of the readers, however, we are giving short references about a few societies in the following:

▪ **Skull-and-Bones**

Skull and Bones is an undergraduate senior secret society at Yale University, New Haven, Connecticut. It is the oldest senior class landed society at Yale. The society's alumni organization, the Russell Trust Association, owns the society's real estate and oversees the organization. The society is known informally as "Bones", and members are known as "**Bonesmen**".⁶³⁴

The Skull and Bones - Yale University

The occult Bush family 'dossier'

When Saddam Hussein talked of 'the devil Bush' he may not have been so far from the truth. U.S. president George W. Bush, his father and grandfather are proven initiates of this multi-generational occult lodge. George W. was tapped (initiated) in 1968 at the group's Yale University HQ, a mausoleum known as '**the tomb**'. When undergraduates broke in they found that the 'holy of holies' inner sanctum has red velvet walls and carpet, with a large pentagram emblazoned on the wall.

▪ **Illuminati Bloodlines**

People will just have to believe what they want to believe and I have no desire whatsoever to convince anyone of anything. It really doesn't matter to me either if people accept what I say or not. But after all these years of full-time research, which has taken me to 40 countries, thousands of people and countless ancient and modern accounts, it is clear that this "world" or frequency range, the five-sense prison, is manipulated from outside by non-human entities that take over or "possess" the apparently "human" bodies of the Illuminati bloodlines. You can read the detailed background in *The Biggest Secret* and *Children Of The Matrix*, but in summary this is the situation we face.⁶³⁵

The Illuminati conspiracy can be summed up in one sentence:

⁶³⁴ Wikipedia, s.v. '*Skull and Bones*'.

⁶³⁵ David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World Trade Center Disaster*, p. 466-467.

the **manipulation of humanity's imagination of itself**. The events of September 11th have had a massive effect on the human perception and sense of reality - exactly as planned.⁶³⁶

Throwing some light on the 'hybrid bloodlines', Mr. David Icke writes that:

These bloodlines have what has been described to me by insiders as a "corrupted DNA", corrupted by the interbreeding, and you find similar stories among the ancient accounts also. The DNA is the body's genetic blueprint and can have a massive effect on behaviour. One consequence of this corruption is that these bloodlines do not have the same emotional responses as the rest of the earth people. We have an emotional "fail-safe" mechanism in which the consequences of knowing what our actions would do to others act, most of the time, as a defence against extreme behaviour like torture, mass murder, abusing children and so on. However, when, as in the case of these bloodlines, you are not subject to such emotional responses then you can do anything to any number of people without experiencing the emotional fall-out. Killing thousands in the World Trade Center or Afghanistan is no emotional challenge for you. It is just another day's "work", another step on the road to global domination.⁶³⁷

Although the present writer lacks knowledge about the latest scientific developments to turning human beings into programmed instruments yet a glimpse of achievements made up to the beginning of the 21st century can be had from the following:

▪ ***Playing With Our Minds***

David Icke writes that:

This knowledge of consciousness held in the secret society networks for thousands of years has allowed the Illuminati to manipulate the minds of an ignorant humanity and never more so than today. I feel for people who live in the United States because they are subjected to some of the fiercest reality conditioning anywhere on the planet. I would suggest that there is a reason for this - the United States (a private corporation) was set up from the start as a mind-control experiment. Americans are seen as the most powerful nation on earth and technologically the most advanced. It is even believed, shock of shocks, that the USA is the home of freedom. I remember my own experience in 1996 when I

⁶³⁶ David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World Trade Center Disaster*, p. 463.

⁶³⁷ David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World Trade Center Disaster*, p. 469.

travelled the United States for three months and found it to be one of the most controlled, dictatorial societies I had ever seen. But because of the mantra of "this is the land of the free" most people don't realise what a dictatorship they live in. People complain that "American culture" is taking over the world because McDonald's, Burger King and all the other symbols of American society are everywhere. Hollywood, television and advertising are dominated by American settings and influences. But this is not "American culture" that we are seeing exported to every corner of the world, it is those experiments to suppress the human body, mind and emotions that have been seen to have the desired effect within the experimental human laboratory known as the United States.⁶³⁸

It has been further added by the same writer:

Americanization is illuminatisation. That's why I feel for Americans because they are at the sharpest end of all of this conditioning of human perception. What applies to individuals in the Illuminati mind-control programmes also applies to the population as a whole. In the UK the psychologists, social workers and police, glean their knowledge of Multiple Personality Disorder Identity Disorder (used to create mind-controlled slaves) from the Illuminati Tavistock Group (see *The Biggest Secret*). Dr. William Sargant, a psychiatrist with Tavistock, wrote in his 1957 book, ***The Battle For The Mind***:

"Various types of belief can be implanted in people after brain function has been deliberately disturbed by accidentally or deliberately induced fear, anger, or excitement. Of the results caused by such disturbances the most common one is temporarily impaired judgment and heightened Suggestibility. Its various group manifestations are sometimes classed under the heading of "**herd instinct**", and appear most spectacularly in wartimes, during severe epidemics, and all similar periods of common danger, which increase anxiety and so individual and mass suggestibility. "...we would be advised not to underestimate the effect on the collective psyche in terms of fear and a desire for the authorities to 'protect people' from that fear."⁶³⁹

▪ **Micro Chipped People**

Among the preparations to control the people within the state and throughout the world, David Icke disclosed

⁶³⁸ David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World Trade Center Disaster*, p. 464-465.

⁶³⁹ David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World Trade Center Disaster*, p. 465.

one of the devices being practiced to enhance the control of the central authorities on their own people. Referring to his dialogue with an unnamed scientist, he reported that:

He said to me in 1997 that the micro-chips already developed and waiting to be introduced were so small they could be inserted by hypodermic needle during vaccination programmes. The question is therefore legitimately asked about how many people are already micro-chipped without their knowledge. Look how easy it would be. The only thing you would need to do is ensure that all chips were in the vaccine dose. Once that was done the doctors and nurses all over the world would insert the chips without any idea that were doing so. What is happening now with the VeriChip and suchlike is just the beginning. The VeriChips are not even nearly the state-of-the-art. The scientist told me that "electronic tagging" and keeping people constantly monitored from satellite (one of the real reasons for the "Star Wars" space technology) was only a part of the micro-chip agenda and not even the most important. He said it was not the signals going from the chip to the computer and satellite that was foremost in the agenda, but the signals going the other way. He said that once people were micro-chipped the computer-satellite system could program the chips, either individually or en masse, to make people docile or aggressive, sexually stimulated or sexually suppressed (causing problems between partners: the divide and rule), kill them from a distance, given them diseases, scramble their minds and emotions, anything at all.

That's the real agenda of the micro-chip. I remember years ago when I had satellite television I called the provider's office at the opposite end of the United Kingdom to ask to take another channel. I thought they would send me another programmed card for my receiver equipment, but no. The guy asked me to watch my screen and tell him what was happening, and the new channel came up before my eyes. I asked him the obvious question: "How did you do that?" He said he had just sent a signal to the card in the machine in front of me and reprogrammed it to accept the new channel. That's the plan for micro-chipped people. It is the ultimate goal of the Illuminati because then they can create a situation in which every child born is micro-chipped and under their control mentally, emotionally and physically from the day they arrive in this "world".

If you want to see the kind of technology available over the counter to manipulate mind and body just search around the internet. I came across a device called Sonic Nausea, a small electronic device which can, say the website blurb, "really turn

one's stomach". It "generates a unique combination of ultra-high frequency sound waves which soon leads most in its vicinity to queasiness". It can also cause headaches, intense irritation, sweating, imbalance, nausea or even vomiting, says the website. Hiding the device in your neighbor's house might put an end to their late-night parties or it could be used in a bureaucrat's office, the executive lunchroom..." the possibilities are endless for that small portion of inventive payback". The bigger version, the Super Sonic Nausea, "provides serious substantial capability to disrupt and disperse gatherings ... Speeches, demonstrations, crowd dynamics – this device has been used to 'influence' more of these in recent years than you might suspect." Also, according to the promotional blurb, "if planted near the podium, you might just have a case of a speaker with diminished clarity and concentration, or perhaps is even unable to complete his presentation, due to illness". This "illness", says the blurb, "might even be contagious as some of the VIPs up there with him also seemed to have caught the same bug". Imagine what they could do through a micro-chip in your body connected to a computer system.⁶⁴⁰

David Icke's book *Alice in Wonderland and the World Trade Center Disaster* had been published in October 2002. He was, therefore, reporting only about some of the scientific developments pertaining to that time. Since new inventions are coming to light at an accelerated speed since then, therefore, we leave it to the knowledge, search or imagination of our readers to assess the present state of affairs around them. Anyhow, as regards the micro chips, we find it already implemented in many states throughout the world through micro chips grafted within their NIC cards. The smart phones keep the NASA and the USA authorities fully informed about all telephonic conversation and secret talks within the closed doors through out the world. Nothing remains hidden from the intelligence agencies of USA and other superpowers on the globe. One can, therefore, easily imagine further developments since then to control human minds and actions like machines in an automatically controlled factory hall.

⁶⁴⁰ David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World trade center Disaster*, (Wildwood: Bridge of Love Pub. USA, 2002), p. 433-434.

Future of mankind, therefore, can be envisioned from the same.

We discussed earlier that success in any field depends upon good and firm intentions along with hard and continued work for the same. The result of our worldly efforts becomes apparent mostly during our lifetime. As regards the rewards in the Hereafter, the same too depends on our sincere and devoted efforts to do good deeds to please the Lord. From a few references given by us in the foregoing, one can easily assess that the present world is bent upon cheating, plundering and destroying all other people on earth. We have, therefore, reached the state of Art in telling lies, deceiving the others and usurping the lands and rights of the weaker and backward nations. Each nation is trying to augment its arsenals of multifarious types to destroy its enemies within moments. No doubt USA is the richest nation in the world and it also has reached excellence in advancement of scientific knowledge and technological development yet the policy of unipolar dictatorship or the new world order may bring adverse affects on the world. In the present world of perfect competition in development of the scientific instruments, no body knows who may come up with some such device that may be enough to destroy the rest of the world. Countries like Israel, Russia, China, Japan, Germany, Sweden, France, UK, India, Korea etc. are actively involved in development of the arms of massive destruction. We, therefore, need to realize that there can be no guarantee for a longer survival of human beings on earth without creating universal brotherhood and equality of rights and justice for all people on earth. Humankind also need to fear the Almighty and abide by His commandments to save the planet earth. Only truth, justice and universal brotherhood leading to love and compassion for each other is the sure way for further existence of man.

Presently, we find operating hundreds of organizations bearing beautiful names to promote the world peace, prosperity and universal brotherhood yet in reality they are working with intentions much different from the

names ascribed to them. The world peace, universal brotherhood and cooperation for welfare of man on earth cannot be achieved unless we change our intentions to work for the ultimate welfare of all human beings over the globe. Even the Holy Prophet (pbAh) had pronounced that:

“The reward of deeds depends upon the intentions and every person will get the reward according to what he has intended.”⁶⁴¹

To sum up the discussion, we find welfare of humankind in the following:

1. Faith in One and the Only Lord God of the Universe, worshiping no one except Him and obedience to all His commandments to please Him.
2. Observance of human rights as ordained by the Almighty. For this, we need to acknowledge full humanity of all the descendants of Adam. Acceptance of equality of rights of all human beings and sincere efforts to do justice, to help the poor, to release the slaves and to avoid any type of subjugation or coercion against members of our own species are the necessary principles for universal welfare of human beings. The only way to implement these precepts is the God consciousness, i.e. fear of the accountability before Him.

⁶⁴¹ *Sahih Bukhari*, Vol. I, Book I, Hadith No. I.

Ch. 17 -**GOD AND HIS CREATURES****The Purpose of Creation**

In our book *The Kingdom of God on Earth or the New World Order*, we explained that after creation of all the heavenly bodies and other things in the universe, the Lord had asked them:

"Come ye together, willingly or unwillingly." They said: "We do come (together), in willing obedience."⁶⁴²

Although, all the creatures in the universe had willingly undertaken to submit themselves to the commandments of the Lord yet when offered to fulfill the trust independently, they humbly refused to take on them the burden of the trust as revealed by the Almighty:

We did indeed offer the Trust [the Amanah] to the Heavens and the Earth and the Mountains; but they refused to undertake it, being afraid thereof: but man undertook it; He was indeed unjust and foolish;⁶⁴³

امانة (Amanah) i.e. The Trust

Since all the heavenly bodies, the earth and other things had shown their inability to fulfill the liabilities of the trust without constant supervision and regulation by the Lord He put them under His compulsion either through ingrained guidance, programming or subjecting them to obeying the day-to-day commandments of the Lord. Consequently, nothing in the universe enjoyed any liberty to swerve from the will of the Almighty to the slightest extent. This system of compulsion, therefore, is known as the 'Kingdom of Heaven' which leaves no room for any violation, imperfection or sin.

Humankind being 'unjust, foolish and overconfident' took on them the burden of the trust i.e. to obey all the

⁶⁴² Al-Qur'ān 11:41 Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁴³ *The Holy Qur'ān* 33:72, tr. Yusuf Ali.

commandments themselves without any control or intervention from the Almighty. The responsibility to obey the commandments of the Lord independently was mentioned as امانة (Trust) by the Lord (Al-Qur'ān 33:72). Due to taking on them the burden of the trust, the Lord exempted Jinn and Men from compulsion making them liable to account for their good or bad deeds on the Day of Judgment. All other natural forces, heavenly bodies and Earth were put under compulsion and supervision of the Lord due to which they had been working flawlessly. **This universal and perpetual system of direct control of the Almighty had no room for any sin.** Numerous verses of the Qur'ān, therefore, show that all the heavenly bodies and other things throughout the universe are worshiping the Almighty promptly by prostrating before Him, praising Him and complying with His commandments meticulously.⁶⁴⁴

Jinn and Man occupying an extremely small space in the universe were the only exceptions given the liberty of conduct so that the Almighty may observe their performance on earth. The guidance to these species was, however, provided through His prophets sent to each community in the world. This also contained the prime commandment as quoted below. God said:

I created the jinn and humans for nothing else but that they may serve Me.⁶⁴⁵

Like all other creatures, therefore, the Lord had revealed to Jinn and Man the prime purpose of their creation. Instead of compulsion, humankind had been granted freedom to choose and act between different options for their test and trial on earth to establish who among them fulfill the trust independently as against those who transgress the commandments of the Lord and follow their own interests and inclinations. This indirect system of ruling over the earth through the representative of the Lord enjoying liberty from compulsion is known as the Kingdom of God on Earth.

⁶⁴⁴ Al-Qur'ān 3:83, 12:18, 21:33, 24:41, 51:1, 59:1, 61:1, 62:1, 64:1.

⁶⁴⁵ Al-Qur'ān 51:56 Moulana Maududi.

While the Kingdom of heaven operates directly under the command and control of the Almighty, the establishment of the Kingdom of God on earth was the responsibility of the human beings so that they may implement the Law of the Lord and live by the guidance provided by Him. Humankind, however, turned out to be foolish, unjust and imperfect. As such, each and every human being will have to account for his acts and deeds on earth before the Lord on the Day of Judgment.

To cope with the requirements of His vicegerent, the Almighty conferred great honor and authority on him. It has been revealed that:

We have honoured the sons of Adam; provided them with transport on land and sea; given them for sustenance things good and pure; and conferred on them special favours, above a great part of our creation.⁶⁴⁶

Seest thou not that Allah has made subject to you (men) all that is on the earth, and the ships that sail through the sea by His Command? He withholds the sky (rain) from falling on the earth except by His leave: for Allah is Most Kind and Most Merciful to man. Al-Qur'ān,⁶⁴⁷

Do ye not see that Allah has subjected to your (use) all things in the heavens and on earth, and has made his bounties flow to you in exceeding measure, (both) seen and unseen? Yet there are among men those who dispute about Allah, without knowledge and without guidance, and without a Book to enlighten them!⁶⁴⁸

The unique honors conferred on the vicegerent were also obvious from the fact that God pre-announced inauguration of His vicegerent on earth with a commandment to the angels to bow before Adam to show respect and subservience to the representative of the Lord on earth. God said to the angels that:

"When I have fashioned him (in due proportion) **and breathed into him of My spirit**, fall ye down in obeisance unto him."⁶⁴⁹

⁶⁴⁶ Al-Qur'ān 17:70 Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁴⁷ *The Holy Qur'an* 22:65, tr. Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁴⁸ *The Holy Qur'an* 31: 20, tr. Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁴⁹ Al-Qur'ān 38:72 Yusuf Ali.

Consequently, all the angels prostrated before Adam as per commandment of the Lord but Satan being a Jin refused to obey the commandment under the plea that:

"I am better than he: thou createdst me from fire, and him thou createdst from clay."⁶⁵⁰

The conceit of ones superiority over others is called pride in the plain words. We have already discussed the concept in our chapter 1 of the first volume and shall be throwing further light under the topic 'Pride the Root Cause of All Evils'. Presently, we need to point out that according to the pronouncement of the Lord, the main purpose of creation was that each and everything in the universe may worship and serve the Almighty. Worship of the Lord in accordance with His commandment is, therefore, the prime duty of man.

Alas, the greatest default in the conduct of man had been to forget the prime purpose of his creation. Instead of worshiping and obeying the Almighty with utmost care, they invented their personal tribal or city gods to seek protection and salvation through them. They also went astray in search of their sustenance the responsibility for which had already been taken by the Almighty. God already had assured them that:

6. There is no moving creature on earth but its sustenance dependeth on Allah. He knoweth the time and place of its definite abode and its temporary deposit: all is In a Clear record. 7. He it is who created the heavens and the earth In six days - and His Throne was over the waters - that He might try you, which of you is best In conduct.⁶⁵¹

The verses quoted above have also been rendered in the following manner:

6. And there is no living creature on earth but depends for its sustenance on God; and He knows its time-limit [on earth] and its resting-place [after death]: all [this] is laid down in [His] clear decree. 7. And He it is who has created the heavens and the earth in six aeons; and [ever since He has willed to create life,] the throne of His almightiness has rested upon water. [God reminds you of your dependence on Him] in order to test you [and thus to make manifest] which of you is

⁶⁵⁰ Al-Qur'ān 38:76 Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁵¹ Al-Qur'ān 11:6-7 Yusuf Ali.

best in conduct. For thus it is:⁶⁵²

The Holy Prophet (pbAh) was, therefore, directed by the Almighty that:

And enjoin upon thy people worship, and be constant therein.
We ask not of thee a provision: We provided for thee. And the sequel is for righteousness.⁶⁵³

It is evident from the above that the first and the foremost duty of all the creatures was only to worship the Almighty constantly. As for the sustenance of each and every thing on earth, the Lord had taken the responsibility on Him. The Lord had clearly directed human beings that:

Kill not your children for fear of want: We shall provide sustenance for them as well as for you. Verily the killing of them is a great sin.⁶⁵⁴

Similarly, human beings failed to understand that it is the Lord who decides the provisions for each and every living being. No personal efforts can bring any increase or decrease in the prosperity predestined by the Lord. God said:

(...) Allah giveth without stint to whom He will.⁶⁵⁵

And in heaven is your Sustenance, as (also) that which ye are promised.⁶⁵⁶

And there is not a thing but its (sources and) treasures (inexhaustible) are with Us; but We only send down thereof in due and ascertainable measures.⁶⁵⁷

The human beings, therefore, cannot acquire wealth and provisions beyond that what the Lord had already decreed for them.

Another important point in the verse 11:6 quoted above was that only the Lord knows about the time-limit granted to each living being and its resting place on

⁶⁵² Al-Qur'ān 11:6-7 Asad.

⁶⁵³ Al-Qur'ān 20:132 Pikhthal.

⁶⁵⁴ Al-Qur'ān 17:31 Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁵⁵ Al-Qur'ān 3:137 Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁵⁶ Al-Qur'ān 51:22 Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁵⁷ Al-Qur'ān 15:21 Yusuf Ali.

earth. He alone knows about their final abode in the Hereafter i.e. after their death.

The arrangements as referred to above had been made for the test and trial of man to make manifest which of the human beings turn out to be good in their conduct. This is evident from the following:

He Who created Death and Life, that He may try which of you is best in deed: and He is the Exalted in Might, Oft-Forgiving;⁶⁵⁸

It is, therefore, strange to observe that although the Lord had created human beings only to serve Him yet very few of them pay attention to the same. Instead of worshiping the Lord earnestly, they continue to make strenuous efforts only to increase their wealth and provisions by hook or crook. The God's verdict about such transgressors is given in the following:

To any that desires the tilth of the Hereafter, We give increase in his tilth, and to any that desires the tilth of this world, We grant somewhat thereof, but he has no share or lot in the Hereafter.⁶⁵⁹

Pride as the Root Cause of All Evils

Since only the sovereign Lord had the authority to confer different ranks on His creatures, Satan committed the blunder to assert his own superiority over man. No other creature except Jinn and Man enjoyed the liberty to swerve to the slightest degree from the commandment/ judgment of the Lord. Being free from the natural compulsion, Iblees chose to challenge the decision of the Almighty. As such, the first person to disobey the commandments of the Lord (or to commit a sin) was Satan. It was due to his pride that the Almighty cursed him and challenging the Lord, Satan vowed to continue misguiding the human beings till the Doomsday. This, therefore, shows that pride was not only the first sin committed in the universe but it also became the root cause of all the evils in the world.

⁶⁵⁸ Al-Qur'ān 62:2 Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁵⁹ Al-Qur'ān 42:20 Yusuf Ali.

As discussed earlier there had been two primary sources of sin. The first was to infringe the rights of the Almighty by disobeying His commandments or worshipping someone else than him. The second main source was to violate or to contravene the human rights enjoined by the Lord. The prophets of the Lord had also instructed their followers to fulfill their responsibilities concerning the human rights and to deal them politely. All the Prophets also forewarned the people not to pay any heed to the whispering of Satan who is an enemy of humankind. During their actual conduct on earth, however, some of the people followed the guidance of the prophets with utmost care while the majority had usually been disregarding the message proclaimed by them.

The Bible and the Qur'ān remind us with the news of such people who arrogantly refused to obey the commandments of the Almighty on the pretext that the Prophets sent to them and their followers were inferior to other powerful and rich people in the community. It was, therefore, due to the arrogance and disobedience of such haughty people that the Almighty wiped them off the face of earth. The common lesson we learn from the Bible and the Qur'ān was that the perished nations had established high civilizations and they were extremely proud of their power and superiority over others. Many of them had become so arrogant that they even denied existence of the Almighty while others did not recognize any rights of human beings who were weak, poor and less civilized than the advanced nations. Such nations were overwhelmed with the satanic concept of 'I'm Better than He' and 'Might is Right'. This emotion gave them the liberty to commit thousands of crimes against humanity without any fear of their accountability before the Lord. It was due to utter wickedness of the proud and powerful nations that the Almighty eliminated them from earth.

Declining Moral Standards

The history of the world tells us about the cruelties, coercion and massacres committed by ancient nations. The Bible and the Qur'ān, too, have quoted different instances of human immoralities causing destruction or elimination of many nations in the past. The Egyptian and Roman treatment of slaves had been extremely cruel. The people of Lut were destroyed due to homosexuality, looting the wayfarers and committing acts of abomination in their councils. In spite of warnings from prophet Lut, these people did not desist from their evil ways due to which they were chastised in the following manner:

82. when Our Decree issued, we turned (the cities) upside down, and rained down on them brimstones hard as baked clay, spread, layer on layer, 83. Marked with fire (...) ⁶⁶⁰

Due to being extremely stubborn against the warnings and punishments of the Almighty, the human beings did not refrain from the severest crimes for which the Lord had destroyed many earlier nations. They not only continued to repeat all those crimes but invented many more sinister crimes to offend the Lord.

Presently homosexuality has been made lawful in many of the Western countries while same-sex-marriage has been allowed by 20 states in the western hemisphere and also in the New Zealand. ⁶⁶¹ There is no sense of abomination about nudity of men or women and the so called human beings are misusing even the children and the animals for sex.

The people of Shu'aib were destroyed due to their bad habit of cheating in their dealings and measurements. In the present times, we are much advanced than the earlier people causing losses in measurements, deceiving other nations in business contracts and political agreements. Although the scriptures tell us that most of the nations were chastised by the Lord due to their arrogance of power, superiority over others, denying the Almighty scornfully and subjugating as well

⁶⁶⁰ Al-Qur'ān 11:82-83 Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁶¹ Pew Research Centre, Forbes Statista, 2015.

as plundering the poorer and the weaker nations in the world yet human society at present has already surpassed the collective bad deeds of the perished nations. Besides this, numerous types of inequities have been introduced to suppress and humiliate other members of our own species. USA has far exceeded other nations as regards their explosive bombing and spraying of about 20 million gallons of Agent Orange and other chemicals on the Vietnamese land and people during 1955-1975. Some details about their atrocities in Japan, Korea and Cambodia have already been given by us. US treatment with the prisoners in Abu Ghuraib Jail and Guantánamo Bay Detention Camp was so shameful that the present writer cannot afford either to reproduce the leaked out pictures or to describe the various new methods of humiliation, torture and shameful treatment of the vanquished people in the prisoner camps and the jails. Lots of details are, however, available on the web which can be viewed by the readers to know the details.

Due to increasing disbelief in the Lord and our lack of fear of accountability before Him, we are standing at the door of destruction today. The Lord may, therefore, chastise the human beings at any moment He may decide. In spite of this, the massive piling up of all types of destructive weapons by the supreme powers and clash of their interests may cause an end to any human existence on the globe much earlier than one could imagine.

Denial of Independence and Rights of Weaker Nations

From the start of World War II to the first quarter of the 21st century US had been concentrating on their policy of controlling the politics and economic policies of the colonies getting freedom from other western powers. Some details of their imperialistic designs and achievements have already been given in chapter 11 of the present volume. Different methods were adopted to bring the desired results in the underdeveloped poor and

weaker countries. There had been a long list of covert US involvements in regime changes or increasing indebtedness in these countries. The Kings, the presidents and dictators of different states, not submitting before US interests had to be ousted from power as discussed earlier.

The international guerrilla leader, Che Guevara (1928-1967) of Argentine was assassinated in 1967 by the Bolivian army helped by CIA. His main offences were fighting against exploitation, economic aggression, and opposing subjugation of various nations. He was dubbed as Marxist revolutionary insurrectionist. Similarly, the crime of Jaime Roldós (1940-1981), president of Ecuador (1979-1981) was that he stressed on use of national resources for the benefits of the sons of soil. Besides economic independence, he was also fighting for defence of sovereign rights of his state. Consequently, he was killed during a plane crash in 1981.

Muhammad Musaddiq (1882-1967), the elected prime minister of Iran (1951-1953) insisted on nationalization of Iranian Oil. Consequently, he was overthrown during a coup d'état aided by CIA and British Secret Intelligence Service. Thus an elected prime minister fighting for the rights of his nation was replaced by a despot by USA and the British.

Omer Torrijo (1929-1981) the president of Panama was a national hero and champion of human rights. He had taken back the control of the Canal Zone from USA. He died at the age of 52 in 1981 because his aircraft had crashed at Cerro Marta in Panama during a fine weather.

Jacobo Arbenz of Guatemala (1951-1954) was ousted during a coup d'état in 1954. His main crime was that he was a staunch opposer of united fruit company of USA and opposed domination of US corporations throughout Guatemala.

Manuel Noriega born in 1934 had been maximum leader of national liberation in Panama. Initially, he had been rendering valuable services to US by his link with CIA as a major cocaine trafficker and supplier of illicit weapons

and military equipment to US backed counter insurgency forcers throughout Central and South America during 1989 US invasion of Panama. Subsequently there might have been some clash of interests due to which, he was arrested and taken as a prisoner of war to USA.

Rafael Correa had been a CIA supported military dictator of Ecuador. Later on due to certain differences on national revenues, the US attempted a coup against Correa but surprisingly, he succeeded to retain power. The failed coup was perhaps a warning to him because subsequently, he surrendered most of the interests of his nation in favor of USA.

Manuel Zelaya was president of Honduras from 2006 to 2009. Due to his demand of 60% increase in the minimum wages and other differences with the US Companies, he was overthrown during a coup in 2009.

There had been a long list of US covert operations to protect and promote their interests throughout the world. Being unable to afford further time and space for that, we think the few instances quoted above may suffice to show the general trend of USA to extend their imperialism over the globe.

Although, the western media is fully involved in propagating an ideal situation of human rights in the West while disparaging the underdeveloped Asian, African and South Asian countries yet falsehood and propagation cannot change the reality. Human rights for them is not a general term covering all members of human society. As such, when they talk of human rights, they actually mean white citizens of the Western Hemisphere excluding the blacks and underdeveloped nations in Asia and Africa. They, therefore, need to change their concept of humanity as per the verdict of the Creator. Their conception of pride based on misconception of superiority such as master races ruling the born slaves is an impasse which cannot be removed during thousands of years to come. They are overwhelmed by pride i.e. the invention of Satan and

the powerful nations cannot get rid of it. Pride of superiority being the main hindrance leaves no room for unity of mankind and equality of rights on earth.

God's Verdict on Human Rights

Concluding our discussion on human rights, we again repeat the verdict of the Lord and teachings of the Holy Prophet (pbAh) on the same. God said:

O mankind! We created you from a single (pair) of a male and a female, and made you into nations and tribes, that ye may know each other (not that ye may despise (each other)). Verily the most honoured of you in the sight of Allah is (he who is) the most righteous⁶⁶² of you. And Allah has full knowledge and is well acquainted (with all things).⁶⁶³

The Holy Prophet Muhammad also had declared that:

O people! Indeed, your Lord is one and your father is one. Indeed, there is no superiority of an Arab over a non-Arab, nor of a non-Arab over an Arab, nor of a white over a black, nor a black over a white, except by taqwa.⁶⁶⁴

Narrated Abu Hurayrah: The Prophet (peace be upon him) said: Allah, Most High, has removed from you the pride of the pre-Islamic period and its boasting in ancestors. One is only a pious believer or a miserable sinner. You are sons of Adam, and Adam came from dust. Let the people cease to boast about their ancestors. They are merely fuel in Jahannam; or they will certainly be of less account with Allah than the beetle which rolls dung with its nose.⁶⁶⁵

Narrated 'Abdullah bin Umar: Allah's Apostle said, "A Muslim is a brother of another Muslim, so he should not oppress him, nor should he hand him over to an oppressor. Whoever fulfilled the needs of his brother, Allah will fulfill his needs;

⁶⁶² Actually the Qur'ān has used the phrase "ان اكرمكم عند الله اتقكم" in which اتقكم

is from the root "وقى" which means to avoid any disobedience due to fear of the Lord e.g.

فَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ مَا اسْتَطَعْتُمْ وَأَطِيعُوا وَأَطِيعُوا خَيْرًا لَّأَنْفُسِكُمْ وَمَنْ يُوقِ شَحْ نَفْسِهِ فَلَوْلَاكَ هُمْ الْمُقْلِحُونَ (16)

16. so fear Allah As much As ye can; listen and obey and spend In charity for the benefit of your own soul and those saved from the covetousness of their own souls,- They are the ones that achieve prosperity. (Al-Qur'ān 64:16)

⁶⁶³ Al-Qur'ān 49:13 Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁶⁴ Musnad Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal, Hadith No. 22391.

⁶⁶⁵ *Abu Dawud*, Chapter 41, Hadith Number 5097.

whoever brought his (Muslim) brother out of a discomfort, Allah will bring him out of the discomforts of the Day of Resurrection, and whoever screened a Muslim, Allah will screen him on the Day of Resurrection.⁶⁶⁶

Those who ignored the main purpose of their creation and violated the commandments of the Lord openly to follow their own lusts and interests in the world have gone astray from the Lord. The righteous people, however, have been supplicating to the Lord to help them establish the kingdom of God on earth so that no wrong is done to anyone among the humankind. Jesus Christ especially instructed his followers to pray:

9. After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father which art in heaven, Hallowed be thy name. 10. Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done in earth, as it is in heaven.⁶⁶⁷

The verses quoted above clearly show that the coming of the kingdom of God on earth is the accomplishment of the will of the God i.e. worshiping no one except Him and to do justice with all human beings. Jesus Christ in fact had implored the Lord that the world may be ruled in accordance with His Law. 'Thy Kingdom Come', therefore, did not mean the second coming of Christ as 'God or son of God'. We also do not agree with the interpretation quoted below:

Messiah's Kingdom is sometimes styled the Kingdom of God, because, although it is strictly under the management of Messiah, all of its laws, regulations, judgments, etc., are in strict conformity to the Divine arrangement, which is unchangeable. Hence where we pray, "Thy Kingdom come; Thy will be done on earth even as in Heaven," our thought should be that the grand perfection of the Heavenly Father's Rule and Government is our desire and that we are hoping and waiting for the thousand-year Reign of Christ to conquer the rebellion of earth and to bring humanity back into as full accord with God as are all the angels of Heaven in their perfection.⁶⁶⁸

⁶⁶⁶ *Sahih Al-Bukhari*, tr. by Dr. Muhammad Muhsin Khan, Islamic University Al-Medina Al-Munawwara, (Dar Al Arabia, Beirut, Lebanon, 1980) Volume 3, Book 43, Number 622:

⁶⁶⁷ Mat 6:9-10 KJV.

⁶⁶⁸ Pastor Russell, *Thy Kingdom Come*, (East Rutherford: Dawn Bible Students Association, N. J. 1890, reprinted 2000), p. iii,

According to our observation, the interpretation quoted above does not conform to the concept of coming of the kingdom of God. How could the long-awaited kingdom of Messiah be taken as the Kingdom of God while Messiah himself had failed to establish the same during his missionary period on earth. Obviously, the coming of the kingdom of God did not mean the 2nd coming of Messiah nor the prayer of Jesus specifies any name for that. Secondly if the Kingdom of Messiah was likely to last only for a thousand years, what would be the fate of the earth thereafter? For a better understanding of the concept of kingdom of God on earth, therefore, the readers may peruse our book 'The New World Order and the Kingdom of God on Earth'. A short reference to the same is also found in the first chapter of the first volume of this book titled the Kingdom of God on earth.

The Christian failure to know the true meanings of the Kingdom of God on earth misled them to think that 2nd coming of messiah would automatically direct the people towards righteousness and eliminate all vices and wickedness from the Earth. Instead of striving for establishment of peace, justice, tranquility universal brotherhood of man and equality of rights as enjoined by the Lord, they have been waiting for 2nd coming of Messiah to set everything right for them. The people's disregard especially of Christians for living by the Law of the Lord had, therefore, been the cause of all miseries, injustice, wickedness and other vices in the Christendom.

Intention and Devotion

Islam stresses on worshipping the Lord with extreme sincerity and devotion towards Him. Worship of the Lord is not a show business. It also does not centre around performance of certain rituals with costumes differentiating the high ones from the ordinary people. There are no particular dresses or other signs to show the ranks of the worshipers. In Islam, the main stress is to follow the traditions of the Holy Prophet (pbAh) with extreme devotion towards the Lord. Instead of outside changes, therefore, Islam aims at changing the hearts

and souls of the people. As such, the reward for worship is based not on appearance but on sincerity of purpose and intentions to please the Lord. The Holy Prophet (pbAh) had, therefore, said:

Narrated 'Umar bin Al-Khattab: I heard Allah's Apostle saying, "The reward of deeds depends upon the intentions and every person will get the reward according to what he has intended."⁶⁶⁹

It should be clear from the above that the Lord will not accept the works of the hypocrites. Only those people may hope for good rewards that fear the Lord and follow His commandments diligently.

A God-Less World

The main cause of our wickedness is our disbelief in the Almighty as the creator, sustainer evolver and omnipotent God controlling life, death and everything else in the universe. People today have no interest in faith or the routine religious practices. Most of them acknowledge no God at all. The code of life, therefore, depends upon the laws supported by majority of the people and traditions of the past. The constitutions of USA 1787-1788, Italy 1945, France 1958, Spain 1978 and Russia 1993 do not refer to any God nor do they contain the name of Jesus Christ. Similarly, they also do not mention Christianity or the Bible. The UK has no formally approved constitution yet the one codified by the Institution for Public Policy Research covering about 299 pages show no concern with God. The constitution also does not contain any reference to Jesus Christ or the Bible. As regards Germany, the constitution has nothing to do with Jesus Christ or Christendom. In spite of this, the word 'God' appears twice in the constitution. The first mention is in the starting sentence of the preamble to the German Constitution of 1949. Reading:

Conscious of their responsibility before God and man, Inspired by the determination to promote world peace as an equal partner in a united Europe, the German people, in the exercise

⁶⁶⁹ *Sahih Bukhari*, Vol. I, Book I, Hadith No. I.

of their constituent power, have adopted this Basic Law.⁶⁷⁰

God again has been mentioned in [Oath of office] Article 56 reading: 'So Help me God'.

It is, therefore, obvious from the above that the secular societies are ruled by man-made law than any divinely ordained statutes. They, therefore, severely suffer from lack of moral ethics. The seculars and the atheists are concerned only with the material world, visible things and all that is covered by the five senses of man. The laws do not bind their heart and soul due to which such people neither have sublime motives behind their works nor they find anything ethically sacrosanct or despicable for them.

▪ **Objectives of Life**

Ignoring the ancient philosophers, we observe that the famous Dutch philosopher Benedict Spinoza (1634-1677), in his *Ethica* 1677 stressed on happiness as one of the main aims of man. Happiness, however, can mean different things to different people. To the pious and ethical people, happiness may mean refraining from greed, plunder, torture or any humiliation for other human beings. Such sane minded people find no happiness by causing loss, disgust, depravity, starvation or any other trouble to the people in the world. Majority of human beings, however, has no regard for ethics. Happiness of such people increases with worldly wealth, subjugation of the poorer and the weaker people in the world, plundering others and piling up all the resources of comfort and enjoyment for their own selves.

Spinoza endorsed the Socratic testimony that a philosopher may make as much impression by his life as by his arguments. The rightly guided prophets of the Lord had already been presenting model in their personal lives and their sincere followers had been trying to imitate the lives of their saints and the prophets to achieve moral excellence and salvation. Taking them as role-models of rectitude, their followers adorned their own lives by adopting the pattern of such paragons of

⁶⁷⁰ Basic Law for the Federal Republic of Germany, 1949, p. 15.

virtue. They tried to follow the traditions and precepts of those beacons of light. They knew full well that sincere repentance from sin may bring a change in their heart and soul. Such people live a God conscious life and restrain their unbounded lusts, greed, pride and intolerance within the limits permitted by the Almighty. **The fear of God is the only criteria to worship Him devotedly and to abstain from injustice, cruelty and excessive greed.**

Human Rights Depend upon Demarcation between Human Beings and Beasts:

Although there is great cry in the West about human rights today yet we find no line of demarcation between a human being and a beast in the Western world. Only their citizens, the white people or the citizens of other superpowers are actually accepted as human beings. The colored people, the weaker and helpless nations are taken as sub-humans or even beasts having no rights at all. Almost all the crimes against humanity originate from this misunderstanding about humankind and their rights. Although the Lord had very clearly pronounced all descendants of Adam as human beings, enjoying equality of rights yet most of the advanced nations neither believe in the Lord nor venerate His words. In spite of all this, the word of Lord as quoted below must endure forever.

O mankind! We created you from a single (pair) of a male and a female, and made you into nations and tribes, that ye may know each other (...).⁶⁷¹

As regards the present propaganda on human rights and liberty, the same is simply a farce. Human rights and liberty are void terms till we reach a consensus as to who is a human being and who is not? There can be no question of human rights unless and until the white people accept the black Negroes as their brethren with equality in their dignity and rights. God did not divide people into nations or races. Our colors are not self-

⁶⁷¹ Al-Qur'ān 49:13 Yusuf Ali.

acquired. No one had the fore-knowledge about the place and date of his birth. Similarly, no one knows where, when and in what circumstances he is likely to die. Decisions about all these things lie in the hand of the Almighty the Creator of heavens and earth who tells us that all mankind are descendants of Adam. International justice, therefore, is impossible as long as we accept the verdict of the Lord and treat all human beings on earth as our brethren enjoying parity of rights with us. History is full of the instances that all conquerors had been denying the humanity of the vanquished people. In their arrogance, therefore, they also refused to accept the verdict of the Almighty that the Lord created all humankind from a single pair of male and female and no one enjoys superiority over the other on the basis of his birthright, place of birth, color, race or any other criteria except righteousness as ordained by the Lord and also preached by the Holy Prophet (pbAh) who said:

Abu Huraira reported Allah's Messenger (may peace be upon him) as saying: Verily Allah does not look to your faces and your wealth but He looks to your heart and to your deeds.⁶⁷²

▪ **No Fear of Accountability before the Lord**

We know that the atheists and the secular people do not believe in God. They, therefore, have no spiritual or higher values of life. All luxuries and enjoyments of life for them end with their death. They neither believe in their resurrection nor accountability before the Almighty on the Day of Judgment. As such, no reasoning can convince them to abide by the commandments of the Lord. We, however, believe that such people will be the worst sufferers after their resurrection.

Those who believe in the God and the Day of Judgment refrain from sin and strive for good deeds only under the fear of the accountability before Him. Such people never indulge into killing, plundering torturing or subjugating others merely due to the fear of God. They avoid humiliation of other human beings whether white or

⁶⁷² *Sahih Muslim*, Chapter 8, Book 32, Hadeth No. 6221.

black, poor or rich without any consideration of their language, race or region. Their motto is promotion of peace among all the descendants of Adam as brethren of each other. Colored or helpless people enjoy full parity of rights and social status with them. It is due to the presence of such sane people on earth that the God is continuing to give us respite till the Day of Judgment.

▪ ***Fatal Crimes of Human Beings***

It is a well accepted truth that no other animal or living creature had been crueler than the human beings. They have already killed millions of the members of their own species besides attaining the capability to annihilate billions of innocent people in the world. While about 52% of the world population lived below the line of poverty during 1990-92, there were about 24% of them living in extreme poverty in the world. During the same period the world had been spending such huge funds on the development of atomic and chemical weapons, missiles, the earth satellites and other advanced scientific inventions that only 10% of the said expenditure on the poor could have brought them above the poverty line. Only 1% of the annual defence budget of USA could have eliminated poverty from the countries like Ethiopia, Somalia, Afghanistan and central African republics where thousands and thousands of children and the adults have died out of starvation. The cause of tragedy has been the lack of conscience in the richer and the powerful nations in the world.

Taking as a whole, there had been immense increase in the vices like usury, falsehood, injustice and homosexuality. Due to the principle of Might is right, the law of jungle prevails throughout the world. Sane minded persons are, therefore, at a loss to find the remedy for the maladies mentioned above which are eliminating humaneness from the world. Equality of rights among human beings does not allow any powerful and rich nation to commit atrocities against the weaker and poorer communities. All are equal before God and there is no concept of 'king can do no wrong' in Islam.

Ch. 18 -

THE VISION TO SURVIVE

Those who believe in the God as the creator, evolver and sustainer of the universe also have firm faith in His providence and omnipotence. They, therefore, believe that He is all-seeing, all-knowing Lord God of the Universe having full control on life, death, fate and everything else. Only the fear of accountability before the Lord restrains people from wickedness and motivates them towards righteousness, modesty, justice and devoted worship of the Almighty. Those who do not believe in the Lord, rarely have any moral values before them. They lack conscience about their death or about vanishing of the worldly resources they had piled up with hard labor throughout their lives. Had they any firm faith in their death and accountability before the Lord on the Day of Judgment, they would not have disregarded the guidance provided by the Almighty.

It is evident from the history of the world that the powerful people and nations in the past did not acknowledge any God. Similarly, the super powers of the present times are so proud that they cannot think of any heavenly god or power greater than them. In spite of having scientific knowledge of the infinite expanse and size of the universe, they do not ponder the omnipotence of the Almighty. Their own countries and the size of the earth is the only factor important for them. Although nothing could be said with any certainty yet according to '*Extra Dimensions in Space and Time*' by John Terning (2009) cited by Wikipedia, the diameter of the universe is at least 91 billion light-years which contains billions of galaxies with trillions of stars like our sun or bigger than that. It is said that there are certain stars in the universe which are thousands of times bigger and brighter than the sun. As compared to the heavenly bodies, our planet earth is so small in size that 1,300,000 planets like Earth can fit inside of the Sun.

This gives us the idea of the size and insignificance of the earth in the universe. Keeping in view the size of earth as compared to the total expanse of the universe, the scientists think that the earth is just a spec of dust. The importance of earth in the universe can, therefore, be determined from the same. The proud people as well as nations can also keep in mind the triviality of their stay on earth as compared to the billions of years since the creation of heavens and the earth.

The unity of command and control i.e. operation of the same law throughout the universe is one of the important proofs of oneness of God. Had there been multiplicity of Gods occupying different stars and planets, there would have been trillions of them. It would have been natural for each of them to impose His own law. Such multiplicity of Gods must have created a chaos throughout the universe. God said:

If there were therein gods beside Allah, then verily both (the heavens and the earth) had been disordered. Glorified be Allah, the Lord of the Throne, from all that they ascribe (unto Him).⁶⁷³

The universality of natural law and there being no conflict anywhere in the cosmos, perfect balance and control over all the heavenly bodies and natural forces is, therefore, an irrefutable proof of the unity of command and control in the universe which could not have been possible had there been more than one God. This unity and flawless performance by all the heavenly bodies and other creatures in the universe is outcome of the all encompassing compulsion of the Almighty imposed throughout His domain.

With the exception of Jinn and Men, the Lord had not granted freedom from His compulsion and control to anything in the universe. Even these species were granted freedom of conduct only for their test and trial on earth. Instead of compulsion, the Almighty had decided to establish His kingdom on earth through His vicegerent i.e. Adam (man). To honor man, therefore, the Lord had made everything in the universe

⁶⁷³ Al-Qur'ān 21:22 *Pikthal*.

subservient to the cause of His deputy on earth. We have already discussed the episode of the disobedience of Satan in earlier parts of the Book.

Satan being Jinn enjoyed liberty from compulsion of the Lord. He was therefore, the first person to flout the commandment of the Lord and after seeking respite from the Almighty, he vowed to misguide the human beings from the straight path towards the Lord. The exception from compulsion, therefore, opened the highway for most of the human beings to disobey the commandments of the Almighty and to follow their own lusts and inclinations ignoring the restraints of the Divine Law. All cause of human tragedies and miseries, therefore, emanate from the same.

▪ ***Future Visions***

Presently, the world is chocked with weapons and dreadful is the trust. Although powerful, rich and advanced nations pretend to secure liberty, free trade, property and peace for all people in the world yet their competitive efforts to invent more and more destructive devices to eliminate other nations from the earth is seriously endangering the future of man. The citizens of the powerful nations have usually been claiming themselves as master races or super-humans while weaker and poor people were considered as subhumans rather beasts to be ruled and guided by them. The concept that 'I'm better than he', starting from Iblees has taken firm hold of the minds of people in the world. Many nations, therefore, denied the rights of ownership and possession of the weaker people in the world. According to them only the most advanced and powerful nations are the true humans and rightful owner of all the lands and resources on earth. The uneducated, poor and helpless people are born only to serve them. The concept is becoming more and more popular in the superpowers today. The right to possess the entire sources of the world and human rights depend on advanced technology, arms of mass destruction better education and financial disparity among the nations.

Superpowers have already divided between them different parts of the world for subjugation and exploitation of the resources of backward nations. Just one example may suffice to throw light on the thinking of the most rich and powerful nation in the world. Referring to post-colonial period, Mr. Zbigniew Brzezinski observes that:

However, Roosevelt's highly principled opposition to colonialism did not prevent him from pursuing an acquisitive US policy determined to gain a lucrative position for America in the key oil-producing Middle Eastern countries. In 1943, President Roosevelt not so subtly told Britain's ambassador to the United States, Lord Halifax, while pointing at a map of the Middle East, that "Persian oil is yours. **We share the oil of Iraq and Kuwait. As for Saudi Arabian oil, it's ours.**"⁶⁷⁴

This shows that the backward nations possessing the soil covering oil or other natural resources had no vested rights to claim ownership of the same. Numerous instances show us that the powerful nations assert their primary rights on the possessions of lands and the resources of such nations. The Greeks and the Romans in the ancient past, while the Spanish, the Germans, the Portuguese, the French and the British in the modern periods, claimed themselves to be super humans or the master races at different times. It was on the basis of their superiority that they labeled the indigenous people or conquered nations as subhumans or animals having no valid rights to possess even their own lands and resources.

Satan was the first person to utter that he was better than Adam. Similarly, Cain asserted his better rights over Abel. Both the Bible and the Qur'ān have narrated the story so that human being may learn some lesson from the same. Its pity, however, that Humankind learnt nothing from their past and the unending process of despising or destroying the weaker people or the enemies whether supposed or real is the malady that might endanger all habitation on the planet earth. Since, the Almighty had created life and death, therefore, He pronounced that killing others without lawful justification

⁶⁷⁴ Zbigniew Brzezinski, *Strategic Vision*, (New York: Basic Books, 2012), p. 13-14.

is a heinous crime. To the Israelites it had been revealed that:

On that account: We ordained for the Children of Israel that if any one slew a person - unless it be for murder or for spreading mischief in the land - it would be as if he slew the whole people: and if any one saved a life, it would be as if he saved the life of the whole people. Then although there came to them Our messengers with clear signs, yet, even after that, many of them continued to commit excesses in the land.⁶⁷⁵

Sanctity of life with equality of rights has been bestowed by the Almighty and the violators of the same will be punished in the hell. God said:

68. those who invoke not, with Allah, any other god, nor slay such life As Allah has made sacred except for just Cause, nor Commit fornication; - and any that does this (Not only) meets punishment. 69. (but) the penalty on the Day of Judgment will be doubled to him, and He will dwell therein In ignominy.,⁶⁷⁶

Humankind must, therefore, take admonition for any wrongful killing of free man or a slave, black or white without lawful justification as enjoined by the Lord. Such arrogant violators of the commandments of the Lord are sure to receive a grievous punishment in the hereafter.

It is evident from the history that the Babylonians, the Egyptians, the Romans and many nations in the modern times especially USA have been killing millions of people without any moral or legal basis for the same. Their guiding principle had always been '**the might is right' and 'I'm better than he'**'. They, therefore, utterly violated the commandments of the Lord to fulfill their vain desires. While transgressing the law of the lord arrogantly they did not realize that they were committing heinous crimes against humanity.

Keeping in view the prevalent madness of the Illuminati and other supreme powers in the most advanced nations and their earnest efforts to eliminate their rivals to gain exclusive control over the resources of wealth and power in the world had turned them from compassionate

⁶⁷⁵ Al-Qur'ān 5:32 Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁷⁶ Al-Qur'ān 25:68-69 Yusuf Ali.

human beings to the cruelest beasts in the world. Major parts of our annual budgets are being utilized to create atomic, electronic and chemical weapons which according to the present assessment are enough to destroy the entire population of the world ten times within a few minutes. In spite of this, the superpowers have no satiation of their lusts and they continue to develop such devices which may destroy the entire population over the globe. To save themselves, however, the modern scientists and planners are striving to settle on other planets which seem to them more secure than their homelands on earth. The old teachings of the prophets to promote peace and justice by accepting universal brotherhood of man, equality of rights between all the descendants of Adam and Eve and helping each other to get rid of miseries, destitution and diseases have lost their importance in the present world. As such, ignoring the guidance of the Almighty, the promotion of personal gains and by our plans to plunder and kill all our rivals is likely to bring an end to the human species on earth. We, therefore, find an admonition from the Almighty so that humankind may surrender themselves to the will of the Lord to avoid extinction of man and his replacement by another species on earth. God said:

Seest thou not that Allah created the heavens and the earth in Truth? If He so will, He can remove you and put (in your place) a new creation?⁶⁷⁷

Nations are competing with each other to develop weapons of mass destruction in the world. **They in fact are trying to quench fire with more fire.** Such nations do not ponder over the fact that the tendency to overpower or destroy one nation by another has no end at all. Violence, deception and Untruth are sure to create turmoil on earth which cannot be avoided without turning to the Lord repentantly.

▪ ***Suicidal Developments***

The overall study of the conduct of most advanced and powerful nations in the world at present is increasing our

⁶⁷⁷ Al-Qur'ān 14:19 Yusuf Ali.

pessimism about the future of man on earth. As regards moral aspects, the humankind is proceeding towards the depth of darkness. In chapter 6 of the Volume I of the book, we have described the maltreatment of slaves during the ancient times, under the title 'Conditions of Slaves'. As for the recent past, we have devoted our chapters 2 to 6 of this volume about slave trade, miserable conditions of slaves, their dehumanization and genocide of the indigenous people etc. The readers will be astonished to observe that increase of knowledge and improvement in civilization had adverse effect on moral behavior of the advanced nations. They invented such crimes against humanity which were unheard of before the beginning of the 16th century AD. Super powers are suffering from the pride of their superiority over the weaker and helpless nations. Selfishness, greed, cruelty, injustice, falsehood, nudity, voluptuousness, plunder and inhumanity are creating a corresponding decline in all moral ethics throughout the world. We are fast approaching the time when somebody may cry '**is there any human being around here?**'

▪ ***Legacy for Our Children***

Our study of human history reveals that there had been many superpowers from the time of the people of Ad. The USA at present is behaving like Ad. Such nations are either chastised by the Almighty himself or they indulge in mutual fights eliminating belligerent nations sooner than they could think of it. There can be no end to human greed and aggressiveness unless and until we turn to the Lord and seek His guidance for universal brotherhood, justice and equality of rights of all people on earth. In case fighting between the nations continues, there will be no chances of the survival of man. It is possible that no one may survive after extensive use of modern weapons. **Ultimately, even if there survive only two men (like Abel and Cain), the possibility of killing of one by the other will coexist with them.** The only hope of avoiding destruction is the acceptance of the rights of others and

a concerted effort to do justice and to deal with our own species compassionately.

Dreams of the Well-wishers of Mankind

Although, there had been no prophet of the Lord after Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) yet some pious thinkers had always been suggesting different ways to bring an overall improvement in the human conduct to make the world peaceful, cooperative and prosperous for the humankind. During the recent past, there had been certain philosophers and reformers to suggest such improvements which, according to them, could help us avoid the impending catastrophes in the world. Although their suggestions differed on many points yet they all agreed that mutual love, trust, justice and cooperation among the nations could make the world worth living for all descendants of Adam. Unluckily, the powerful nations in the world never took the advices of the wise men seriously and they continued to increase their powers and possessions by plundering and depriving the poorer and the backward nations from their rights and possessions. In spite of this, there had been many declarations on human rights and great propaganda for implementation of justice, equality of rights and helping the poor and the weaker nations. In the absence of good intentions and serious devotion to improve the lot of the poor, no tangible results could be seen in the world.

The propaganda has only been the smoke screen to cover our selfishness, greed and pride in the world. All superpowers had been striving to improve and increase the destructive devices to eliminate others or to usurp the lands and sources of the poor nations under the threat of destruction. This tug-of-war between the superpowers to plunder or deprive the poorer and weaker nations is likely to create hell on earth. Horror of elimination of mankind on earth is, therefore, increasing day by day. To bring a real change, mankind has no other way except to introduce an ethical revolution in the world as per guidance provided by the Almighty. Only the fear of accountability before the Almighty can change our hearts and souls. In the present conditions,

humankind has no chance to survive unless we change our bestiality to humaneness, hatred into mutual love, selfishness into generosity and pride into tolerance and politeness.

Turing towards the Lord and obeying all His commandments may be taken by some people as archaic or ridiculous concepts in the modern world of secularism, materialism and unprecedented increase in scientific knowledge and technology. Human thinking, however, cannot change the facts. Only the truth, justice, mutual love and spiritual elevation can be the safeguards against the impending destruction of the world. The piling up of the arms of mass destruction and invention of precision devices are posing ever-increasing danger to survival of man for any considerable time in future.

The history provides us with numerous accounts of the saints and sages trying to teach us various measures to reduce miseries of the human beings. Most conspicuous among them was Buddha (c. 563-483 BCE). According to him the first noble truth was that everything in life was suffering, anxiety and sorrow (Dukkha). The cause of all such pains was people's self-centered cravings and the desires. The way to end all pain was to end all desires. The 2nd most important person perhaps was Jesus Christ who, instead of being a strict master, had been extremely concerned about compassionate treatment with the poor, the destitute and helpless members in the society. To one of his disciples, he said:

21. Then Jesus beholding him loved him, and said unto him, One thing thou lackest: go thy way, sell whatsoever thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven: and come, take up the cross, and follow me.⁶⁷⁸

Since Jesus believed in treasure in heaven, therefore, he had been strict about hoarding wealth. He said:

And again I say unto you, It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle, than for a rich man to enter into

⁶⁷⁸ Mar 10:21 KJV.

the kingdom of God.⁶⁷⁹

It is evident from the above that those who hoard wealth, deprive other people of their possessions, treat them cruelly, enslave the free people, and subject them to inhuman treatment, have no chance to enter into the Paradise. Only those people will be blessed with compassion of the Almighty who have been taking utmost care of the human rights on earth. It is, however, observed that most of the powerful and rich people at different times had been committing severe crimes against humanity which are likely to disqualify them from entering into the heaven. This was the reason that the Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) stressed on universal brotherhood of man with equality of rights and being just and compassionate towards the poorer and weaker members of the society. Muslims, therefore, always considered the slaves, the destitute, the blacks and downtrodden people as fully human beings and treated them like their own selves. Other nations who infringed the rights of the human beings usurped their wealth and treated them in a cruel manner are likely to be punished severely in the Hell.

Ignoring for the moment the suggestions of a large number of sages and wise men in the world, we shall turn to the observations of some contemporary thinkers concerned with the vices that may be fatal for peace, liberty and existence of mankind on earth. To understand our present conditions with suggestions for improvement we reproduce the following.

▪ ***Reflection in the Mirror***

David Icke says that:

If you sit in a room with a group of people and you all choose to attack and condemn each other you will have a deeply unpleasant experience and so will they. The responsibility for that experience is not down to some outside force. It is you and the others choosing to attack and condemn each other. You will have created your own reality and while you may blame this person or that person for "starting it", the truth is that you are all responsible for what happened because you all

⁶⁷⁹ Mat 19:24 KJV.

took part. This is what is happening to the human race collectively every day. We are all responsible for what is happening in the world and in our lives, but we blame each other for it. That same group of people could sit in that same room and make a different choice, so creating a different reality. They could love each other, be nice to each other, and respect everyone's different opinion. In doing so they would create a pleasant experience, a pleasant reality. We are in control of what we experience. The difference between the world being a prison or a paradise is merely the choices we make. The world we see through our eyes in people, places and events, is just mirror of our inner self. The "outer" world we see is the reflection of the "inner" self that we don't see and don't wish to acknowledge is responsible. Change that and we change the reflection in the mirror – our lives, the "world".⁶⁸⁰

▪ ***Game Can Always be Won by Hope***

In her book *Bush Agenda*, Antonia Juhaz has quoted Rebecca Solnit as quoted below:

There will always be cruelty, always be violence, always be destruction ... We cannot eliminate all devastation for all time, but we can reduce it, outlaw it, undermine its sources and foundations: these are victories. (Rebecca Solnit, *Hope in the Dark*).⁶⁸¹

In response to Rebecca Solnit's statement, which opens this chapter, we might argue that "there will always be kindness, always be justice, always be renewal. They cannot eliminate all benevolence for all time, but they can reduce it, outlaw it, undermine its sources and foundations: these are our challenges. We can meet them. We require hope to do so."⁶⁸²

▪ ***Lord is the Only Savior***

It is high time that the Human brotherhood may review past history of the world, to learn a lesson for peaceful co-existence in the world on the principles of universal brotherhood, equality of human rights and obedience to the commandments of the Lord. Let us pin all our hopes in the Lord and serve Him wholeheartedly without any fear of deserting us in a helpless position. Serving our

⁶⁸⁰ David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World Trade Center Disaster*, p. 480.

⁶⁸¹ *The Bush Agenda*, p. 309.

⁶⁸² *The Bush Agenda*, p. 342.

carnal interest and acquisition of worldly power and wealth can neither promote overall welfare of mankind nor can our acquisitions on earth give us any solace in the world to come. Those who look towards their worldly benefits are destined to dismay in the manner Cardinal Wolsey had suffered at the hands of King Henry VIII.

Cardinal Thomas Wolsey (1473-1530) was an English churchman, statesman and a cardinal of the Roman Catholic Church. When Henry VIII became king of England in 1509, Wolsey became the king's Almoner. Subsequently, he was raised to the rank of Lord Chancellor. After failing to negotiate an annulment of Henry's Marriage to Catherine of Aragon, Wolsey fell out of favor and was stripped of all his assignments, titles and property in 1529. He was traveling towards Yorkshire when he was arrested under the charge of treason to be tried at London. He fell ill on journey and died at Leicester in 1530.

Among his last words was tragic cry: 'If I had served God as diligently as I have done the king, He would not have given me over in my grey hairs',⁶⁸³

We conclude from the same that if mankind served God as diligently as they served their self-interests, the Lord would have secured them from all adversities in the world and in the Hereafter.

The famous English poet Milton (1608-1674) had said that:

The object of government is not to change from rational beings into beasts or puppets, but to enable them to develop their minds and bodies to security and to employ their reason unshackled (...) in fact the true aim of government is liberty.⁶⁸⁴

We, however, find that instead of great propagation of granting more and more liberty to their people, all governments in the world are actively involved in depriving their people of all liberties already available to them. An ordinary citizen, therefore, finds himself more

⁶⁸³ Carter, *A History of Britain*, p. 343.

⁶⁸⁴ Peter Partner, *Two Thousand Years: the Second Millennium*, (Granada Media Group, 1999), p. 130.

shackled today than at any other time in the history of man. It is mostly through mind control and misrepresentation of facts that people get ready to surrender their rights in search of peace and security for them. To have a better understanding of the techniques applied by USA to justify their invasion of Afghanistan, the readers may have a fresh study of the topics 'So Why Afghanistan', and 'Nine-Eleven Incidence' in our chapter 13 of this Volume.

▪ **What Can You Do?**

This is the title of chapter 46 of Mr. Perkins' book *The New Confessions of an Economic Hit Man*. Referring to a conference for a dream change in 2015, he records that:

When Samantha said, at the close of the summit, "It turns out that love really is all you need," I realized that she was expressing the basis of the new dream. It is the dream that indigenous people and spiritual teachers — from Mother Teresa to the Dalai Lama, from the Buddha to Pope Francis — have always dreamed. It is a dream of love — for ourselves, for each other, for nature, and for the planet. It is a dream that tells us to replace the old dream of a death economy with a new dream of a life economy. This new dream is of an economy that cleans up polluted waters, soil, and air; empowers hungry and starving people to feed themselves; develops transportation, communications, manufacturing, and energy systems that do not deplete resources; applies recycling and solar technologies; creates market, banking, and exchange systems that are community oriented and not based on debt currencies or war. In essence, it is a new dream, founded on courage and love rather than fear and hatred.⁶⁸⁵

Both Samantha and Perkins, therefore, conceive of a revolution, changing heart and soul of people to create a new economy. People have to love each other and join together to develop a community determined to create a better world. **Only devoted and impersonal efforts can rescue more than a billion people living on the verge of starvation.** They need to restrain their animal instincts and channelize their efforts and talents towards

⁶⁸⁵ John Perkins, *The New Confessions of an Economic Hit Man*, p. 290.

beneficial production and generosity to help the needy, the sick and the poor. Any trade or profession causing loss or harm to other human beings must be avoided at all costs. The Holy Qur'ān strictly prohibited the same:

Believers! Do not devour one another's possessions wrongfully; rather than that, let there be trading by mutual consent. You shall not kill yourselves. Surely Allah is ever Compassionate to you.⁶⁸⁶

The verse quoted above contains the lesson of being fair and moderate. Human earnings from trade must be such that confer due benefits to both sides. They should neither cheat anyone in trading nor should one party be a loser at the hands of the other. Justice, mutual benefits and fear of Allah must be the guiding principles of the trade.

Muslim Ummah has been repeatedly reminded of God-consciousness changing their heart and soul to serve the Lord and the society with sincere intentions to please the Almighty. The measuring rod for good reward from the Almighty is the intention behind the act. The Holy Prophet (pbAh), therefore, said:

انما الاعمال بالنيات

It is clear from the above that no compassionate or idealistic society can be created without good intentions on our part. In case our intentions differ from the words of our mouth, we cannot achieve any spiritual exaltation to qualify for the paradise of the Lord. God has enjoined on us to spend more and more to relieve the poor from their miseries and to emancipate the slaves and the impoverished people from their miseries. While God has assured us of His unlimited bounties as a reward to our spending in the way of the Almighty, the Satan terrifies us of the possible destitution due to spending on good deeds. The Almighty has revealed that:

The Evil one threatens you with poverty and bids you to conduct unseemly. Allah promiseth you His forgiveness and bounties. And Allah careth for all and He knoweth all things.⁶⁸⁷

⁶⁸⁶ Al-Qur'ān 4:29 (Maududi).

⁶⁸⁷ Al-Qur'ān 2:268 (Yusuf Ali).

It is now for mankind to choose between following the commandments of the Lord or to follow the vicissitudes of Satan.

We, however, observe that humankind and especially the world powers have never been inclined towards forgiving the mistakes or foolish acts of others. They always tried to take revenge which very often far exceeds the original offence. It is for such people that Roomi had said:

"Washing away blood with blood is impossible even absurd."⁶⁸⁸

It was due to pessimistic records of history that Stephen Hawking, perhaps the greatest living scientists today observed that:

"We spend a great deal of time studying history, which let's face it, is mostly the history of stupidity."

▪ ***The Modern Republics and the Poor***

The Western World believes that the republican system or democracy is the best form of government ensuring freedom of all people and equality of their rights in the society. The claim, however, is far from the truth. About 500 years before the present times, Sir Thomas More (1478-1535) had observed that:

With the sufferings of the poor, as More saw them in Tudor England, he showed a keen sympathy. 'Our modern republics', he says, 'are nothing but a conspiracy of the rich. The poor are left uneducated, too often brought up in haunts of crime and vice, then punished for becoming thieves and vagabonds.' He comments on the number of thieves hanged in England – 'for the most part twenty hanged together on one gallows, and I cannot but marvel that thieves nevertheless are in every place so rife and so rank.'⁶⁸⁹

⁶⁸⁸ *Progressive Muslims*, ed. by Omid Safi, p. 13

⁶⁸⁹ Carter, *A History of Britain*, p. 336.

▪ **Truth, Justice and Equality**

Bob Morley⁶⁹⁰ sang a powerful song called 'War' some words of which are reproduced in the following:

Until the philosophy which holds one race superior
And another inferior
Is finally and permanently
Discredited and abandoned –
Everywhere is war –
Me say war.
That until there is no longer
First class and second class citizens of any nation
Until the colour of a man's skin
Is of no more significance than the colour of his eyes –
Me say war.
That until the basic human rights
Are equally guaranteed to all,
Without regard to race –
Dis a war.
That until that day
The dream of lasting peace,
World citizenship
Rule of international morality
Will remain in but a fleeting illusion
to be pursued, but never attained –
Now everywhere is war – war.⁶⁹¹

Justice has always been the commendable virtue of each and every great king or nation in the past. It was due to the lack of justice and transgression against the commandments of the Lord that many communities became extinct from the world. Although most of the powerful nations in the world today speak of justice only for propaganda yet whenever justice goes against the interests of such nations, they prefer their own interests over any considerations of justice. As regards USA, it upholds justice only as long as it goes in their favour. The moment justice goes against the interests of USA, they openly veto the decisions by saying "**it is against the interest of USA**". The supreme powers, therefore, openly flout the commandments of the Lord as quoted below:

O ye who believe! stand out firmly for justice, as witnesses to

⁶⁹⁰ Robert Nesta "Bob" Marley, (1945–1981) was a Jamaican singer-songwriter, musician and guitarist who achieved international fame and acclaim.

⁶⁹¹ *Progressive Muslims*, ed. by Omid Safi, p. 25-26

Allah, even as against yourselves, or your parents, or your kin, and whether it be (against) rich or poor: for Allah can best protect both. Follow not the lusts (of your hearts), lest ye swerve, and if ye distort (justice) or decline to do justice, verily Allah is well-acquainted with all that ye do.⁶⁹²

(...) let not the hatred of others to you make you swerve to wrong and depart from justice. Be just: that is next to piety.⁶⁹³

Modern philosophers and thinkers like G. W. F. Hegel, therefore, observed that:

"Rulers, Statesmen, Nations, are wont to be emphatically commended to the teaching which experience offers in history. But what experience and history teach is this – that people and governments never have learned anything from history, or acted on principles deduced from it. Each period is involved in such peculiar circumstances, exhibits a condition of things so strictly idiosyncratic, that its conduct must be regulated by considerations connected with itself, and itself alone."⁶⁹⁴

20th Century Thinkers and Activists

Che Guevara (1928-1967) was an Argentine Marxist, revolutionary and a guerrilla leader fighting against exploitation, economic aggression and subjugation of various nations by USA and other super powers. He was killed by the Bolivian government in 1967 with the help of CIA.

He urged all individuals to view each others as equals. His most important revolutionary ambition was to see man liberated from his alienation. Referring to US policy about black population, he said:

Those who kill their own children and discriminate daily against them because of the color of their skin; those who let the murderers of blacks remain free, protecting them, and furthermore punishing the black population because they demand their legitimate rights as free men—how can those

□ Al-Qur'ān 4:135 Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁹³ Al-Qur'ān 5:8 Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁹⁴ G. W. F. Hegel, *Lectures on the Philosophy of History*, (London: George Bell and Sons, 1902), p. 6.

who do this consider themselves guardians of freedom?⁶⁹⁵

Martin Luther King Jr. had said that:

The ultimate weakness of violence is that it is a descending spiral, begetting the very thing it seeks to destroy.

Instead of diminishing evil, it multiplies it... Through violence you may murder the hater, but you do not murder hate. In fact, violence merely increases hate...

Returning violence for violence multiplies violence, adding deeper darkness to a night already devoid of stars. Darkness cannot drive out hate; only love can do that.⁶⁹⁶

It would also be useful to repeat our reference to Martin Luther King Jr. from our Chapter 8 of this Volume. On August 28, 1963, the King Jr. delivered a stirring address to an audience of more than 200,000 civil rights supporters in the USA. He said:

I have a dream that one day this nation will rise up and live out the true meaning of its creed: We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal [stress added]. (...) I have a dream that my four little children will one day live in a nation where they will not be judged by the color of their skin but by the content of their character [stress added].

The dream of Frantz Fanon was:

All I wanted was to be a man among other men. I wanted to come lithe and young into a world that was ours and to help to built it together.⁶⁹⁷

Divine Guidance for Survival

To sum up the discussion, we reiterate that Che Guevara had been fighting against differentiation based on skin-color, exploitation, economic aggression, liberation from alienation and equality of rights for all human beings on earth. Frantz Fanon's main desire can be quoted as "All I wanted was to be a man among other Men". Martin Luther King Jr. opposed violence and hatred on the basis of the color of the skin. He dreamed of a time when his children will be judged by their character than by the color of their skin. As such, he was a supporter of

⁶⁹⁵ Wikipedia s.v. 'Che Guevara'.

⁶⁹⁶ Cited in *Progressive Muslims*, ed. by Omid Safi (Oxford: Oneworld Publications, 2006), p. 12.

⁶⁹⁷ John McLeod, *Beginning Postcolonialism*, (New York: Manchester University Press, 2000), p. 20.

equality of rights between all sons of Adam. Besides the people mentioned above, there had been writers like Antonia Juhaz, David Icke, John Perkins and poet Bob Morley who devoted major parts of their lives to fight against injustice, falsehood, covert operations of supreme powers, plundering the poorer nations, enslaving human beings and committing thousands of other crimes against humanity. Most of them had, perhaps been unaware of the fact that the holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) had openly declared equality between the black and the white in all respects. No one had ascendance over the other unless he exceeded in piety and virtuousness. It was in 632 AD i.e. about 1331 years before Martin Luther and others were dreaming for such equality of rights when the God had declared emphatically that:

O mankind! We created you from a single (pair) of a male and a female, and made you into nations and tribes, that ye may know each other (not that ye may despise (each other). Verily the most honoured of you in the sight of Allah is (he who is) the most righteous of you. And Allah has full knowledge and is well acquainted (with all things).⁶⁹⁸

The declaration was implemented in word and spirit during the life of the Holy Prophet Muhammad (pbAh) and the believers had no permission to create differentiation between the black and white or in the equality of their rights. The Holy Prophet (pbAh) further elaborated the basis of human rights as enjoined by the Lord. The Prophet (pbAh) said:

O people! Indeed, your Lord is one and your father is one. Indeed, there is no superiority of an Arab over a non-Arab, nor of a non-Arab over an Arab, nor of a white over a black, nor a black over a white, except by taqwa.⁶⁹⁹

Narrated Abu Hurayrah: The Prophet (peace be upon him) said: Allah, Most High, has removed from you the pride of the pre-Islamic period and its boasting in ancestors. One is only a pious believer or a miserable sinner. You are sons of Adam, and Adam came from dust. Let the people cease to boast about their ancestors. They are merely fuel in Jahannam; or

⁶⁹⁸ Al-Qur'ān 49:13 Yusuf Ali.

⁶⁹⁹ Musnad Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal, Hadith No. 22391.

they will certainly be of less account with Allah than the beetle which rolls dung with its nose.⁷⁰⁰

Narrated 'Abdullah bin Umar: Allah's Apostle said, "A Muslim is a brother of another Muslim, so he should not oppress him, nor should he hand him over to an oppressor. Whoever fulfilled the needs of his brother, Allah will fulfill his needs; whoever brought his (Muslim) brother out of a discomfort, Allah will bring him out of the discomforts of the Day of Resurrection, and whoever screened a Muslim, Allah will screen him on the Day of Resurrection."⁷⁰¹

Modern wise-men, scholars and politicians must, therefore, ponder the message of the Lord and the sayings of the Holy Prophet (pbAh) quoted above. We can confidently declare that it is beyond the prowess of humankind to find any better guidance to reform human rights than given by Islam. The peaceful co-existence of man on earth cannot be assured without acting upon the commandments of the Lord and the sayings of the Holy Prophet (pbAh). In 1967, Martin Luther King Jr. published an essay titled 'Where do we go from here, Chaos or Community?' He ended the essay by saying:

"We are now faced with the fact that tomorrow is today ...We still have a choice today: nonviolent coexistence or violent co-annihilation. This may well be mankind's last chance to choose between chaos and community."⁷⁰²

Islam is derived from the source 'As-Salam' which means the peace or the peaceful one. Islam, therefore, implies submission to the divine will. Those who submit themselves to the will of God must be peaceful than violent annihilators. May Almighty Allah (SWT) guide us to the straight path. Amen.

Although most of the people in the world do not believe in the Qur'ān yet it is the time that they reconsider its admonition in the following:

ظَهَرَ الْفَسَادُ فِي الْبَرِّ وَالْبَحْرِ بِمَا كَسَبَتْ أَيْدِي النَّاسِ لِيُذِيقَهُمْ بَعْضَ الْعَمَلِ الَّذِي عَمِلُوا لَعَلَّهُمْ يَرْجِعُونَ

41. Mischief has appeared on land and sea because of (the deed) that the hands of men have earned, that ((Allah)) may

⁷⁰⁰ *Abu Dawud*, Chapter 41, Hadith Number 5097.

⁷⁰¹ *Sahih Al-Bukhari*, tr. by Dr. Muhammad Muhsin Khan, Islamic University Al-Medina Al-Munawwara, (Dar Al Arabia, Beirut, Lebanon, 1980) Volume 3, Book 43, Number 622:

⁷⁰² Holly Sklar, *Chaos or Community?* (Cambridge: South End Press, 1995), p. 2.

give them a taste of some of their deeds: In order that They may turn back (from evil).

Suarah 104 (الهمزة) further warns us that:

1. woe to every (kind of) scandal-monger and-backbiter, 2. who pileth up wealth and layeth it by, 3. Thinking that His wealth would make Him Last for ever! 4. by no means! He will be sure to be thrown into that which breaks to pieces, 5. and what will explain to Thee that which breaks to pieces? 6. (it is) the Fire of (the wrath of) Allah kindled (to a blaze), 7. the which doth Mount (right) to the hearts: 8. it shall be made into a vault over them, 9. In columns outstretched.

People who contemplate on the portents in the verses quoted above can clearly find a hint of human annihilation through atomic war as indicated in the verses 8 and 9. Those who did not receive any proper punishment for their misdeeds in the present world are sure to stand before the Almighty to explain their misdeeds and to receive punishment for their crimes against humanity.

It is, however, absolutely clear from the Qur'ān that humankind has no authority to enslave their brethren or other people permanently on the basis of their weakness, indebtedness, color, caste, creed or wealth nor do they have any right to kill, plunder, subjugate or exploit other people coercively as has been done with the slaves by the nations like the Egyptians, the Romans and the Western colonizers in Africa, Australia and the American continents. We have recounted many of their crimes in the text. Such people must repent sincerely and turn to the Lord devoutly. Their submission to the will of the Lord may guide them to the true path towards the Lord assuring peace and solace in this world and assurance for eternal bliss in the Hereafter.

INDEX

- 13th amendment (1865), 143, 297
16th President of the USA, 143, 297
Abraham, 143, 297
Abraham Lincoln, 42, 60, 174, 175
Adam and Eve, 125, 299
Afonso, 23
Africa, 17, 19, 20, 21, 23, 24, 25, 26, 28, 29, 30, 32, 33, 34, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 44, 49, 53, 54, 55, 56, 60, 62, 68, 72, 76, 77, 78, 84, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 102, 117, 122, 124, 125, 130, 133, 142, 145, 152, 154, 161, 162, 163, 165, 169, 174, 202, 205, 211, 215, 217, 226, 255, 336
African Americans, 43, 58, 64, 68, 71, 73, 87, 167, 177, 218
African Continent, 299
African slave trade, 21, 26, 155
Alan Gallay, 102
al-Azhar, 20
Albert Beverage, 148
Alexander the great, 117
Alexandria, 20
Alfred Kroeber, 96
all men are created equal, 143, 297, 298, 362
Allen Sidney, 87
Amar, 86
America, 17, 18, 22, 24, 25, 27, 33, 42, 49, 53, 56, 57, 60, 62, 69, 77, 79, 89, 99, 102, 104, 108, 114, 124, 133, 147, 149, 152, 153, 154, 155, 160, 161, 162, 165, 166, 173, 174, 184, 196, 207, 208, 210, 211, 213, 214, 223, 225, 226, 228, 231, 232, 249, 255, 262, 299, 349
American, 18, 21, 23, 25, 32, 35, 42, 43, 44, 48, 56, 57, 58, 60, 61, 62, 63, 66, 67, 68, 69, 71, 76, 87, 90, 93, 101, 108, 113, 122, 130, 131, 133, 138, 141, 142, 145, 147, 148, 149, 152, 153, 155, 158, 159, 161, 162, 165, 166, 167, 172, 174, 175, 177, 185, 186, 193, 194, 196, 198, 201, 206, 207, 208, 210, 219, 223, 225, 227, 232, 237, 249, 250, 254, 255, 256, 257, 259, 262, 299, 309, 314, 320, 335, 377
Ana Lucia Araujo, 25
Anatolia, 56, 66, 98
Ancient Romans, 150
Andalusia, 122
Andaman Islands, 67
anecdote, 118
Angola, 30
anti-colonialism, 145
Antiochus IV Epiphanes, 117
anti-Semitism, 44
Apartheid, 37, 38
Appalachians, 27
Arab, XV, 20, 125, 129, 132, 203, 213, 223, 229, 230, 237, 238, 262, 337, 363
Arabian, XV
Aragon, 18, 356
Asia, 16, 17, 19, 20, 24, 56, 96, 99, 102, 129, 145, 150, 153, 154, 162, 186, 198, 230, 234, 236, 237, 240, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 251, 254, 255, 264, 336
Asian continent, 44
assassinated, 144, 298
Atlantic, 17, 18, 19, 21, 22, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 33, 48, 49, 63, 72, 76, 77, 78, 81, 94, 98, 103, 160, 161, 171, 177, 380
Aubery, 124
Australia, 17, 19, 56, 67, 69, 76, 98, 101, 102, 107, 108, 109, 110, 112, 114, 377
Australia Day, 67
Australian, 44
Aztecs, 60
Baartman, 95
Bahama Islands, 18
Bahamas, 18, 27, 103, 169
Balfour, 131
Bambara Empire, 23
Bangladesh, 113
Barbados, 27, 52, 55, 61, 163, 173
Barcelona, 122
Bartolome, 103
Bartolomé de las Casas, 64, 104
Bartolomeu Dias, 18
Baton Rouge, 70

- Battle of Waterberg, 100
 Bedloe's Island, 142
 Belgium, 19, 94, 188, 225, 238
 Belize, 79
 Benin, 30
 Beothuk, 96
 Berlin, 42, 44, 193, 195, 255
 Bible, XV, 300, 377
 Birmingham, 33, 35, 36, 53
 Bishop, 36
 black Americans, 144, 298
 Black clergyman, 143, 297
 black race, 143, 297
 Black republic, 149
 Blue Ridge, 84
 Bonne, 44
 Bonnie Martin, 66
 bourgeois, 44
 Brazil, 22, 27, 29, 30, 34, 45, 56,
 93, 99, 101, 107, 113, 152,
 161, 165, 200, 217
 Brazilian, 30, 34, 56, 93, 99, 152,
 165, 214
 Bristol, 32, 33, 35, 36, 50, 51, 52,
 76
 Britain, 26, 33, 35, 43, 55, 56, 62,
 63, 69, 108, 119, 132, 139,
 142, 152, 155, 160, 171, 177,
 192, 213, 223, 225, 235, 240,
 256, 349, 357, 360, 378
 British, 20, 22, 24, 27, 29, 32, 33,
 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 40, 42, 44,
 49, 53, 55, 56, 62, 67, 69, 78,
 92, 95, 100, 102, 104, 108,
 109, 112, 118, 130, 131, 139,
 150, 152, 155, 160, 161, 164,
 166, 168, 170, 171, 172, 173,
 177, 185, 188, 190, 192, 200,
 204, 206, 225, 231, 235, 240,
 241, 256, 314, 335
 British Empire, 34
 Bronx zoo, 94
 brutality, 59, 63, 65, 77, 103, 104,
 155, 170, 192, 228, 252, 299
 Bryan Edwards, 33
 Buccaneers, 44
 Buddhists, 20
 Bushrod, 71

 Cairo, 20
 Calvert County, 85
 Cameroon, 30, 54
 cannibalism, 99
 Cape of Good Hope, 18, 38
 capitalism, 41, 43, 166, 177
 Caribbean, 18, 27, 28, 29, 32, 33,
 37, 41, 77, 79, 102, 104, 117,
 149, 169, 170, 172
 Carlyle, 117, 215, 228
 Carolinas, 27, 65
 castellanos, 90
 Catholic Church, 65, 356
 ceded to, 44
 Ceylon, 17
 Charles Ball, 64, 71, 84
 Charles Deslondes, 86
 Chavez, 101, 205
 Chávez, 101, 214
 cheap labor, 24
 Cherokees, 98
 Chesapeake, 27, 69, 78, 87, 88
 Chicago, 380
 children, 23, 37, 50, 51, 54, 59,
 64, 65, 71, 78, 79, 80, 82, 83,
 84, 86, 87, 90, 91, 94, 96, 100,
 103, 107, 109, 110, 111, 121,
 124, 143, 167, 172, 175, 189,
 191, 192, 198, 202, 215, 216,
 226, 233, 249, 256, 320, 330,
 344, 361, 362
 China, 17, 18, 19, 55, 68, 127,
 149, 152, 187, 196, 199, 203,
 236, 244, 245, 246, 252, 323
 Chinese, 20, 37, 39, 117, 127,
 144, 161, 199, 222, 245
 cholera, 97, 233
 Christendom, 16, 17, 129, 135,
 234, 235, 236, 340
 Christian, XV
 Christianity, 377, 378
 civil rights supporters in the USA.,
 143, 297, 362
 Civil War, 28, 32, 42, 43, 45, 60,
 62, 68, 92, 99, 113, 143, 161,
 162, 200
 Clarkson, 36, 76, 163
 classic, 44
 Cleveland Gazette, 142
 cocoa, 49, 169
 Cold War, 139, 152
 Colombia, 48, 99, 113, 206, 207,
 211
 colonial expansion, 102, 117
 colonial indoctrination, 154
 colonies, 299
 Colonization, 16, 21, 104, 105,
 107, 108
 colonizers, 19, 21, 44, 52, 76, 90,
 97, 98, 105, 118, 121, 122,
 125, 133, 159, 162, 299
 colour prejudice, 125
 Columbus, 18, 53, 88, 89, 90, 98,
 101, 102, 103, 168, 170, 185,
 380
 Columbus Day, 101
 commodification, 68
 Communist Manifesto, 44, 188
 Concentration Camps, 100
 Confederacy, 63
 Confederate States, 60

- Confederates, 63
 Congaree, 88
 Congo, 23, 30, 98, 99, 184, 187, 188, 200, 203, 217, 316
 Congo Free State, 99
 Congolese, 94
 Congress, 38, 41, 59, 71, 92, 93, 98, 168, 175, 176, 177, 206, 252, 318
 Congress of Vienna, 299
 Connecticut, 27, 68, 319
 Conrad, 121, 140, 150, 152
 content of their character, 143, 298, 362
 continents, 44, 299
 convicts, 28, 52, 66, 67, 108, 113, 218
 Cooper River, 72
 Cordova, 122
 Cornelia Andrews, 83
 Cornell, 91
 cotton, 24, 33, 34, 41, 43, 48, 49, 53, 56, 57, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 68, 69, 70, 72, 83, 87, 97, 125, 158, 159, 166, 168, 169, 170
 creed, 143, 297, 362
 Crevecoeur, 60
 Crown of Castile, 18
 Crusades, 16, 17, 19, 20, 234, 235, 377, 381
 Cuba, 27, 34, 37, 93, 103, 152, 153, 161, 171, 201, 202, 203, 204, 207
 Cyrus, 380

 Dahomey, 23, 28, 54, 203
 David, 378
 David Quammen, 101
 David Stannard, 23, 97, 101
 De Las Casas, 103
 Debtor's Colony, 69
 dehydration, 77, 100
 deliberately infected, 104
 Delicia Patterson, 82
 denationalized, 98
 depopulation, 97, 104, 113
 deported, 299
 Devil's Island, 66
 diaspora, 54
 diplomacy, 146, 161, 314, 315
 divine planning, 120
 Dobyns, 96
 Donald Trump, 144
 Donaldsonville, 64
 Dred Scott, 59, 175
 dungeons, 72, 76
 Dutch, 22, 29, 37, 38, 49, 108, 130, 160, 165, 185, 340
 dysentery, 73, 77, 80

 economic power, 149, 172
 Ecuador, 99, 184, 205, 209, 211, 217, 226, 334, 335
 Edward Baptist, 43, 66
 Edward W. Said, 28, 116, 120, 139, 149, 150, 151, 154, 178, 378
 Egypt, 20, 119, 130, 131, 151, 201, 234, 235, 312
 emancipation, 37, 42, 51, 60, 73, 93, 143, 163, 166, 167, 173, 174, 176, 177
 Emancipation Proclamation, 63, 64, 73, 90, 123, 162, 166, 174, 177
 Encyclopaedia, XV
 England, 28, 32, 34, 35, 36, 50, 51, 52, 56, 61, 66, 104, 107, 108, 131, 148, 150, 162, 163, 187, 195, 196, 356, 359, 380, 381, 382
 enslaved, 299
 enslaved Black Africans, 299
 Erick Williams, 61, 76
 ethnic cleansing, 107, 113, 156
 Europe, 16, 18, 19, 20, 22, 24, 27, 33, 41, 49, 52, 54, 60, 62, 66, 77, 94, 102, 107, 113, 127, 128, 129, 131, 138, 139, 141, 145, 149, 152, 162, 165, 170, 171, 177, 201, 223, 225, 235, 237, 245, 251, 255, 299, 340
 European, 16, 17, 18, 19, 21, 22, 24, 27, 28, 29, 30, 33, 48, 54, 63, 66, 76, 94, 96, 98, 101, 102, 103, 108, 109, 122, 125, 129, 139, 141, 154, 160, 162, 166, 168, 169, 171, 177, 192, 214, 217, 223, 225, 235
 Europeans, 20, 21, 22, 24, 28, 29, 77, 96, 98, 104, 167, 171
 evangelicals, 151
 exploitation, 44, 299
 extraterritorial, 152

 Fanon, 118, 119, 123, 124, 125, 127, 128, 141, 204, 362, 378
 feudalism, 41, 52
 Florida, 48, 97, 149, 158
 France, 19, 33, 36, 43, 50, 55, 66, 78, 85, 104, 106, 118, 119, 124, 129, 132, 139, 142, 146, 154, 160, 168, 169, 171, 172, 188, 190, 194, 195, 196, 203, 210, 211, 213, 225, 235, 238, 323, 340

- Franciscan, 102
 Frédéric Auguste Bartholdi, 142
 French revolution, 55
 Friedrich Engels, 44

 Gadsden, 72
 Galliëni, 124
 Gambia, 29
 Gang System, 59
 geo-political, 153, 257
 George J. E. Grecia, 380
 Georgia, 27, 62, 69, 71, 84, 85,
 87, 97, 243, 252
 German Empire, 99
 Germans, 52, 100, 195, 308, 349
 Ghana, 30, 200, 203
 gipsies, 51
 gladiator, 89
 Glasgow, 35
 globalists, 152
 Gobabis, 100
 Gould, 121, 139, 152
 Granada, 18, 122, 357, 380
 Greek, XV
 Grootfontein, 100
 Guatemala, 113, 153, 184, 200,
 207, 208, 213, 226, 335
 Guenter Lewy, 97
 Guinea, 29, 30, 203
 Guineamen, 77
 Gulf War, 153, 187, 229, 231
 Gulliver, 68
 Gustave Eiffel, 142
 Guyana, 42

 haemorrhage, 119
 Haiti, 37, 55, 57, 65, 90, 97, 98,
 103, 149, 169, 170, 213
 Hegel, 44, 171, 188
 Hemisphere, 29, 45, 96, 101, 123,
 336
 Hendrik Witbooi, 99
 Henrietta Marie, 77
 Herero, 91, 96, 98, 99, 100
 Herero Wars, 99
 Herod, 380
 hierarchisation, 95
 High Priests, 378
 Hindus, 20
 Hispaniola, 27, 55, 90, 103, 104,
 170
 historiography, 116
 History, 377
 Holocaust, 23, 97
 Holroyd, 121, 139, 152
 Hong Kong, 151, 201
 horrific, 67, 77, 88, 89, 147, 228,
 257
 Hottentot, 95

 Howard Zinn, 103
 human flesh, 61, 90, 164
 human rights, 143, 297, 299
 Human zoos, 94, 95

 I have a dream, 143, 297, 362
 ill-informed, 146, 246
 Illuminati, 146, 148, 228, 248,
 251, 254, 255, 317, 318, 319,
 320, 321, 322, 350
 Imperial Powers, 119
 imperialist, 95, 102, 121, 130,
 138, 140, 149, 150, 202
 Incas, 60
 India, 17, 18, 19, 20, 36, 37, 53,
 55, 66, 67, 130, 139, 150, 151,
 161, 164, 166, 201, 211, 235,
 237, 244, 245, 246, 247, 254,
 257, 258, 261, 262, 272, 323,
 379, 381
 Indian army, 151
 Indians, 37, 49, 50, 53, 74, 97, 99,
 102, 103, 105, 112, 133, 139,
 151, 159, 165, 169, 184, 247,
 261
 indigenous people, 19, 48, 98,
 102, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108,
 109, 121, 123, 141, 142, 162,
 168, 169, 209, 264, 349, 352,
 357
 Indochina, 130, 150, 197
 Industrial Revolution, 34, 43, 56,
 63
 industrialization, 44
 interpreters, 151
 Ireland, 66, 69, 117, 203, 217
 Irishman, 112
 Irishmen, 52
 iron chains, 21
 Isabella, 18, 170
 Israel, 40, 153, 224, 225, 231,
 234, 235, 237, 311, 323, 349,
 379
 Italy, 16, 19, 139, 191, 217, 238,
 340
 Ituri, 99
 Ivory Coast, 30
 Ivy, 67, 68

 J. S. Mill, 28
 Jacob, Murray, 69
 Jamaica, 27, 33, 37, 51, 53, 55,
 163, 173
 James Edward, 69
 James Stille, 69
 Japan, 17, 18, 19, 191, 196, 199,
 201, 229, 236, 237, 323, 333
 Japanese, 144, 152, 185, 191,
 193, 194, 201, 308, 315

- Jati system, 272
 Jesus, XV, 354
 Jewish, 376
 Jews, 18, 20, 21, 117, 147, 167, 234, 235, 313, 377, 378, 380, 381, 382
 Johannesburg, 39
 John F. Richards, 112
 John McLeod, 118, 119, 128, 132, 133, 151, 154, 362, 379
 John Ross, 98
 John Tarleton, 56
 Josephus, 378, 382
 Jules Harmand, 121
 Jumma, 113

 Karen Armstrong, 20, 21, 235, 379
 Karl Marx, 44
 Kentucky, 84
 Kenya, 40
 Khasso, 23
 Kidnapping, 51
 King Ferdinand II, 18
 King Jaja of Opobo, 22
 King João III, 23
 Kingdom, 381
 Kongo, 28

 Leeds, 36
 Lese, 99
 Lesser Antilles, 18, 123
 liberalism, 28
 Liberia, 30
 Libertas, 142
 Liberty Island, 142
 Lincoln, 143, 297
 Liverpool, 25, 32, 33, 35, 36, 56, 63
 Liverpool Chronicle, 63
 London, XV, 18, 32, 33, 44, 51, 52, 54, 68, 92, 93, 95, 106, 123, 129, 155, 161, 169, 183, 184, 235, 260, 357, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382
 Lord, XV
 Lord Macaulay, 151
 Lorenzo, 68
 Lothar von Trotha, 100
 Louisiana, 53, 65, 66, 70, 81, 94, 160, 172, 177
 Luther, 143, 144, 297, 298

 Madagascar, 30, 124
 Malagasy, 124
 Malaysians, 117
 malnutrition, 76, 100, 109, 233
 Malthusian, 62

 Manasseh Cutler, 92
 Manchester, 33, 34, 35, 36, 119, 151, 362, 379
 Mannoni, 124
 Maranhão, 56, 107
 Martinique, 123, 124
 Marxist, 152, 200, 201, 334, 361
 Maryland, 55, 62, 69, 71, 84, 87, 88, 94
 mathematics, 122, 129
 Matthew Arnold, 116
 Mayotte Capécia, 124
 Mbuti, 99
 McLean, 69
 measles, 97
 Mecca, 151
 Mediterranean, 29, 122, 147
 Melinda, 70
 Mexico, 60, 97, 106, 209
 Michel Guillaume, 60
 Michele de Cuneo, 88
 Middle East Wars, 120
 Middle Passage, 25, 48, 77, 78, 80, 378
 Milton Meltzer, 26
 missionaries, 23, 128, 130, 133, 135, 140, 151, 163
 missionary, 20, 64, 202, 209
 Mississippi, 21, 27, 42, 60, 81, 85, 87, 97, 160, 168, 172
 Mississippi Valley, 21, 172
 mixed-race, 65, 91
 Montserrat, 79
 Moors, 381
 mothers, 54, 79, 103, 195
 Mozambique, 30
 Museum of Mankind, 95
 Muslim civilization, 17
 Mutinies, 76

 Namaqua, 91, 98, 99, 100
 Namatjira, 112
 Napoleon, 20, 21, 82, 160, 171, 172, 234, 235
 Nathan Dane, 92
 Native Americans, 97, 98, 101, 102, 155, 168
 naval warfare, 122
 Negro slaves, 34, 37, 51, 55, 86, 122
 Negro strikers, 124
 Negroes, 19, 32, 33, 34, 40, 53, 60, 67, 70, 74, 77, 80, 123, 124, 126, 133, 141, 162, 165, 170, 194, 299, 342
 Nelson Mandela, 38, 204
 Netherlands, 104, 185, 225, 377

- New Orleans, 42, 62, 64, 65, 69,
 70, 82, 85, 94
 New South Wales, 67, 69, 108
 New World, 17, 24, 25, 29, 30, 32,
 41, 48, 49, 52, 53, 54, 64, 72,
 77, 90, 99, 101, 152, 180, 257,
 309, 318, 326, 338
 New York, 83, 94, 116, 119, 142,
 151, 164, 176, 203, 205, 225,
 226, 228, 237, 245, 247, 249,
 251, 349, 362, 377, 378, 379,
 380, 381, 382
 New Zealand, 17, 114
 Newfoundland, 34, 97
 Ngugi, 118, 120
 Ngugi wa Thiong'o, 118
 Nigeria, 30
 Noble prize, 143, 297
 Norfolk Island, 69
 Nostromo, 140
 Nottingham, 36

 Occident, 119, 132
 Okah Tubbee, 88
 Old Point Comfort, 21
 Old Testament, XV
 Oliver Ellsworth, 27
 Omaheke, 91, 100
 Orangutan, 94
 Orient, 19, 20, 119, 131, 132, 134
 Oriental history, 121
 Orientalism, 116, 128, 129, 130,
 132, 133, 134, 135, 378
 Orientalist, 20, 132, 133, 151
 original, 44, 299
 Ota Benga, 94
 Ottoman, 21, 56, 66, 191, 379,
 380
 Ottoman Empire, 21, 56, 191
 Ottomans, 21, 151, 235
 Oyo Empire, 28

 Pacific, 17, 18, 98
 paid scholars, 140
 Palestine, 20, 186, 234, 235, 236
 Pallawah, 96
 Panama, 153, 205, 206, 207, 208,
 210, 226, 335
 Paraguay, 113, 207
 Paris, 44, 95, 129, 171, 203
 parity, 144, 298
 Pax Americana, 147
 Pax Romana, 147
 Peace of Ryswick, 44
 penal colony, 66, 69, 107, 108
 Pennsylvania, 50, 85
 Peru, 60, 99, 112, 207, 217
 Philadelphia, 50, 80

 politics, 38, 69, 118, 139, 145,
 171, 213, 334
 Port Jackson, 67
 Portugal, 18, 19, 23, 29, 78, 152,
 160, 161, 172, 225, 308
 Portuguese, 18, 22, 23, 29, 32, 41,
 49, 106, 185
 Postlethwayt, 35
 President Bush, 147, 227, 231,
 237, 253, 314
 Prince Henry, 53
 prisoners of war, 22, 66
 proclamation of emancipation on
 January 1, 1863, 143, 297
 proletariat, 44
 Prophet Muhammad, 125, 299
 psychiatry, 116
 Putumayo, 112
 Pygmies, 99

 Quakers, 52

 Rachel, 69, 70, 83, 94
 racial discrimination, 144, 298
 ramatoa, 124
 Raphael Lemkin, 102
 raw materials, 19, 62, 150
 Redemptioners, 51
 renaissance, 17, 18, 106, 122, 129
 Renaissance, 16, 153
 Republicans, 60, 207
 Rhode Island, 72
 Richmond, 21, 71, 382
 Robert Walsh, 78
 Robert Williams, 83
 Roger B. Taney, 60
 Roger Casement, 112
 Roman, 50, 93, 133, 142, 147,
 152, 255, 313, 318, 332, 356,
 378, 380
 Romans, 273, 382
 Rome, 16, 106, 133, 152, 318,
 380, 381
 Royal African Company, 32
 rubber, 98
 Ruskin, 117
 Russell Means, 97
 Russell Thornton, 96, 97, 105

 Saint Domingue, 65
 Samuel Maharero, 99
 San Salvador, 18
 savagery, 125, 189
 scientific advancements, 24
 Scotland, 66, 69, 80
 scurvy, 77
 secession, 60, 175
 self-aggrandizement, 145
 Senegal, 29

- Senegambia, 29
 sex slavery, 91
 sexual humiliation, 65
 Shakespeare, 117
 Shark Island, 100
 Siberia, 112, 189, 190, 251
 Sierra Leone, 29
 Singapore, 151, 201
 slave codes, 59
 slave revolts, 25, 73, 173, 174
 slave ships, 21, 27, 76, 77
 Slave Trade, 34, 380
 slavery, 299
 slaves, 44, 143, 273, 297, 299
 smallpox, 80, 97, 104, 107, 108, 112
 sophistication, 146, 214
 south, 44
 South Africa, 37, 38, 40, 97
 South Africans, 38, 39
 South Carolina, 21, 28, 48, 62, 66, 71, 72, 85, 87
 Southern, 28, 57, 91, 93, 165, 168, 376
 Spain, 18, 26, 29, 33, 34, 43, 89, 90, 104, 106, 152, 160, 170, 172, 238, 340, 381
 Spaniards, 32, 53, 65, 98, 105, 106, 170
 St. Domingo, 43, 106, 169, 170, 172
 St. Domingue, 55, 85, 160, 168, 169, 172
 St. Paul, 379
 statue of liberty, 142
 steatopygia, 95
 Steatopygia, 95
 Stephen Duncan, 25
 stripes, 59, 186
 Stuart Monarchy, 32
 sugar, 27, 28, 30, 32, 33, 34, 35, 37, 48, 49, 53, 54, 56, 57, 61, 64, 65, 70, 102, 158, 159, 164, 169, 170
 suicides, 76
 Sydney, 67, 108
 Syria, 20, 186, 200, 201, 225, 237, 238, 246, 316
 Taif, 151
 Taino people, 98
 Taney, 59
 Texas, 64
 theoretical, 144, 298
 theory, 44
 think-tanks, 145, 251
 Thomas Faro, 64
 Thomas Jefferson, 24, 91
 tobacco, 32, 33, 43, 48, 49, 56, 62, 71, 76, 78, 158, 159, 169
 Toledo, 34, 122
 transatlantic slave trade, 25, 26, 48
 transatlantic slavery, 23
 triangular trade, 34, 35, 48
 Trinidad, 37, 55
 Trinidadian, 154
 tumult, 79
 Tungus, 112
 Uganda, 151
 Umar, XIII, 280, 337, 363, 380
 UN Security Council, 99
 Unhygienic conditions, 77
 Union, 21, 28, 60, 64, 93, 112, 139, 152, 154, 167, 175, 177, 190, 191, 199, 207, 214, 225, 230, 231, 242, 243, 250, 251, 253, 260
 United Kingdom, 41, 54, 123, 155, 192, 322, 378
 United States, 21, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 48, 56, 57, 58, 59, 62, 63, 66, 68, 70, 71, 73, 77, 81, 82, 84, 90, 91, 92, 93, 101, 103, 104, 121, 139, 141, 142, 147, 148, 149, 150, 152, 153, 155, 156, 165, 166, 167, 174, 175, 177, 185, 191, 193, 196, 198, 199, 201, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 213, 214, 216, 218, 219, 224, 225, 226, 228, 229, 230, 232, 233, 242, 249, 252, 253, 256, 308, 314, 320, 349
 Universal Declaration, 123, 163, 178
 USA, 42, 43, 50, 57, 78, 85, 92, 103, 107, 114, 128, 130, 138, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 152, 153, 160, 172, 173, 184, 185, 196, 200, 201, 205, 206, 208, 210, 211, 214, 218, 223, 224, 225, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 236, 237, 238, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 297, 298, 308, 313, 314, 315, 316, 320, 322, 323, 333, 335, 336, 340, 343, 350, 360, 361, 362, 377, 380
 Valencia, 122
 Vasco da Gama, 18
 Venezuela, 18, 205

- Venezuelan, 101
 vernacular dialects, 151
 Vienna Conference, 123
 Vietnam War, 97, 187, 196, 197, 198, 232, 316
 Vietnamese war, 150
 Viking, 17
 Vine Deloria, 97
 Virginia, 21, 41, 50, 52, 55, 58, 62, 69, 71, 77, 78, 79, 85, 87, 88, 148, 155, 177, 378
 Voltaire, 16, 20

 Ward Churchill, 97, 109
 Washington, 25, 42, 68, 71, 87, 185, 208, 211, 213, 214, 227, 249, 252, 255, 261
 Washington County, 25
 Water boarding, 65
 weapons of mass destruction, 122, 205, 234, 351
 West, 299
 West Indian, 28, 34, 35, 53, 54, 56, 163, 173
 West Indies, 22, 28, 32, 33, 37, 42, 50, 51, 53, 56, 80, 161, 163, 173

 Western civilization, 134
 Western masters, 121, 128
 western nations, 17, 19, 24, 55, 98, 122, 140, 154, 237, 314
 western nomenclature, 151
 Westminster, 90, 173
 Wharf, 72
 white Americans, 143, 298
 William Coles, 69
 William Denevan, 101
 William Grimes, 84
 William Rathbone, 63
 William Wells Brown, 83
 wine, 23
 World History, 26, 36, 380
 World War I, 147, 152, 187, 223, 316
 wretched, 61, 215

 xenophobia, 117

 Yakut, 112
 Yuki, 96, 105

 Zimbabwe, 40

BIBLIOGRAPHY

▪ **Qur'ān:**

- The Message of the Qur'ān, tr. Muhammad Asad, Gibraltar: Dar al-Andalus, 1980.
- The Holy Qur'ān, tr. Syed Abul A'la Maududi, English Rendering by M. Akbar, A.A. Kamal (Lahore: Isl. Publications, 2008).
- The Holy Qur'ān, tr, A. Yusuf Ali Beirut: Dar al-Qur'ān al-Karīm, AH 1403.
- The Meaning of the Glorious Koran, an Explanatory tr. by Muhammad Marmaduke Pickthall, (New York: A Mentor Book, 1954).
- The Koran Interpreted, tr. A. J. Arberry, Oxf. Univ. Press, 1983.
- The Koran, tr. George Sale, London: Frederick Warne & Co Ltd., n.d.
- Tafsir Ul Qur'an, tr. Maulana Abdul Majid Daryabadi, Karachi: Darul – Ishaat Urdu Bazar, 1991.
- Towards Understanding the Qur'ān Zafar Ishaq Ansari, eng. Tr. Of Tafheem ul Qur'ān, by Maulana Maududi, (verse 28:4)

▪ **Hadith:**

- Abu Dawud, Eng. Tr. by Prof. Ahmad Hassan, Centre for Muslim-Jewish Engagement, University of Southern California (USC.EDU.ORG)
- Sahih Al-Bukhari, tr. by Dr. Muhammad Muhsin Khan, Islamic University Al-Medina Al-Munawwara, (Dar Al Arabia, Beirut, Lebanon, 1980)
- Sahih Muslim, Translator: Abdul Hamid Siddiqui, Centre for Muslim-Jewish Engagement, University of Southern California (USC.EDU.ORG)
- Muatta Imam Malik, tr by M. Rahimuddin,, (Lahore: Sh. Muhammad Ashraf, 1985)

- Sunan Ibn Majah, (Riyadh: Maktaba Darussalam, 2007),
- Allama Sharafuddin al-Musawi, Al-Nass Wal-Ijtihad, (al-islam.org).

▪ **Bible:**

- Authorized/ King James Version.
- Good News Bible – 2nd Edn., HarperCollins Publishers Ltd. UK, 1995.
- New American Standard Bible. A Division of Gospel Light Publications, California, 1973.
- The Holy Bible, New American Catholic Edn. Benziger Bros., Inc. 1958.
- A Dictionary of the Bible, Ed. James Hastings. Edinburgh: T. & T. Clark, 38 George Street, 1904.

▪ **Other Books:**

- A Look on 1200-1229 C.E., by AnVi OpenSource Book Trust, edited by P.Pillai. p. 37.
- Abba Ebban, HERITAGE: Civilization & the Jews, (Summit Books New York).
- Ahmed D Azhar, Christianity in History. Lahore: Sh. Muhamad Ashraf, Kashmīrī Bāzār, 1968.
- Alfred Guillaume, The Life of Muhammad, (Karachi: Oxford University Press, 1967), p. 548.
- Antonia Juhasz, The Bush Agenda, (New York: Regan Books, 2006),
- Arthur Gilman, The Saracens, (London: T. Fisher Unwin, 1887)
- BBC (archives), Ethics Guide, Philosophers Justifying Slavery, 2014.
- Brill's Encyclopedia of Islam. By E.J. Brill (Leiden: the Netherlands, 1991).
- Charles Mills, History of the Crusades, (London: Printed for Longman, Hurst, Fees, Orme, and Brown, Paternoster Row, 1821).

- Charles Mills, *The History of Chivalry*, (London: A&R Spotiawoode, New Street Square, 1825)
- Charles Phillips, *Crusades and the Crusader Knights*, (London: Lorenz Books, Anness Publishing Ltd. 2009),
- Clair Breay, Julian Harrison, *Magna Carta, an Introduction*, by British Library.
- Collier's Encyclopedia, Ed by Lauren S. Bahr, (New York: Macmillan Educational Company, 1992),
- Collier's Encyclopedia, ed. in chief Bernard Johnston, (New York: Macmillan Educational Company, 1991),
- Concise Oxford English Dictionary.
- Countries of the World, Australia, Times Edition,
- David Icke, *Alice in Wonderland and the World trade center Disaster*, (Wildwood: Bridge of Love Pub. USA, 2002),
- David Icke, *The Biggest Secret*, (Valencia: Bertelsmann Industry Services Inc, California, USA 1999),
- David Nicolle, *Historical Atlas of the Islamic World* (London: Mercury Books, Thalamus Publishing, 2003).
- E. H. Carter, *A History of Britain*, 3rd Edition, (Oxford: At The Clarendon Press, 1960)
- Edward E. Baptist, *The Half has Never Been Told*, (New York: Basic Books, 2014), p. 88.
- Edward Gibbon, *History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, (London: Oxford, St. John Square, 1821)
- Edward Gibbon, *History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, (New York: Cosimo Inc. 2008)
- Edward Gibbon, *History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, (London: Joseph Ogle Robinson, 1830).
- Edward Said, *Orientalism*, (London: Penguin Books, 2003),
- Edward W. Said, *Culture and Imperialism*, (New York: Vintage Books, 1994)
- Edwin Black, *Banking on Baghdad*, (New Jersey: John Wiley & Sons, 2004),
- Edwyn Beven, *Jerusalem Under the High Priests*, (London: Edward Arnold and Co. 1904).

- El-Ghazzali on the Theory and Practice of Politics, by Haroon Khan Sherwani, (Published in 'Islamic Culture', July 1935, by Iftikhar Afzal Printers, Lahore)
- Encyclopaedia Britannica, (London: William Benton Publisher, 1966).
- Encyclopedia of Hinduism, ed. by Constance A. Jones and James D. Ryan, (New York: Facts on File Inc., 2007).
- Encyclopedia of World Biography, (The Gale Group Inc. 2004).
- Encyclopedia Virginia, (Virginia Foundation of Humanities, 2012), s.v. 'Slave Ships and the Middle Passage' Contributed by Brendan Wolfe.
- Eric Williams, Capitalism and Slavery, (Chapel Hill: The University of North Carolina Press, 1946).
- Flavius Josephus: Antiquities of the Jews; The Works of Flavius Josephus. London: SIMMS AND M'INTYRE, BELFAST, 1852.
- Frantz Fanon: Black Skin White Masks (London: Pluto Press, United Kingdom, 2008),
- G. W. F. Hegel, *Lectures on the Philosophy of History*, (London: George Bell and Sons, 1902).
- G. W. Foote & J. M. Wheeler, Crimes of Christianity, (London: Clerkenwell Green, E.C. 1887).
- Galina Nikitina, The State of Israel, (Moscow: Progress Publishers, 1973)
- Gunartna and Iqbal, Pakistan Terrorism Ground Zero, (London: Reaktion Books Ltd. 2011).
- Harsh V. Pant, India's Afghan Muddle (Noida UP: Harper Collins Publishers, India, 2014)
- Holly Sklar, Chaos or Community? (Cambridge: South End Press, 1995)
- Ibn Katheer, Al-Bidaya wal-Nihayah, (urdu), (Karachi: Nafees Academy, Urdu Bazar, 1989),
- Ilber Ortayli, Private and Royal Life in The Ottoman Palace', (Blue Dome Press, 535 Fifth Avenue, New York 2014).
- International Slavery Museum, History of the Slave Trade, (www.liverpoolmuseums.org.uk), Copyright 2015.

-
- James D. Tabor, *The Jesus Dynasty*, (New York: Simon & Schuster, 2006).
 - John Bagot Glubb, *The Life and Times of Muhammad*, (London: Hodder and Stoughton, 1970)
 - John J. Pool, *Studies in Mohammedanism* (Westminister: Archibald Constable & Company, 1892)
 - John M. Allegro, *The Chosen People*. London: Hodder and Stoughton Ltd. St. Paul's House, Warwick Lane, 1971.
 - John McLeod, *Beginning Postcolonialism*, (New York: Manchester University Press, 2000),
 - John Perkins, *The New Confessions of an Economic Hit Man*, (London: Ebury Press, 2016),
 - John Thomas Flynn, *As We Go Marching*, (Alabama: The Ludwig Vog Mises Institute, 2007),
 - Jonathan Kirsch, *The Harlot by the Side of the Road*, New York: Ballantine Books, 1997.
 - Judith Still, *Derrida and Other Animals*, (Edinburgh: University Press Ltd, 2015)
 - Karen Armstrong, *Holy War*, 2nd Edition, (New York: Anchor Books, 2001)
 - Karen Armstrong, *Jerusalem*, (New York: Balentine Books, 1997)
 - Katy E. Valentine, *Bible Odyssey*, (Society of Biblical Literature, © 2016).
 - Kawther M. Alminawi, *Human Rights in Islam*, 1st Ed. 1993.
 - Larry S. Krieger & others, *World History, Perspectives on the Past*, 5th Ed. (Evanston: D.C. Heath and Company, 1997)
 - M. Cary, *A History of Rome*, 3rd Ed. (London: The Macmillan Press Ltd., 1979)
 - Martin Lings, *Muhammad* (New York, Inner Traditions International, 1983).
 - Martin Luther King, Jr., *The Strength to Love*. Cleveland: OH: Fount Books, 1963.
 - Maulana Saeed Ahmed, *Slavery in Islam*, (Karachi: DarulIshaat, Pakistan, 1st ed. 2000).

- Mel Gibson's *Passion and Philosophy* ed. George J. E. Grecia (Chicago: Open Court; and Illinois: La Salle, USA, 2004).
- Michael Evans, *The Death of Kings: Royal Deaths in Medieval England* (London: Hambledon Continuum, 2007)
- Muhammad Hussain Haykal, Umar Farooq-e-Azam (Urdu), tr. by Ghulam Rasool Mehr, (Lahore, Maktaba Jadeed, Mkld Rd., 1960)
- Muhammad Hussayin Haykal, *Life of Muhammad*, (Lorong: Islamic Book Trust, 1996)
- Norman H. Snaith, *The Jews from Cyrus to Herod*, (Gateway Books of a Religious Knowledge, Surrey 1956)
- Paul Monaghan, *Bloody Roman Narratives Gladiators*, (Art & Pain, Issue 4, UNIVERSITY OF MELBOURNE, 2003).
- Pastor Russell, *Thy Kingdom Come*, (East Rutherford: Dawn Bible Students Association, N. J. 1890, reprinted 2000).
- Peter Chrisp, *Christopher Columbus*, (London: Dorling Kindersley, 2001),
- Peter Partner, *Two Thousand Years: the Second Millennium*, (Granada Media Group, 1999).
- Philip K. Hitti, *History of the Arabs* (London: Macmillan & Co. Ltd., 1963)
- *Progressive Muslims*, ed. by Omid Safi (Oxford: Oneworld Publications, 2006).
- Qazi Muhammad Sulaiman Salman Puri, *Rehmatul lil Alameen* (urdu), (Lahore: Zahid Basheer Printers, Urdu Bazar, 1991).
- Richard Reddie, *Article: Atlantic Slave Trade and Abolition*, BBC, January, 2007.
- Robert Briffault, *Making of Humanity*, (London: George Allen & Unwin Ltd, Museum Street W.C., 1919)
- Salih Gulen, *The Ottoman Sultans*, tr. by Emrah Shahin, (New York: Blue Dome Press, 2012)
- Sayyid Amir Ali, *A Short History of Saracens*, (Karachi: National Book Foundation, 1975)
- Shibli Nomani, *Sirat-al-Nabi*, Vol. I, (Karachi: Muhammad Saeed & Sons, 1339 a.h. i.e. 1920 a.d.)

- Sikivu Huthinson, *Godless Americana Race and Religious Rebels* (Los Angeles: Infidels Books, 2013),
- Simon James, *Ancient Rome, Eyewitness Guides*, (London: Dorling Kindersley, 1991)
- Sir William Muir, *The Life of Mohammad*, (Edinburgh)
- Stanley Lane Pool, *The Moors in Spain*, (London: T. Fisher Unwin, Paternoster Square, 1888).
- Stanley Lane-Poole, *Saladin and the Fall of the Kingdom of Jerusalem*, (London: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1898).
- Stanley Lane-Poole, *The Speeches & Table-Talk of the Prophet Mohammad*, (London: Macmillan and Co, 1882).
- Stanley Lane-Poole, *Turkey*, (Lahore: Publishers United Ltd., Anarkali).
- *Story of the Nations, Jews*, (London: 1885).
- Susan M. Margeson, *Vikings, Eyewitness Guides*, (New York: Dorling Kindersley, 2010).
- Sven Beckert, *Empire of Cotton*, (Penguin Books, Random House, UK, 2015),
- Syed Amir Ali, *The Spirit of Islam*, (Calcutta: S. K. Lahiri & Co. 1902).
- T. A. Archer & Charles L. Kingsford, *The Crusades, THE STORY OF THE NATIONS*, (New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1902).
- T.V. Paul, *'The Warrior State'* (Gurgaon, Haryana: Random House India, 2014)
- Muhammad bin Jareer, *History of the Prophets and Kings*, Urdu translation i.e. *Tareekh-e-Tabri*, (Lahore: Darul-Isha'at, 2003).
- Terence Sellers, *The Correct Sadist*, (Brighton: Temple Press Limited, England, 1990).
- *The Investigator*, ed. by W. B. Collyer, (London: S2, Fleet Street, 1821).
- *The New Cambridge Modern History*, ed. by G.R.Elton, 2nd Ed., (Cambridge: The University Press, 1958),

- The Oxford Encyclopedia of the Modern Islamic World, ed. by John L. Esposito, V. 4 (New York: Oxford University Press, 1995)
- The Proof of Prophethood, 9th Ed. (Istanbul: Hakikat Kitabevi, Waqf Ikhlas Publications No. 9, 1989),
- The Works of Flavius Josephus, tr. by William Whiston, (Boston: D. Lothrop & Company, 1878/79)
- Thornton Stringfellow, Scriptural and Statistical Views in Favour of Slavery, 4th Ed., (Richmond: J. W. Randolph, VA, 1856)
- W. D. Morrison, The Jews Under the Romans, (London: T. Fisher Unwin, 1885)
- Wayne Morrison, Criminology, Civilisation and the New World Order, (New York: Routledge, Cavendish, 3rd Avenue, 2006),
- Werner Keller, The Bible as History, 2nd Revised Edition, (New York: Bantom Books, 1982)
- Will Durant, The Story of Civilization, (New York: Simon and Schuster, Rockefeller Center, 1954 1st pub. in 1935)
- Will Durant, The Story of Civilization, The Age of Faith, (New York: Simon and Schuster, 1950).
- William Blair, The State of Slavery Amongst the Romans (Michigan: Thomas Clork, Law Bookseller)
- William Gervase Clarence-Smith, Islam and the Abolition of Slavery, (Oxford University Press, 2006)
- William Stubbs, The Constitutional History of England, in Its Origin and Development (New York: Cambridge University Press, 2011)
- William Whiston's Works of Flavious Josephus, (Boston: D Lothrop & Company, 1878).
- Zbigniew Brzezinski, Strategic Vision, (New York: Basic Books, 387 Park Av. South, 2012)